
HISTORY

FOR APSC

INDIA & ASSAM



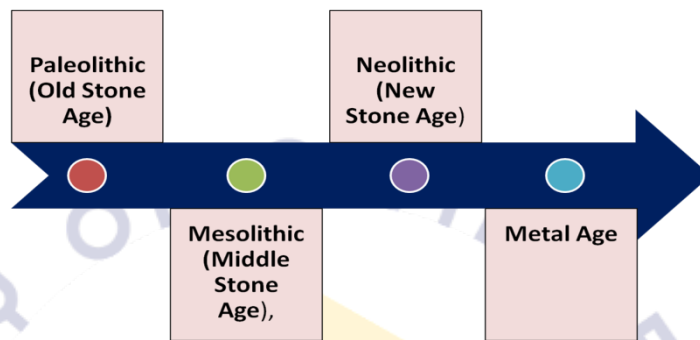
ACS

Academy of Civil Services

ANCIENT HISTORY

CHAPTER 1: THE PRE- HISTORIC PERIOD

PREHISTORIC PERIOD



STONE AGE

- The age when the **prehistoric man began to use stones** for utilitarian purpose is termed as the Stone Age.
- The Stone Age is divided into three broad divisions —
 - ✓ **Paleolithic Age or the Old Stone Age (from unknown till 8000 BC),**
 - ✓ **Mesolithic Age or the Middle Stone Age (8000 BC-4000 BC)**
 - ✓ **Neolithic Age or the New Stone Age (4000 BC-2500 BC)**

PALEOLITHIC AGE

- The human beings living in the Paleolithic Age **were essentially food gatherers and depended on nature for food.**
- The art of **hunting and stalking wild animals individually** and later in groups led to these people **making stone weapons and tools.**
- First, **crudely carved out stones were used in hunting**, but as the size of the groups began to increase and there was need for more food, these people began to make “**specialized tools**” by **flaking stones**, which were pointed on one end.
- **No knowledge of cultivation & house building.**
- **Human beings had come to make and use fire.**

BHIMBETKA ROCK SHELTERS

- Bhimbetka rock shelters are located in **Raisen District of Madhya Pradesh, 45 km south of Bhopal** at the southern edge of the **Vindhya hills**.
- These served as **shelters for Paleolithic age man for more than 1 lakh years**.
- This is the most exclusive **Paleolithic site in India which contains the rock carvings and paintings**.
- These paintings belong to the Paleolithic, Mesolithic ages, Chalcolithic, early historic, and even medieval times.

MESOLITHIC AGE (8000 BC – 4000 BC)

- It was the **transitional phase** between the **Palaeolithic Age** and **Neolithic Age**.
- In the Mesolithic Age, the **stone tools began to be made more pointed and sharper**.
- **In the sites of Mesolithic Age, a different type of stone tools is found. These are tiny stone artifacts, often not more than five centimeters in size, and therefore called microliths.**
- Domestication of animals, horticulture, primitive cultivation.
- There was a shift from **big animal hunting to small animal hunting and fishing**.
- Use of **bow and arrow** began during this stage.
- **Hunting-gathering** pattern of life continued.
- **Tendency to settle for a longer period of time.**
- **Rock Paintings from Paleolithic and Mesolithic age have been found at Bhimbetka caves (Painted birds, animals, and humans)**

NEOLITHIC AGE ((4000 BC-2500 BC)

- The **Neolithic Age or the New Stone Age** was the **last phase of the Stone Age**.
- It is characterized by very **finely flaked, small stone tools, also known as blades and burins**.
- Polishing of stone tools
- **Domestication of cattle, horses, and other farm animals** which were used for dairy and meat products.
- An important invention of this time was **the making of the wheel**.
- Earliest farming communities → **Characterized by cultivation of plants and domestication of animals.**
- Earliest evident of Neolithic culture have been found at **Mehrgarh on bank of river Bolan (Baluchistan) 7000 BC** showing **beginning of agriculture and domestication of animals.**
- **Dog burial with the master** → **Special feature of Burzahom**

CHALCOLITHIC AGE (1800 – 1000 BC) STONE COPPER AGE

- Marked by **use of copper** → **1st metal used in India.**
- Transition between **Neolithic and Bronze age**
- **Smelting metal ore, crafting metal artifacts.**
- Use of **Micro-lithic tools** continued.

- Knowledge of **Irrigation and Harvesting**
- Excavation reveals structures like **Granaries, Embankment and Fortification**
- **Mud houses made of mud in circular and rectangular pattern** along with **mud chulha**.
- Culture was limited from **Udaipur to Malwa and Maharashtra**
- Famous **Pottery of this age → Black on Red**
- They had to travel for a long distance to obtain metal ores which led to emergence **network of Chalcolithic cultures**.
- **It is not clear whether they were acquainted with the horse.**

IMPORTANCE OF CHALCOLITHIC AGE

- Chalcolithic area expanded throughout the country **except for alluvial region and thick forests**. People were settled mostly **near hills and rivers**.
- They used **painted pottery for the first time**.
- **Chalcolithic community founded the first villages in India**.
- Chalcolithic community produced far more **cereals than Neolithic community**.

LIMITATIONS

- People had **no knowledge of mixing two metals** so they could not use the stronger metal bronze nicely.
- Copper had its own limitations, and its supply was also less.
- **People were not aware of the art of writing**.
- **Burial of large number of children**- cause unidentified.
- Chalcolithic social and economic pattern **did not promote longevity**.

IRON AGE

- **The Chalcolithic age** is followed by Iron Age.
- **Iron** is frequently referred to in the **Vedas**.
- The Iron Age of the southern peninsula is often related to **Megalithic Burials**.
- **Megalith means Large Stone**. The burial pits were covered with **these stones**.
- Such graves are extensively found in South India.
- **Black and red pottery, iron artifacts** such as hoes and sickles and small weapons were found in the burial pits.

CHAPTER 2: INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION (2500 BC – 1500 BC)

- It was a highly developed civilization and derived its name from the main river of that region— **Indus**.
- Indus valley civilization is **older than chalcolithic culture** marked the **beginning of Bronze age civilization which is part of the Chalcolithic Age**.
- But this civilization was later named as **the ‘Indus Civilization’** due to the discovery of more and more sites far away from the Indus valley.
- Also, it has come to be called the **‘Harappan Civilization’** after the name of its first discovered site

ORIGIN AND EVOLUTION

The archaeological findings excavated for the last eight decades reveal the **gradual development** of the **Harappan culture**. There are **four important** stages or phases of evolution and they are named as **pre-Harappan, early-Harappan, mature-Harappan and late Harappan**.

PHASES OF EVOLUTION	FEATURES	SITE
Pre- Harapan stage	Nomadic.....> Settled agriculture	MEHRGARH
Early- Harapan Stage	Gradual development of towns Transition from rural to urban	Amri Kot-diji
Mature Harappan Stage	Great cities	Kalibangan (Elaborate town planning and urban features)

Late Harappan Stage	Decline of the Indus Culture	<p>Lothal -surrounded by a massive brick wall as flood protection.</p> <p>Emporium of trade between the Harappan civilization and the remaining part of India as well as Mesopotamia</p>
----------------------------	-------------------------------------	--

IMPORTANT DISCOVERIES

MAJOR SITES OF INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

MAJOR SITES	DISCOVERY	FEATURES
HARAPPA (WEST PUNJAB)	1921- Dayaram Sahni	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Harappan Seals • Red sandstone naked male torso • First site to be discovered. • Workmen quarters. • Evidence of coffin burial.
MOHENJO- DARO (SIND)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1922- R.D. Banerjee • In Sindhi language, the word Mohenjo-Daro means mound of the dead'. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mound of the dead • Second largest • Great Bath • Multi-pillared assembly hall • big rectangular building • Houses built of kiln-fired brick. • piece of woven cloth • Great Granary • Bronze dancing girl • Mother Goddess Seal • Pasupathi Mahadev Seal
KALIBANGAN (Rajasthan- Saraswati River)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1953 A. Ghosh • Kalibangan literally means 'black bangles'. • Pieces of terracotta bangles excavated here. • Pre-Harappan as well as Harappan cultural phases. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mud-brick fortification • Ploughed field. • Two platforms with fire altars

CHANHUDARO (Sind, Pakistan)	1931-N. G. Majumdar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only Indus city without a citadel. Pre-Harappan as well as Harappan cultural phase Small ink pot. shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shops
BANAWALI	1973-74 R. S. Bisht	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Statue of mother Goddess Clay bangles Terracotta plough
SURKOTADA (Kutch (Bhuj) district of Gujarat)	J.R Joshi -1972	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only Indus site where the remains of a horse have actually been found
KOT DIJI (sindh River, Pakistan)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pre Harappan and post Harappan phase. Five figurines of Mother Goddess
DHOLAVIRA (Rann of Kutch, Gujarat)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It was excavated in 1990s by a team led by R S Bisht. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Divided into three. Existence of middle town. each part surrounded with massive stone walls. signboard with Indus Script. Water reservoirs
LOTHAL (Sabarmati, Gulf of Khambhat)	1957 S. R. Rao	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only Indus site with an artificial brick dockyard. main seaport of the Indus people massive brick wall, probably as flood protection. Fire altars Entry to the houses were on Main Street. rice husk {rice husk has been found only at Lothal and Rangpur}, bead making factory etc. Iranian seal- direct sea link with Mesopotamia.
Rakhigarhi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amarendra Nath of ASI. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The largest Harappan site Burnt brick houses. The ceramic industry An elaborate drainage system.

SALIENT FEATURES OF THE HARAPPAN CULTURE

TOWN PLANNING

- The Harappan culture was distinguished by its system of **town planning** on the lines of the **grid system** – that is streets and lanes cutting across one another almost at **right angles thus dividing the city into several rectangular blocks**.
- Harappa, Mohenjo-Daro and Kalibangan each had **its own citadel built on a high podium** of mud brick.
- Below the citadel in each city lay a **lower town containing brick houses**, which were inhabited by the common people.
- The **large-scale use of burnt bricks** in almost all kinds of constructions is the important characteristics of the Harappan culture.
- Another remarkable feature was the **underground drainage system** connecting **all houses to the street drains** which were covered by stone slabs or bricks.

GREAT BATH

- Important public space- **Mohenjo-Daro**.
- **Large rectangular tank** in a courtyard
- Surrounded by a **corridor on all four sides**.
- There are **side rooms for changing clothes**.
- The floor of the Bath was made of **burnt bricks**.
- **Water was drawn from a large well** in an adjacent room, and an outlet from one corner of the Bath led to a drain.
- It must have served as a **ritual bathing site**.

HOUSES

- Generally, houses were either **one or two storeys high**, with rooms built around a courtyard.
- Most houses had a **separate bathing area**, and some had wells to supply water.

ECONOMIC LIFE

- **Wheat and barley** were the main crops grown besides sesame, mustard, and cotton. Surplus grain is stored in granaries.
- Animals like sheep, goats and buffalo were domesticated. The **use of horse is not yet firmly established**.
- Bronze and copper vessels are the **outstanding examples of the Harappan metal craft**.
- **Gold and silver ornaments** are found in many places.
- **Pottery remains plain** and, in some places, **red and black painted pottery is found**.
- Internal trade and foreign trade were extensive. **Trade was of the barter type**.
- **The Sumerian texts refer to trade relations with Meluha'** which was the ancient name given to **Indus region**.
- **Cotton was first produced by Indus people** hence Greeks called it **Sindon** which is derived from Sindh.

HARAPPAN SEALS

- Most commonly made of **steatite (soft stone)**.
- **Unicorn is the animal most frequently represented** on the seals.
- **The cow was not represented on the seals and terracotta art of the Harappan culture.**

ARTS

- **Terracotta Figures** - Figures of **men and women, animals and birds** made of terracotta and the carvings on the seals show the degree of proficiency attained by the sculptor.
- **Bronze Dancing Girl- Mohenjo-Daro-** It is remarkable for its workmanship. Its **right-hand** rests on the **hip**, while the **left arm**, covered with bangles, hangs loosely in a **relaxed posture**.
- **Stone Statue-** Two **stone statues from Harappa**, one representing the **back view of a man** and the other of a dancer are also **specimens of their sculpture**.
- **Pottery** -The pottery from Harappa is another specimen of the **fine arts of the Indus people**. The **pots and jars were painted with various designs and colours**. Painted pottery is of better quality. The pictorial motifs consisted of geometrical patterns like **horizontal lines, circles, leaves, plants and trees**. On some pottery pieces we find figures of fish or peacock

SCRIPT AND LANGUAGE

- First to **invent the art of writing**.
- Harappan script is regarded as **pictographic** since its signs **represent birds, fish and a variety of human forms**.
- The script was **boustrophedon written from right to left** in one line and then from **left to right in the next line**.
- The language of the **Harappans is still unknown and must remain so until the Harappan script is deciphered**.

RELIGION

- The chief male deity was the **Pasupathi Mahadeva (proto-Siva)**, represented in seals as sitting in a **yogic posture on a low throne**, and **having three faces and two horns**. He is surrounded by **four animals (elephant, tiger, rhino, and buffalo)**, each facing a different direction, and two deer appear at his feet.
- The chief female deity was **the Mother Goddess**, who has been depicted in various forms.
- There is sufficient evidence for the prevalence of **phallic worship**. Numerous stone symbols of **female sex organs (yoni worship)**, besides those of the **phallus**, have been discovered.
- The **worship of fire is proved by the discovery of fire altars at Lothal, Kalibangan and Harappa**.
- Indus people also worshipped Gods in the form of trees (Peepal etc) and animals (unicorn etc)
- Further they believed in **ghosts and evil forces** and used **amulets as protection against them**.
- **No temples has been found at any of the sites** hence can be said that it was ruled by merchants not priests.

BURIAL PRACTICES

- **Three forms of burials are found at Mohenjo-Daro**, viz. complete burials, fractional burials (burial of some bones after the exposure of the body to wild beasts' birds) and post-cremation burials.
- **Harappa-wooden coffin**
- **Lothal- pot burial**

DECLINE

- According to some scholars, **decline of trade, particularly oceanic trade with the Sumerians**, must have contributed partly in the decline.
- Even though there are various theories for the downfall of this civilization, the most accepted version is that of **ecological destruction**.
 - Natural Calamities such as floods, Earthquakes etc.
 - Decrease in Land fertility
 - Outbreak of an epidemic
 - Deforestation due to constant consumption of wood.
 - Drying up of river-**Kalibangan and Banawali**.
- **Aryan's invasion** is regarded the weakest reason ever cited for its decline.

APSC QUESTIONS

- 1) **The Indus Valley Civilization belongs to the (2011)**
 - a) Paleolithic age
 - b) Mesolithic age
 - c) Neolithic age
 - d) **Chalcolithic age**
- 2) **The Indus Valley monuments were built of (2001)**
 - a) sun-dried bricks
 - b) **burnt bricks**
 - c) stone
 - d) wood and bamboo
- 3) **The dockyard of Indus Civilization is found at (1998)**
 - a) **Lothal**
 - b) Kalibangan
 - c) Ropar
 - d) Rangpur
- 4) **The animal unknown to the Indus Civilization was (1998)**
 - a) Cow
 - b) Bull
 - c) Elephant
 - d) **Horse**

CHAPTER 3: VEDIC CULTURE (1500 BC – 600 BC)

- The cities of the **Harappan Culture** had declined by **1500 B.C.**
- Around this period, the speakers of **Indo-Aryan language, Sanskrit**, entered the north-west India from the **Indo-Iranian region**.
- This period between **1500 B.C and 600 B.C** may be divided into the **Early Vedic Period** or **Rig Vedic Period (1500 B.C -1000 B.C)** and the **Later Vedic Period (1000B.C - 600 B.C)**

WHO ARE ARYANS?

- It is generally agreed that **Aryans originally lived somewhere in Steppes stretching from southern Russia to central Russia.**
- On their way to India, **Aryans first appeared in Iran and a little later than 1500 BC they appeared in India.**
- **Kassite Inscription of about 1600 BC and Mittani Inscription of 1400 BC** found in Iraq bear some Aryan names, which suggest that from Iran a branch of Aryans moved towards west.
- The **Rig Veda has many things in common with the Avesta - the oldest text in Iranian language.**
- Rig Veda is the **earliest specimen of any Indo-European language.**

HOME OF ARYANS

- Different scholars have identified different regions as the original home of the Aryans.
- **Max Muller- Aryan Invasion theory**
 - They came from central Asia with weapons.
 - Aryans possessed chariots driven by horse.
 - They subjugated the natives (**Dasyus**)- **Dasyuhatya (Rig Veda).**
 - Natives moved towards southern part- **Dravidians.**
 - Aryans settled north western part- **Aryavarta.**
- **Bal Gangadhar Tilak-** The Aryan come from Arctic
- **Dayanad Saraswati-** The Aryan come from Tibet.

HOW THEY ENTERED?

- Holy book of Iran '**avesta**' indicates entry of aryaans to India via iran.
- They entered India through **Khyber pass** (in Hindukush mountains) around 1500 BC.

BATTLE OF 10 KINGS 14TH BCE (DASARAJANA YUDDHA)

- Mentioned in **7th Book of Rigveda.**
- **Bharata ruling clan (King Sudas)** was opposed by **host of 10 chiefs** (5 Aryans and 5 non-Aryans) supported by **Vashishta.**
- **Bharat clan emerged victorious and subsequently joined hand with Purus (Most powerful defeated tribe)** and formed a new ruling tribe called **Kurus.**
- **Bharatavarsa – The area where Bharata became dominant prominent.**
- It was fought at the banks of River Ravi.

EARLY VEDIC PERIOD/ RIG VEDIC PERIOD (1500-1000 B. C)

- During the **Rig Vedic period**, the Aryans were mostly confined to the Indus region.
- The Rig Veda refers to **Saptasindhu** or the **land of seven rivers**.
- This includes the five rivers of **Punjab**, namely **Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas and Sutlej along with the Indus and Saraswathi**.
- The political, social and cultural life of the **Rig Vedic people** can be traced from the **hymns of the Rig Veda**.

RIG VEDIC NAME	MODERN NAME
VITASTA	JHELUM
ASIKNI	CHENAB
PARUSHNI	RAVI
VIPASH	BEAS
SHUTUDRI	SUTLEJ
SARASVATI/ DRISHADVATI RIVER	GHAGGAR

POLITICAL LIFE

- The basic unit of political organization was **kula or family**.
- Several families joined together on the basis of their kinship to form a **village or grama**. The leader of **grama** was known as **gramani**.
- When **gramas** clashed with each another it caused **Samgrama** or war.
- A group of villages constituted a larger unit called **visu**. It was headed by **vishayapati**.
- The highest political unit was called **jana or tribe**. The head of the kingdom was called as **rajan or king**.
- The king was assisted by **purohita or priest** and **senanior** commander of the army in his administration.
- The princes received from the people voluntary offerings called **Bali**.
- Presents and spoils of war were perhaps distributed in **some vedic assemblies**.
- There were assemblies called **Sabha ,Samiti, vidatha, Gana**. These assemblies performed **deliberative, military and religious functions**.
- **Sabha**-council of elders.
- **Samiti** -general assembly of the entire people.

KING	Protector, Monarchical and Hereditary
Women	Sabha& Vidatha
Taxation	No officer.

Justice	No officer.
Vrajapati	Authority over pasture ground.
Army	No regular/ standing army; Tribal Group (Grama/ Gana/ Sardha)
Territorial System	No- Term Janapada/ Territory not even used once. More attached to Jana/ Tribal Group- Jana (275).

SOCIAL LIFE

- The Rig Vedic society was **patriarchal**. The basic unit of society was **family or graham**. The head of the family was known as **grahapathi**.
- **Monogamy was generally practiced** while polygamy was prevalent among the royal and noble families.
- Women were given equal opportunities as men for their **spiritual and intellectual development**.
- There were women poets **like Apala, Viswavara, Ghosa and Lopamudra** during the Rig Vedic period.
- Women could even attend the popular assemblies. There was **no child marriage and the practice of sati** was absent.
- Wheat and barley, milk and its products like curd and ghee, vegetables and fruits were the **chief articles of food**.
- The eating of **cow's meat was prohibited since it was a sacred animal**.
- The **social divisions were not rigid** during the **Rig Vedic** period as it was in the later Vedic period.

SOCIAL DIVISION

- Varna or colour was the basis of initial differentiation between **the Vedic and non-Vedic people**.
- The Vedic people were **fair** whereas the **non-Vedic indigenous people** were **dark in complexion and spoke a different language**.
- Thus the Rigveda mentions **arya varna and dasa varna**. Here dasa has been used in the sense of a group different from the Rigvedic people.
- The **dasas and dasyus who were conquered by aryas were treated as slaves & Sudras**.
- The **term dasyuhatya is repeatedly mentioned in the Rigveda**.
- The **slaves were mainly employed for domestic purposes**. During Rigvedic times slaves were not directly used in agriculture or producing activities.

ECONOMIC LIFE

- The Rig Vedic Aryans were **pastoral people and their main occupation was cattle rearing.**
- **Trade was another important economic activity** and rivers served as **important means of transport.** Trade was conducted on **barter system.**
- In the later times, **gold coins called nishka** were used as media of exchange in large transactions

RELIGION

- The Rig Vedic Aryans worshiped the natural forces **like earth, fire, wind, rain and thunder.**
- **Indra was the most popular** among them during the early Vedic period.
- **They prayed mainly for Praja (children), Pasu (cattle), Wealth, Health, Food.**
- There were no temples and **no idol worship during the early Vedic period.** Prayers were offered to the gods in the expectation of rewards.
- The magical power of word **was not considered so important as in the later Vedic period.** Ghee, milk and grain were given as offerings.

Indra (250 times mentioned in Rig Veda)	Thunder – Warrior God- Purandra/ Breaker of forts Rain God.
Agni (200)	Fire – Intermediary b/n God & People
Varuna	Water- Upholder of Natural Order.
Vayu	Wind.
Prithvi	Earth
Soma	God of Plants.
Aditi and Usha.	Appearance of Dawn- not prominent (male gods were far more important)
Marut	Storm God- weather phenomena.

LATER VEDIC PERIOD

- The Aryans further moved towards east in the Later Vedic Period.
- The **Satapatha Brahmana** refers to the expansion of Aryans to the eastern Gangetic plains.
- Several tribal groups and kingdoms are mentioned in the **later Vedic literature.**
- One important development during this period is **the growth of large kingdoms. (Kuru and Panchalas.)**
- **The iron implements have been discovered from this area from the 7th B.C and the metal itself is called Syama or Krishna Aya in the later Vedic texts.**

PAINTED GREY WARE

- The digging and exploration has brought to light nearly 500 sites inhabited which are called PGW sites.
- They belongs to middle and later vedic period.
- Inhabited by people who used earthen bowls & dishes made of Painted Grey Pottery.
- **PGW Sites-Hastinapura, Mathura, Kurukshetra, Indraprastha, Bhagwanpura – Haryana.**

POLITICAL ORGANISATION

- **Larger kingdoms** were formed during the later Vedic period.
- Many **jana or tribes were amalgamated to form janapadas or rashtras** in the later Vedic period
- The king performed **various rituals and sacrifices to strengthen his position**. They include **Rajasuya (consecration ceremony), Asvamedha (horse sacrifice) and Vajpeya (chariot race)**.
- The kings also assumed titles like **Rajavisvajanan, Ahilabhuvanapathi, (lord of all earth), Ekkrat and Samrat (sole ruler)**.
- In the later Vedic period, a large number of new officials were involved in the administration in addition to the **existing purohita, senani and gramani**.
- They include the treasury officer, tax collector and royal messenger.
- At the lower levels, the administration was carried on by the **village assemblies**.
- The importance of the **Samiti and the Sabhahad** diminished during the later Vedic period. The Vidatha completely disappeared.
- The character of sabha and samiti changed now.
- The collection of taxes and tributes seems to have become common.
- **Bhagadugha** was the revenue collector during Vedic period.

King	Royal Power Increased.
Women	No Participation in Assemblies.
Taxation	No officer.
Assembly	Lost importance, Princes and Nobles dominated.
Sangrihitri	Treasurer.
Army	No regular/ standing army.
Territorial System	Yes, term Rashtra which indicates territory appeared first during this time.

ECONOMIC CONDITION

AGRICULTURE

- Iron was used **extensively in this period** and this enabled the people **to clear forests and to bring more land under cultivation**.
- Agriculture became the **chief occupation**. **Improved types of implements were used for cultivation**. Besides **barley, rice and wheat** were grown. **Knowledge of manure was another improvement**.
- The Atharvaveda narrated how to increase the soil fertility and how to improve the productivity of the cultivated land.

ART AND CRAFTS

- They were acquainted with four types of pottery.
 - a) Black and Red ware pottery.
 - b) Black –slipped ware.
 - c) Painted Grey ware. (Most distinctive pottery).
 - d) Red ware. (Most popular).

TRADE

- We can trace only the **faint beginnings of the towns**, which can be called as **Proto- Urban Sites/ Primitive Towns**. (Hastinapur/ Kausambi).
- The Vedic texts also suggest the existence of **sea and sea voyages**. This suggests some kind of **maritime trade existed**.
- The **Later Vedic people were familiar with the sea and they traded with countries like Babylon**.
- A class of **hereditary merchants (vaniya)** came into existence. Vaisyas also carried on trade and commerce. They organized themselves into guilds known as **ganas**.
- Guild was mainly, an **association of people, who earned their living by following one particular trade** though belonging to diverse castes.
- Besides **nishka** of the Rig Vedic period, **gold and silver coins like satamana and krishnala** were used as **media of exchange**.

SOCIAL LIFE

- In the family, the **power of the father increased** during the Later Vedic period.
- There was **no improvement in the status of women**. They were still **considered inferior and subordinate to men**.
- Women also lost their political rights of attending assemblies. **Child marriages had become common**.
- The institution of **Gotra** appeared in the later Vedic times.
- People began to practise **gotra exogamy**.
- No marriage could take place between persons belonging to the same gotra/ having the same ancestor.

SOCIAL DIVISION- VARNA SYSTEM

- It is mentioned in the **Purusha Suktam (Hymns of Cosmic Man)** of 10th Book of Rig Veda.
- The **four varnas in which society came to be divided were the Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras**.
- The growing number of sacrifices and rituals during the period made the **brahmanas** very powerful.
- The **kshatriyas, next in the social hierarchy, were the rulers**. They along with brahmanas **controlled all aspects of life**.
- The **vaishyas**, the most numerous varna were engaged in **agriculture as well as in trade and artisanal activities**.

- The **brahmanas and the kshatriyas** were dependent on the tributes (gifts and taxes) paid to them by **the vaishyas**.
- The **shudras**, the fourth **varna** were at the **bottom of the social hierarchy**. They were supposed to be in the **service of the three upper varnas**. They were **not entitled to the ritual of upanayana samskara**.
- The other three varnas were entitled to such a **ceremony and hence they were known as dvijas**.
- Another important institution that began to take shape was **ashrama or different stages of life**. They were not well established during this period.
- **Brahmacharya (student life), grihastha (householder), and vanaprastha (hermitage)** stages are mentioned in the post Vedic texts.
- But the last stage **Sanyasa (complete retirement)** not well established during this period.

RELIGION

- Gods of the Early Vedic period like **Indra and Agni lost their importance**.
- **Prajapathi (the creator), Vishnu (the protector) and Rudra (the destroyer)** became prominent during the Later Vedic period.
- **The Pushan** who was supposed to look after cattle came to be regarded as the **Gods of Sudras**.
- **Sacrifices** were still important and the rituals connected with them became **more elaborate**.
- The **importance of prayers declined**.
- **Priesthood became a profession and a hereditary one**.
- The formulae for sacrifices were **invented and elaborated by the priestly class**.
- Therefore, **towards the end of this period there was a strong reaction** against priestly domination and against sacrifices and rituals.
- The rise of **Buddhism and Jainism** was the direct result of these elaborate sacrifices.

<u>TERMS</u>	<u>MEANING</u>
Goghna	One who was fed on cattle/ guest
Yajamana	On whose behalf a religious ritual or a yajna is performed by a priest.

ART OF WRITING

- The **Rigveda** was preserved orally before it was **written down** about **300 BCE**.
- Though writings in India can be date back to the time of Harappa, it disappeared soon after. There were **no scripts** during the **Vedic period**.
- No script was developed in rig Vedic India since the **verb "likha-to write" is not mentioned in the Vedas**.

VEDIC CONCEPTS

RITA

- Sanskrit for 'truth' or 'order', Rita is a central concept in Vedic philosophy, used to explain the **principle that governs the order of the universe.**
- Rita is responsible for the **proper functioning of natural, moral, religious** and sacrificial order, and is the **founding principle for dharma (duty) and karma (action).**
- It is said to be a **divine power that provides balance and harmony in the world.**

DHARMA

- The word dharma comes from the Sanskrit root word **dhri**, which means “**to hold,” "to maintain," or "to preserve."**
- On an individual level, dharma can refer to a personal mission or purpose. **All entities have their own Dharma.**
- This includes the **concepts of duty, rights, religion and morally appropriate behaviour**, and so dharma came to be understood as a means to preserve and maintain righteousness.
- The ultimate source of law according to Vedic thinkers is Dharma.

VEDIC LITERATURE

VEDAS

- The word ‘Veda’ signifies knowledge and the texts are actually about providing humans **knowledge to conduct** their entire life on earth and beyond.
- It is written in highly stylised poetic style and the language is **full of symbols and myths.**
- They are considered **sacred** because they are **the divine revelations, which were determined by Gods to guide humans eternally.**
- There are **four major Vedas: Rig Veda, Yajur Veda, Sama Veda and Atharva Veda.**
- The **vedic literature comprise the Samhitas, the Brahmanas, the Aranyakas, and the Upanishads.**
- The **Vedic literature is broadly divided into two categories viz. Shruti and Smriti.**

SHRUTI

- **Shruti**, (Sanskrit: “What Is Heard”) literature is considered to be the product of **divine revelation.**
- Shruti works are considered to have been **heard and transmitted by earthly sages.**
- They **considered being the more authoritative.**
- The revealed texts encompass the **four Vedas—Rigveda, Yajurveda, Samaveda, and Atharvaveda—and the Brahmanas** (ritual treatises), the **Aranyakas (“Forest Books”), and the Upanishads (philosophical elaborations on the Vedas).**

SMRITI

- **Smriti**, (Sanskrit: “Recollection”) that class of Hindu sacred literature based on **human memory.**
- **Smriti literature elaborates, interprets, and codifies Vedic thought** but, being derivative, is considered **less authoritative than the Vedic Shruti.**
- **Post Vedic Classic Sanskrit Literature like Vedanga, Purana and Ithihasa are part of Smriti Literature.**

SAMHITAS

- The Samhitas contain mantras, prayers, **litanies**, and hymns to God.
- The four Samhitas are
 1. Rig Veda
 2. Sama Veda
 3. Yajur Veda
 4. Atharva Veda.

RIGVEDA

- The Rig Veda is the **oldest** existing Veda amongst the other four.
- It consists of 1028 individual Sanskrit hymns.
- It is said to be one of the **first extensive composition in any Indo-European language** that has survived for our perusal.
- Historians argue that it was compiled around **1500-1200 BC**.
- The text is organised in 10 books, known as **Mandalas**, of varying age and length.
- The entire Rig Vedic hymns are dedicated to several deities, in particular to their **Chief Deity, Lord Indra**

SAMAVEDA

- Sama Veda has been named after 'Saman' (melody) and it concentrates on **melody or songs**.
- It consists of hymns, detached verses and 16,000 raga (musical notes) and raginis.
- It is because of the lyrical nature of the text that it has also been called the '**book of chants**'.
- It also shows us how **Indian music** had developed in the Vedic period.

YAJURVEDA

- The name 'Yajus' signifies 'sacrifice' and this Veda concentrates on **rites and mantras** of different types of **sacrifices** that were prevalent in the Vedic times.
- The Yajur Veda is predominantly a **ritual Veda** as it acts like a **guidebook** for the rishis/priests who conduct **sacrificial rituals**.

ATHARVAVEDA

- It is mostly concerned with **peace and prosperity** of the human society and covers all aspects of a **man's daily life**; it specifically focuses on **treatment of several ailments**.
- The book is known to prescribe treatment for almost 99 diseases.
- Most of the text deals with healing and **black and white magic**; speculation on the **changes in the universe**; and even touches upon issues of the **everyday problems** in a householder's life.
- It is the oldest **literary monument of Indian Medicine**. It is believed to be the **origin of Ayurveda, the Indian Science of Medicine**.

BRAHMANAS

- **Each Veda** has a Brahmana attached to it, which is essentially a collection of texts with **commentaries on the particular Veda**.
- They are usually a mixture of **legends, facts, philosophy and detailed explanations of Vedic rituals**.
- They also contain **instructions on how to properly conduct rituals** and enunciate the science of sacrifice.
- Although historians disagree on the dating of the Brahmanas, it is usually pegged to be composed and compiled between **900-700 BC**.

Rig Veda	Aitareya Brahmana	Kaushitaki Brahmana
Sama Veda	Tandya Mahabrahmana	Sadvimsha Brahmana
Yajur Veda	Taittiriya Brahmana	Shatapatha Brahmana
Atharva Veda	Gopatha Brahmana	

ARANYAKAS

- The Aranyakas are also **texts attached to the Vedas** and they describe the **philosophy behind the rituals and sacrifices** involved in the Vedas from various perspectives.
- It is argued **that holy and learned men, called Munis**, who preferred to dwell within the limits of the forests, taught them.
- As similar to **Brahmanas**, each Veda also has a **accompanying Aranyaka**.

UPANISHADS

- Interestingly, the term Upanishad or **u** (at), **pa** (foot), **ni** (down) and **s(h)ad** (to sit), i.e. **to sit down near** (the teacher), **describes the text completely**.
- A collection of **more than 200 Upanishads** are known and the teacher usually passed **them down verbally to his students in the forest while they sat in front of him**.
- This tradition was part of the **guru-shishya parampara**.
- They are generally the **last part of the Vedas**, they are also known as **Vedanta** or 'end (anta) of the Veda'.
- They continue to talk about the **abstract and philosophical problems** faced by mankind, especially about the **origin of this universe, supposed origin of the mankind, life and death cycle and the material and spiritual quests of man**.
- Upanishads are referred to as the **jnana-kanda**.

MUNDAKA UPANISHAD

- **Satyameva Jayate** the national motto of India, is taken from a hymn of the ancient Indian wisdom text, the **Mundaka Upanishad**.
- This Upanishad is part of **Atharva Veda**.

KATHA UPANISHAD

- It contains famous dialogue between **Nachiketa and yama**.
- It is part of **Yajur Veda**.

APSC QUESTIONS

1) The ultimate source of the law, according to the Vedic thinkers is the (1998)

- a) Monarch
- b) People
- c) Council of ministers
- d) **Dharma**

2) The normal form of government during the Rig Vedic age was (1998)

- a) **Hereditary monarchy**
- b) Direct democracy
- c) Oligarchy
- d) Merchant's Guild

CHAPTER 4: JAINISM AND BUDDHISM

LIFE OF VARDHAMANA MAHAVIRA (540-648 BC)

- Vardhamana Mahavira was **the 24th Tirthankara of the Jain tradition.**
- He was born at Kundagrama near **Vaisali** to **Kshatriya** parents **Siddhartha and Trisala.**
- He married Yasoda and gave birth to a daughter.
- At the age of thirty he became an ascetic and wandered for twelve years. In the 13th year of his penance, he attained the highest spiritual knowledge called **Kevala Gnana.**
- Thereafter, he was called **Mahavira and Jina.** His followers were called **Jains** and his religion **Jainism.**
- He preached his **doctrines** for **30 years** and died at the age of **72** at Pava near Rajagriha

THREE RATNAS

- **Right faith (Samyak vishwas)**
- **Right knowledge (Samyak jnan)**
- **Right conduct (Samyak karma)**

MAHAVARTAS/ 5 GREAT VOWS

- **AHIMSA-(NON- VIOLENCE)** –It is the **cardinal principle of Jainism** and hence it is known as the **cornerstone of Jainism.** **Non-violence is the supreme religion** (Ahimsa parmo dharma). According to Jainism all living beings, **irrespective of their size, shape, or different spiritual developments are equal.** Jainism allows laypeople to use only **vegetables as a food for survival.** Therefore, **Jainism preaches strict vegetarianism, and prohibits non-vegetarian foods.**
- **SATYA (NOT TO LIE)** -Jainism insists that **one should not only refrain from falsehood, but should always speak the truth, which should be wholesome and pleasant.** One should **remain silent if the truth causes pain, hurt, anger, or death of any living being.**

- **APARIGARH (NOT TO ACQUIRE PROPERTY)**- Jains believe that possessions are an obstacle to liberation. Jain monks have virtually no possessions, while lay Jains try to minimise their possessions.
- **NON-STEALING (ACHAURYA OR ASTEYA)**: Stealing consists of taking another's property without his consent, or by unjust or immoral methods.
- **CELIBACY / CHASTITY (BRAHMACHARYA)**: Total abstinence from sensual pleasure and the pleasure of all five senses are called celibacy. Monks are required to observe this vow strictly and completely. It is said that only 5th doctrine was added by Mahavira, other four being taken from his previous teachers. Even though Parsva was had asked his followers to cover the upper and lower portions of their body, Mahavira asked them to discard clothes completely. This implies that Mahavira asked his followers to lead a more austere life

MAJOR DOCTRINES OF JAINISM

- **Concept of God** – Did not believe in the creator God. But recognized the existence of God and placed it below the Jina. There is no creator God of the universe. If Jain religion's concept of God is trusted then this signifies all of us can become God since every human being has the potential and with practices like forced meditation (hath yoga) and fasting every soul can become perfect.
- **Vedas** -Rejected the authority of the Vedas and the Vedic rituals.
- **Varna**- Jainism didn't condemn the Varna system as Buddhism did. It considered a person is born in higher or lower Varna in consequence of the virtues acquired by him in the previous birth. Through pure and meritorious life even members of the lower caste can attain liberation.
- **Karma** -Believed in karma. All activities and thoughts create karmas, which can be negative or positive. Bad karmas lead to rebirth as a creature of low spirituality and minimal senses, whereas good karmas affect birth as a god or human being.
- **Soul** -The Jain word that comes closest to soul is jiva, which means a conscious, living being. Even the practice of agriculture was considered sinful as it causes injury to the earth, worms, and animals. Jains believe that there are an infinite number of souls in the universe - every living thing, no matter how primitive, is a jiva.
- **Transmigration of soul** – Jainism believed in Believed in transmigration of soul. The aim of Jainism is liberation of the soul from this cycle, which requires the soul to be free of karma.
- **Doctrine of asceticism and renunciation** -The doctrine of asceticism and renunciation was also carried to extreme lengths by the practice of starvation, nudity and other forms of self-torture.

JAIN PHILOSOPHY

- **UNIVERSAL LAW**- Jains believe that the universe has always existed and will always exist. It is regulated by cosmic laws and kept going by its own energy processes. Jains do

not believe that the universe was created by any sort of **God**. All the constituents and actions are governed by **universal natural laws**.

- **ANEKANTAVADA** – means "**non-absolutism**," is one of the basic principles of Jainism that **encourages acceptance of relativism and pluralism**. Anekāntavāda represents the idea that **reality is perceived** differently from **diverse points of view**, and that **no single point of view represents the complete truth yet taken together they comprise the complete truth**.
- **SYADVADA**: All our **judgements are necessarily relative, conditional, and limited**. Absolute **affirmation and absolute negation both** are wrong. All judgements are conditional.

GREAT SCHISM IN JAINISM

- By the **end of the fourth century B.C.**, there was a **serious famine** in the Ganges valley.
- Many Jain monks led by **Bhadrabagu and Chandragupta Maurya** came to **Sravana Belgola in Karnataka**.
- Those who stayed back in **north India** were led by a monk **named Sthulabahu** who **changed the code of conduct for the monks**.
- This led to the **division of Jainism into two sects Svetambaras (whiteclad) and Digambaras (Sky-clad or Naked)**.

SVETAMBARAS AND DIGAMBARAS

<u>POINT OF DIFFERENCE</u>	<u>DIGAMBARAS</u>	<u>SVETHAMBARA</u>
<u>SCRIPTURE</u>	Original texts of Jainism were lost ago.	They have the original Jain scriptures. However, they also accept that their collection is also incomplete.
<u>LIBERATION OF WOMAN</u>	Women cannot achieve nirvana or liberation directly.	Women are equally capable of achieving liberation as a man.
<u>DRESS</u>	One must renounce everything including clothes.	Practice of nudity is not essential to attain liberation. Therefore, they wear white clothes.
<u>POSSESSIONS</u>	Not allowed to have any kind of possessions.	Allowed to possess some essential things.
	Not married.	Married.

<u>MAHAVIRA MARRIAGE</u>		
<u>IDOLS</u>	Digambara idols are naked, undecorated with downcast eyes.	Decorated with jewels, wearing loincloth with prominent staring eyes

SALLEKHANA / SANTHARA

- Santhara, also called '**Pandit-maran**', '**Sallekhana**' and '**Sakham-maran**', is believed to have been practised since the foundation of Jainism and finds mention in its agams (religious texts).
- Voluntarily fasting to death by **gradually reducing the intake of food and liquids**.

SUBJECTS OF JAINISM

DIGAMBARAS

- Bisapantha
- Terapantha
- Taranapanth/Samaiyapantha
- Gumanapantha
- Totapantha
- Kanjipantha

SVETHAMBARAS

- Murtipujaka,
- Sthanakvasi,
- Terapanthi

JAIN COUNCILS

• FIRST COUNCIL

It was held at **Pataliputra** by **Sthulabahu** in the beginning of the third century BC and resulted in the **compilation of 12 Angas to replace the lost 14 Purvas**.

Svetambaras accepted but Digambaras refused to accept this claiming that all old scriptures were lost. The teachings of **Jain** Tirthankaras are compiled in **12 Angas**.

The sacred books of Jainas are collectively known as Siddhanta or Agamas.

• SECOND COUNCIL

It was held at **Vallabhi (Gujarat)** in the **5th century AD** under the leadership of **Devaradhi Kshamasramana** and resulted in final compilation of **12 Angas and 12 Upangas (minor sections)**.

JAIN LITERATURE

- The texts containing the teachings of **Mahavira** are called the Agamas, and are the canonical literature - the scriptures - of **Svetambara Jainism**.

- The sacred literature of the **Svetambaras** is written in a form of Prakrit called **Ardhamagadhi**, and may be classified as follows:
- (a) **The twelve Angas** (b) **The twelve Upangas** (c) **The ten Parikarnas** (d) **The six Chhedasutras** (e) **The four Mulasutras**.

CONTRIBUTION OF JAINISM

- ✓ First **serious attempt to mitigate the evils of Varna order & ritualistic Vedic Religion**.
- ✓ They **adopted Prakrit Language of common people** to preach their doctrines. Their religious literature was **written Ardhamagadhi**.
- ✓ Many regional languages developed **out of Prakrit Language (example – Sauraseni- from which grew Marathi Language)**.
- ✓ They wrote extensively in **sanskrit and Kannada language**
- ✓ Jaina composed earliest important works in **Apabhramsa** and its first grammar.

BUDDHISM

LIFE OF GAUTAMA BUDDHA (563-483BC)

- **Gautama or Siddhartha**, the founder of Buddhism, was born in **563 B.C.** in **Sakya Kshatriya family in Lumbini Garden near Kapilavastu (foothills of Nepal)**.
- His father was **Suddodhana** and mother **Mayadevi (Princess from Kosalan Dynasty)**.
- As his mother died at **childbirth**, he was brought up by his **aunt Prajapati Gautami**.
- At the **age of sixteen he married Yasodhara** and gave birth to a son, **Rahula**.
- The sight of an **old man, a diseased man, a corpse and an ascetic** turned him away from worldly life. He left home at the age of **twenty nine** in search of Truth.
- He wandered for **seven years** and **met several teachers** but could not get enlightenment.
- At last, he sat under a **bodhi tree at Bodh Gaya** and did **intense penance**, after which he got **Enlightenment (Nirvana) at the age of thirty-five**.
- Since then, he became known as the **Buddha or 'the Enlightened One'**.
- He delivered his first sermon at **Sarnath near Banaras** and for the next **forty-five** years he led the life of a preacher. He died at the **age of eighty in (483 BC) at Kusinagara (U.P)**

DOCTRINES OF BUDDHISM

FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS

1. The world is full of **suffering**.
2. The cause of suffering is **desire**.
3. If desires are get rid of, **suffering can be removed**.
4. This can be done by following the **Eight fold Path**.

MIDDLE PATH

- The middle path generally refers to the avoidance of two extremes of practical life, namely, indulgence in sensual pleasures on the one hand and severe asceticism on the other.

EIGHT-FOLD PATH(ASHTANGAMARGA)

Right Understanding	Right Thought.	Right Action	Right Livelihood.
Right Effort.	Right Exercise	Right Mindfulness	Right Concentration.

NIRVANA

- If **desires are conquered** nirvana will be attained.
- A man will be **free from cycle of birth and death.**
- **Eternal state of peace** which is free from desire and sorrow.
- **Annihilation of desire.**
- The Buddha taught that when Nirvana is achieved, Buddhists are able to see the world as it really is.
- Nirvana means realizing and accepting the Four Noble Truths and being awake to reality.

CODE OF CONDUCT (FIVE PERCEPTS)

The Five Precepts are the Buddhist version of a code of conduct or rules to help people behave in a **moral and ethical way**. Buddhists should follow the Five Precepts to ensure they are **living a morally good life**.

- (1) Do not **covet the property** of others
- (2) Do not **commit violence.**
- (3) Do not **use intoxicants.**
- (4) Do not **speak a lie**
- (5) Do not **indulge in corrupt practices.**

TEACHINGS OF BUDDHA

- **GOD AND SOUL**-Buddha **neither accepts God nor rejects the existence of God**. He taught that the **soul does not exist**. Buddhists believe that **nothing is permanent. Everything changes**. **So, this** means that things like **everlasting souls or eternal gods cannot exist**.
- **LAW OF KARMA**– The action driven by intention. Karma refers to good or bad actions a person takes during her lifetime. Buddhists believe we are in control of our ultimate fates.
- **VEDAS & RITUALS** -Buddha **believed that rituals were nothing on their own**. They don't have any importance unless someone believes in them. He **opposed and rejected the blind faith of anything, including Vedas**.
- **CONCEPT OF REBIRTH** - Buddhists believe that what they are reborn as in future will depend on how they live their current life
- **SALVATION** -For a **Buddhist salvation is reaching Nirvana**.
- **CASTE SYSTEM** - Buddhism's individual outlook and **disregard for the caste system** in attaining enlightenment were appealing to people in lower castes. Buddhism suggested that

individual people might be able to attain enlightenment in this life and held that **caste was not a punishment for deeds committed in a past life.**

SPREAD OF BUDDHISM

- **ROLE OF SANGHA**-Buddha had **two kinds of disciples – monks (bhikshus) and lay worshippers (upasikas).** The monks were organized into the Sangha for the purpose of spreading his teachings. The membership was open to all persons, male or female and without any caste restrictions.
- **USE OF PALI LANGUAGE** - It's a sacred language mainly used in early Buddhist scriptures. The ancient Buddhist scriptures called Tripitakas are written in Pali Language.

BUDDHIST COUNCILS

1ST COUNCIL @ RAJGIR

- Was held immediately after the death of Buddha at Saptaparni cave in which the unwritten teachings of Buddha were penned down after his death.
- Held at Rajgir under the patronage of Ajatashatru under the chairmanship of Mahakashyap
- Ananda composed Suttapitaka (Buddha's Teachings) and Upali composed Vinaypitaka (Monastic code for Buddhism).

2ND COUNCIL @ VAISHALI

- Was held approx. 100 years after the death of Buddha under the patronage of King Kalasoka under the chairmanship of Sabakami
- Mainly due to 10 disputed points under Vinaypitaka (Monastic codes of Buddhism).

Schism in the second council

- After unsuccessfully trying to modify the Vinaya, a small group of "elderly members", i.e. **sthaviras**, broke away from the majority **Mahāsāṃghika** during the Second Buddhist council, giving rise to the **Sthavira sect**.
- It is explained that the schism resulted from the majority (**Mahāsāṃgha**) refusing to accept the addition of rules to the Vinaya by the minority (**Sthaviras**).
- Many scholars also look to the Mahāsāṃghika branch for the initial development of **Mahayana Buddhism**.

3RD COUNCIL @ PATLIPUTRA

- Held under the patronage of Ashoka under the chairmanship of Mogliputra Tissa
- Compilation of **Abhidhamma pitaka** took place (Philosophical exposition of Buddhism).

4TH COUNCIL @ KASHMIR

- Held under the patronage of Kanishka under the chairmanship of Vasumitra
- Resulted in division of Buddhism into **Hinyana and Mahayana**
- **Asvaghosa (Deputy)** participated in this council and all the deliberations were made in Sanskrit.

TRI PITAKAS OF BUDDHISM

PITAKA	NAME	CONTENT
Sutta	Basket of discourse	Texts constituting the basic doctrinal section of the Buddhist canon .
Vinaya	Basket of discipline	Monastic rules of conduct for monks and nuns
Abhidhamma	Basket of higher doctrine	They are generally claimed to represent not the words of the Buddha himself but those of disciples and great scholars .

MAHAYANA AND HINAYANA BUDDHISM

HINAYANA

- Its followers believed in the **original teachings of Buddha**.
- They sought **individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation**.
- They **did not believe in idol-worship**.
- **The oldest school of Hinayana Buddhism is the Sthaviravada** (Theravada in Pali) or the 'Doctrine of the Elders'.
- Buddhism preached and **propagated** by Ashoka is known as Hinyana

MAHAYANA

- Its followers believed in the **heavenliness of Buddha** and sought the **salvation of all through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisattvas**.
- Believes in Idol worship of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas.
- **Zen, Pure Land, Tiantai, and Nichiren, Shingon and Tibetan Buddhism are traditions of Mahayana**.
- Mahayana believed in universal **liberation from suffering for all beings** (hence the "Great Vehicle").
- **Kanishka patronized Mahayana Buddhism**.
- The language adopted to preach Mahayana Buddhism was **Sanskrit**.

BODHISATTVA

- **Bodhisattva**, (Sanskrit), Pali **bodhisatta** ("one whose goal is awakening") means one who seeks awakening (bodhi)—hence, an individual on the path to becoming a buddha.

- Bodhisattvas are enlightened beings who have **put off entering paradise** in order to help others attain enlightenment.
- Renouncing their own salvation and immediate entrance into nirvana, they devote all their power and energy to **saving suffering beings in this world.**

BODHISATTVA	FEATURES
Avalokitesvara/ Padmapani/ Lokeshvara	The bodhisattva of compassion , the listener of the world's cries who uses skilful means to come to their aid.
Vajrapani	Vajrapani is contemplated to manifest all the powers of Buddha.
Manjusri	He is associated with the Wisdom of Buddha and is a male Bodhisattva with a wielding sword in his hand.
Maitreya	A Future Buddha who will appear on Earth in the future, achieves complete enlightenment, and teaches the pure dharma.

PARAMITAS

- **Paramita** is a Sanskrit term, which means **"perfection"**
- To become Bodhisattvas, Buddhists must practise various characteristics, which **Mahayana Buddhists call the Six Perfections.**
- The Six Perfections, or paramitas, are **guides for Mahayana Buddhist practice.**
- They are **virtues to be cultivated to strengthen practice** and bring one to enlightenment.
- In time, a set of **six perfections became standard in Mahāyāna sūtras.**

VAJRAYANA BUDDHISM (TANTRIC BUDDHISM)

- Vajrayana school developed as a result of royal courts sponsoring both Buddhism and Shaivism, i.e., they say, it was **influenced by Hinduism.**
- The **main deity is Tara** (a lady).
- Vajrayana is **based on Mahayana Buddhist philosophy.**
- It believes in **Tantra's, Mantras and Yantras** superiority as being a faster vehicle to liberation containing many skillful methods of tantric ritual.

THERAVADA BUDDHISM/ SOUTHERN BUDDHISM

- It refers to the school of **elder monks.** The school uses Buddha's teaching preserved in the **Pali Canon** as its doctrinal core.
- The ultimate goal is the **cessation of the kleshas** and the attainment of the sublime state of Nirvana.

- Theravada is contemplated to be a **successor of Hinayana school**.
- Countries following it include **Sri Lanka, Cambodia, Laos, Thailand, Myanmar, etc.**

BHUMISPARSHA MUDRA

- ‘Touching the Earth.
- It is more commonly known as the ‘**earth witness’ mudra**.
- Symbolizes the Buddha’s **enlightenment under the bodhi tree**.
- **Buddha’s calling of the earth to witness his purity and chastity despite the temptations of Mara.**

DHYAN MUDRA

- It is also known as **Samadhi or Yoga Mudra**.
- ‘The **Mudra of meditation, of concentration on the good law**.
- Attainment of **spiritual perfection**.
- Buddha used this Mudra while meditating under the **Pipal tree before his enlightenment**.

DHARMA CHAKRA MUDRA

- Gesture of ‘**teaching of the wheel of dharma**’.
- Buddha performed the dharmachakra mudra in his **first sermon in Sarnath** after he attained enlightenment.
- **Buddha, dharma and sangha**, is represented by the three stretched fingers of the left hand.

TRI RATNAS OF BUDDHISM

1. **Budhha (The enlightened)**
2. **Dhamma (Doctrine of Buddhism)**
3. **Sangha (Order of Buddhism)**

PLACES VISITED BY BUDDHA

The kingdoms he visited are **Kosala and Magadha Kingdom**. The places visited under these two kingdoms include **Kapilavastu, Rajgriha, Vaishali, Gaya, Bodh Gaya, Sarnath, Kosambi, Shravasti** (capital of Kosala Kingdom), **Kushinagar, Nalanda, Mathura, Varanasi, Saket, Champapuri, etc.**

ASHTAMAHASTHANAS

Lumbini, Bodh-Gaya, Sarnath and Kusinagar, where the four principal events of the **Buddha’s life, namely, Birth, Enlightenment, first sermon and Mahaparinirvana took place**. To these are added four places **Sravasti, Rajgriha, Vaishali and Sankasya**. These eight places have all along been considered as **the eight holy places (ashtamahasthanas)**.

CENTRAL INSTITUTE OF BUDDHIST STUDIES

- Formerly known as the **School of Buddhist Philosophy**.
- It is located in Leh town of **Ladakh** is a deemed university under Ministry of Culture.
- It was founded in **1959**.

IMPORTANT BUDDHIST MONASTRIES OF INDIA

BUDDHIST MONASTERY	IMPORTANT FEATURE
Hemis Monastery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ladakh – Indus River
Tabo Monastery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spiti Valley- Himachal Pradesh
Tsulglagkhang Monastery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also known as Dalai Lama's temple. • Macloedganj ,Dharamshala Himachal Pradesh. • Home for His Holiness Dalai Lama
Tawang Monastery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arunachal Pradesh • Largest Monastery in India • Second Largest in the world
Bylakuppe Monastery (Namdraling)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mysore (Karnataka) • Largest teaching centre of the Nyingma lineage of Tibetan Buddhism.
Rumtek Monastery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sikkim
Mindrolling Monastery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dehradun, Uttarakhand

APSC QUESTIONS

1)The largest Buddhist monastery in India is located in (2020)

- a) Sanchi
- b) Bodhgaya
- c) Nalanda
- d) Tawang

2)Eight-fold path of the Buddha is known as the 'Middle Path' because it (2016)

- a) Does not attach too much importance to knowledge and conduct
- b) Attaches equal importance to knowledge and conduct
- c) Avoids self-indulgence as well as self-immolation
- d) Is open to the clergy and the laity

3)The Central Institute of Buddhist Studies is located in which city? (2016)

- a) Shimla
- b) Srinagar
- c) Dharamsala
- d) Leh

CHAPTER 5: MAHAJANAPADAS AND RISE OF MAGADHA- PERSIAN AND MACEDONIAN INVASIONS

SIXTEEN MAHAJANAPADAS

- ✓ The Buddhist literature **Anguttara Nikaya** gives a list of sixteen great kingdoms called 'Sixteen Mahajanapadas'.

<u>NO</u>	<u>Mahajanapada</u> <u>s</u>	<u>Capital</u>	<u>Modern Day</u> <u>Location</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
<u>1</u>	Anga	Champa	Bihar	It was swallowed by Magadha.
<u>2</u>	Magadha	Girivraja/Rajgriha	Bihar	
<u>3</u>	Vajjis	Vaishali	Bihar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ It includes 8 clans. ✓ Litchchhavis most powerful.
<u>4</u>	Kasi	Varanasi	U.P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ It submitted to the power of Kosala.
<u>5</u>	Kosala	Sravasti	U.P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ It contains important city Ayodhya. ✓ It included Sakyas of Kapilavastu- the birth place of Buddha. ✓ Most famous ruler was Prasenjit whose sister was married to Bimbisara ✓ After his death Kosala became part of Magadha.
<u>6</u>	Mallas	Kusinara.	U.P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ The place where Gautama Buddha passed away.

<u>7</u>	Vatsas	Kausumbi.(Near Allahabad)	U.P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ Popular ruler was Udayana. ✓ After his death, Vatsa was annexed to the Avanti kingdom
<u>8</u>	Avanti	Northern- Ujjain Southern- Mahishamati	U.P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ Eventually Ujjain surpassed Mahishamati. ✓ Most important ruler was Pradyota ✓ Patronized Buddhism ✓ Finally, was annexed to Magadha.
<u>9</u>	Gandhara	Taxila	Covered the western part of Pakistan and eastern Afghanistan.	
<u>10</u>	Kamboja	Rajpur	Covered the area of Hindukush (modern Hazara districts of Pakistan)	
<u>11</u>	Asmaka	Potana	Situated in the southern part of the India between the rivers Narmada and Godavari.(Andhra Pradesh)	

<u>12</u>	Surasena	Mathura	Covered the area around Mathura.	
<u>13</u>	Chedi	Shuktimati	Covering the modern Bundelkhand area (River Ken, Yamuna)	
<u>14</u>	Kurus	Hastinapur/Indraprastha	Covering the modern Haryana and Delhi area to the west of River Yamuna	
<u>15</u>	Matsya	ViratNagara	Covering the area of Alwar, Bharatpur and Jaipur in Rajasthan	
<u>16</u>	Panchala	Ahichhatra(Uttara Panchala) and Kampilya(Dakshina Panchala)	Covered the area of present western UP up to the east of river Yamuna up to Kosala janapada.	

HARYANKA DYNASTY

BIMBISARA (546 – 494 BC)

- Bimbisara belonged to the Haryanka dynasty.
- He was contemporary of both Vardhamana Mahavira and Gautama Buddha.
- Set up his capital at Rajgir (Known as Girivraja). It was surrounded by five hills, the openings in which were closed by stone walls on all sides. This made Rajgir Impregnable.
- Strengthened his position by marriage alliances (Kosala, Lichhavi (Vaishali) and Madra clan (Punjab))
- He defeated Brahmadatta of Anga and annexed that kingdom.

AJATASHATRU(494 - 462 B.C.)

- Killed **his father and succeeded to the throne**
- Fought with **Kosala and Vaishali (Lichhavis – destroyed it in 16 years) and won both wars.**
- **He possessed a chariot to which a mace was attached, and it facilitated mass killings.**
- He realised the strategic importance of the small village, Pataligrama (future Pataliputra). He fortified it to serve as a **convenient base of operations against Vaisali.**
- **Embraced Buddhism** and led the **foundation for 1st Buddhist council at Rajgir.** He is said to have met Gautama Buddha. This scene is also **depicted in the sculptures of Barhut.**

UDAYIN

- Successor of **Ajatashatru**
- Founded **new capital at Pataliputra.** It is situated at the **confluence of the two rivers, the Ganges and the Son.**
- Later it became famous as the **imperial capital of the Mauryas.** Udayin's successors were **weak rulers and hence Magadha was captured by Saisunaga.**
- Thus the Haryanka dynasty came to an end and the **Saisunaga dynasty came to power.**

SHISHUNAGAS

- The **genealogy and chronology of the Saisunagas are not clear.**
- Temporary **shifted the capital to Vaishali.**
- **Defeated Avanti and brought end to 100-year-old rivalry.**
- After Sisunaga, the mighty empire began to collapse.
- His successor was **Kakavarman or Kalasoka.**
- During his reign the **second Buddhist Council was held at Vaisali.**
- **Kalasoka was killed by the founder of the Nanda dynasty**

NANDAS

MAHAPADMANANDA

- Known as **Ekarat (sole king who destroy others)**
- **Conquered Kalinga and brought image of Jina as trophy.**
- It seems that he not only conquered Kalinga but also Koshala which had probably rebelled against him.
- **Hathigumpha inscription of Kharavela King (Kalinga) refers to conquest of Kalinga by Nandas.**

DHANANANDA

- **Last ruler of Nanda dynasty**
- He kept the Magadhan empire intact and possessed a powerful army and enormous wealth.
- During his reign, **Alexander invaded India** but did not move ahead to east (Nanda's Power).

- The enormous wealth of the Nandas is also referred to in the **Tamil Sangam work Ahananuru by the poet Mamulanar.**
- The **oppressive way of tax collection** by Dhana Nanda was resented by the people.
- Taking advantage of this, **Chandragupta Maurya and Kautilya** initiated a popular movement against the Nanda rule.

CAUSE OF MAGADHA'S SUCCESS

- **Capitals: Rajgir (Surrounded by 5 hills) + Patliputra (Surrounded by Ganga, Gandak, Son and Ghagra river → True Jaladurga).**
- Her **strategic position between the upper and lower part of the Gangetic valley** was a great advantage.
- It had a **fertile soil**. The **iron ores in the hills near Rajgir** and **copper and iron deposits** near Gaya added to its natural assets.
- Her location at the **centre of the highways of trade** of those days contributed to her wealth.
- **Magadha → 1st used elephants** in war against enemies.

PERSIAN INVASIONS

<u>RULER</u>	<u>REMARKS</u>
Cyrus (558 – 530 B.C)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ The founder of the Achaemenid Empire, the first Persian empire. ✓ First conqueror who led an expedition and entered into India. ✓ Captured Gandhara region.
Darius I (522 – 486 B.C.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ Conquered the Indus valley in 518 B.C. and annexed the Punjab and Sindh.
Xerxes (465-456 B.C.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ Xerxes faced a defeat in Greece. ✓ After this failure, the Achaemenians could not follow a forward policy in India. ✓ Control of Persians slackened on the eve of Alexander's invasion of India.

EFFECT OF PERSIAN INVASIONS

- Growth of **Indo-Iranian commerce**.
- It prepared the ground for **Alexander's invasion**.
- The use of the **Kharoshti script**, a form of Iranian writing became popular in northwestern India.
- **Influence of Persian art on the art of the Mauryas**, particularly the monolithic pillars of Asoka.
- **Very idea of issuing edicts by Asoka** and the wording used in the edicts are traced to **Iranian influence**.

ALEXANDER INVASION OF INDIA (327-325 B.C.)

BATTLE OF HYDASPES (326 BC)

- It's the **fourth and last pitched battle fought by Alexander the Great** during his campaign of conquest in Asia.
- It was fought between **Alexander the Great and King Porus** on the **banks of River Jhelum (known to the ancient Greeks as Hydaspes)**.
- Although **Porus had a strong army, he lost the battle**. Alexander was impressed by the **courage and heroism of this Indian prince**, after the battle, **asked Porus to become one of his satraps (Governor)**.

EFFECT OF ALEXANDER INVASIONS

- First time **ancient European came to contact ancient India**.
- **Greek settlements in north –western India**.
- Many historians had **written** about **Alexander's Indian Campaign** through this it's possible to **trace the chronology of Indian Rulers also**.
- It encouraged **political unification of north India under the Mauryas**. The system of **small independent states came to an end**.
- It also paved the way for **direct contact between India and Greece**.
- The routes opened by **him**, and **his naval explorations increased the existing facilities for trade between India and West Asia**.
- The **system of military Governship** was first introduced in India by Greeks.

CHAPTER 6: THE MAURYAN EMPIRE (325 BC-183BC)

LITERARY SOURCES

- **Kautilya's Arthashastra**
 - This book in Sanskrit was written by Kautilya, a contemporary of Chandragupta Maurya.
 - Kautilya was also called 'Indian Machiavelli'.
 - The manuscript of Arthashastra was first discovered by **R. Sharma** Sastri in 1904.
 - The Arthashastra contains 15 books and 180 chapters but it can be divided into three parts:
 - The first deals with the king and his council and the departments of government;
 - The second with civil and criminal law;
 - The third with diplomacy and war.
- **Visakadatta's Mudrarakshasa**
 - The Mudrarakshasa written by Visakadatta is a drama in Sanskrit.
 - It describes how Chandragupta with the assistance of Kautilya overthrew the Nandas.
- **Megasthenes' Indica**
 - Megasthenes was the Greek ambassador in the court of Chandragupta Maurya.
 - It gives details about the Mauryan administration, particularly the administration of the capital city of Pataliputra and also the military organization.
- **Ceylonese Chronicles**
 - The Ceylonese Chronicles Dipavamsa and Mahavamsa written in Pali language throws light on the role of Asoka in spreading Buddhism in Sri Lanka.

ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOURCES

- The inscriptions of Asoka were first deciphered by James Princep in 1837.
- They are written in Pali language and in some places Prakrit was used. The Brahmi script was employed for writing.
- In the Northwestern India Asokan inscriptions were found in Karoshti script.
- There are fourteen Major Rock Edicts. The major pillar Edicts were erected in important cities. There are minor Rock Edicts and minor pillar Edicts.
- These Edicts of Asoka deal with Asoka's Dhamma and also instructions given to his officials.
 - The XIII Rock Edict gives details about his war with Kalinga.
 - The Pillar Edict VII gives a summary of his efforts to promote the Dhamma within his kingdom.

CHANDRAGUPTA MAURYA (322 – 298 B.C.)

- Chandragupta Maurya was the founder of the Mauryan Empire.

- He captured **Pataliputra** from the last ruler of the **Nanda dynasty, Dhanananda**. In this task he was assisted by Kautilya, who was also known as **Chanakya or Vishnugupta**.
- In **305 B.C.**, he marched against **Selukas Niketar**, who was Alexander's General controlling the **northwestern India**. Chandragupta Maurya defeated him and a treaty was signed. By this treaty, **Selukas Niketar surrendered a vast territory**.
- **Megasthenes was a Greek ambassador** in the court of Chandragupta Maurya
- Chandragupta became a **Jain** and went to **Sravanbelgola with Bhadrabahu**, where he died by slow starvation.
- Under **Chandragupta Maurya**, for the first time, the whole of northern India was **united**.

CHANAKYA

- Chanakya, also known as Kautilya or Vishnugupta, was born in Pataliputra, Magadha (modern Bihar, India).
- He was a professor (acharya) of political science at the Takshashila University and later the Prime Minister of the Chandragupta Maurya.

BINDUSARA (298 – 273 B.C.)

- Son of Chandra Gupta Maurya
- Bindusara was called by the Greeks as "**Amitragatha**" meaning slayer of enemies.
- The **Sangam Tamil literature** also confirms the Mauryan **invasion of the far south**.
- Therefore, it can be said that **the Mauryan Empire under Bindusara** extended up to **Mysore**.
- **Bindusara supported the Ajivikas, a religious sect.**

ASHOKA THE GREAT (273 – 232 B.C.)

- The most important event of Asoka's reign was his victorious war with Kalinga in 261 B.C. After the war he **annexed Kalinga to the Mauryan Empire**.
- Another most important effect of the **Kalinga war** was that **Asoka embraced Buddhism under the influence of Buddhist monk, Upagupta**.
- In other words, **Bherighosa was replaced by Dhammaghosha**.
- **Bherigoshha means war drums**. After the war of Kalinga dismayed Asoka declared that **now instead of Bherigoshha he would favour in future Dhammagoshha (Drum of Dhamma)**
- Under Ashoka, the Mauryan Empire reached its climax. For the first time, **the whole of the subcontinent, leaving out the extreme south, was under imperial control**.
- Asoka sent missionaries to **the kingdoms of the Cholas and the Pandyas, and five States ruled by Greek kings**.

ASHOKA AND BUDDHISM

- According to some scholars, his conversion to Buddhism was gradual and not immediate.

- He had visited important places associated with Buddhism like Bodh-Gaya, Lumbini, Saranat, Sravasti etc
- He sent a mission to **Sri Lanka** under his son **Mahendra** and daughter **Sangamitra** who planted there the branch of the **original Bodhi tree**.
- Asoka convened the **Third Buddhist Council at Pataliputra in 240 B.C.**
- **Rummindei Pillar Inscription** -Lumbini Pillar Edict in Nepal is known as the **Rummindei Pillar Inscription**. It mentions Asoka's visit to Lumbini & exemption of Lumbini from tax.

ASOKA'S DHAMMA

- The word Dhamma is the Prakrit form of the Sanskrit word **Dharma**.
- Asoka's Dhamma cannot be regarded as sectarian faith.
- It was a way of life, a code of conduct and a **set of principles to be adopted and practiced by the people at large**.
- He appointed special officers called **Dharma Mahamatras** to speed up the progress of **Dhamma**.
- Its broad objective was to **preserve the social order** it ordained that people should obey their parents, pay respect to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks and show mercy to slave and servants.
- He held that **if people behaved well, they would attain Swarga (heaven)**.
- He never said that **they would attain Nirvana, which was goal of Buddhist Teaching**.
- He **did not equate Dhamma with Buddhist teachings**.
- Buddhism remained his **personal belief**.
- **Kandahar Inscriptions of Ashoka** speaks of success of his dhamma policy with the hunters and fisherman, who gave up killing animals and possibly took a settled agriculture.

MAJOR ROCK EDICTS OF ASOKA

MAJOR ROCK EDICTS	CONTENT
Major Rock Edict-1	Prohibits animal slaughter
Major Rock Edict I I	Descriptions of kingdoms of south Provides for care for man and animals.
Major Rock Edict III	Generosity to brahmins, yuktas and rajukas go to all areas of kingdom every five years and spread the dhamma policy of asoka.
Major Rock Edict IV	Dhammagosha is ideal to the mankind
Major Rock Edict V	Concerns about the policy towards slaves Appointment of Dhammamahamatras

Major Rock Edict VI	King's desire to get informed about the conditions of the people constantly.
Major Rock Edict VII	Requests tolerance for all religions
Major Rock Edict VIII	Describes Asoka's first dhamma yatra to Bodhgaya & bodhi tree.
Major Rock Edict IX	Condemns popular ceremonies Stresses on dhamma
Major Rock Edict X	Condemns the desire for fame and glory. Stresses on popularity of dhamma.
Major Rock Edict XI	Elaborates dhamma
Major Rock Edict XII	Tolerance among different religious sects.
Major Rock Edict XIII	Asoka's victory over Kalinga Ashoka's victory over Greek kings and South Indian kings
MAJOR ROCK EDICT XIV	Engraving of inscriptions in different parts of country.

DEVANAMPIYA PIYADASSI

- The name Ashoka occurs in few minor edicts (**Maski&Girnar**) (In karnataka&Gujarat), rest at all places edicts mention him as "**Devanampiya Piyadassi**" which means "Beloved-of-the-Gods, He Who Looks On With Affection."

SOHGAURA INSCRIPTION- UTTAR PRADESH.

- It is a copper plate inscription belonging to Mauryan period.
- It is written in Prakrit in the Brahmi script.**
- Its mentions the establishment of two grain depots (Kosthagara) to fight against famine.**

KANGANAHALLI

- Kanaganahalli in Karnataka is the site with an inscription in Brahmi script reading Ranyo Ashoka and a sculpture of King Ashoka.**
- It is on the banks of River Bhima.**
- It contains a sculpture-portrait of Emperor Ashoka — **the only available image of the Mauryan emperor.**

LATER MAURYAN RULERS

- Asoka's death in **232 B.C.** was followed by the **division of the Mauryan Empire** into two parts – western and eastern.
- The western part was ruled by **Kunala, son of Asoka** and the eastern part by **Dasaratha, one of the grand sons of Asoka.**
- Due to the **Bactrian invasions**, the western part of the empire collapsed. The **eastern part** was intact under **Samprati successor of Dasaratha.**
- The last **Mauryan king was Brihadratha**, who was assassinated by **Pushyamitra Sunga.**

MAURYAN ADMINISTRATION

CENTRAL GOVERNMENT

- **Monarchy** -The ascendancy of the **Mauryas had resulted in the triumph of monarchy** in India.
- **King** - Dharmaprajapita or promulgator of social order.
- **Mantriparishad** - The king was assisted by **Mantri Parishad**, whose members included –
(i) **The Yuvaraj**, the crown prince, **the Purohita**, the chief priest, **the Senapati**, the commander-in-chief of the army a few other ministers.
- **Amatyas**-There were **civil servants called Amatyas** to look after the **day-to-day administration.**
- **Census**-The taking of Census was regular during the Mauryan period.

PROVINCIAL AND LOCAL ADMINISTRATION

- The northern province, called **Uttarapatha** had **Taxila** as its capital
- **Western province, known as Avantipatha** had its capital in **Ujjain.**
- **Prachyapatha** with its capital **Toshali (Kalinga)** formed the Eastern province while **Dakshinapatha with its capital Surarnagiri** was the Southernmost province.
- Central province was **Magdha, with its capital at Pataliputra**, was the headquarters of the entire kingdom.
- The provincial governors were mostly appointed from the **members of royal family.** They were **responsible the maintenance of law and order and collection of taxes for the empire.**
- The **district administration** was under the **charge of Rajukas**, whose position and functions are **similar to modern collectors.** He was assisted by **Yuktas or subordinate officials.**
- **Village administration** was in the hands of **Gramani** and his official superior was called **Gopa** who was in charge of ten or fifteen villages.

- Megasthenes refers to the six committees of five members each to look after the administration of Pataliputra. These committees looked after: 1. **Industries** 2. **Foreigners** 3. **Registration of birth and deaths** 4. **Trade** 5. **Manufacture and sale of goods** 6. **Collection of sales tax.**

ECONOMIC SYSTEM

- **Agriculture** –The mainstay of the economy under the **Mauryas** was **agriculture**. For the first time in **Mauryan Period** slaves were engaged in agricultural work on a large scale.
- **Sources of Revenue** -The revenues came from **land, irrigation, customs, shop tax, ferry tax, forests, mines and pastures, license fee from craftsmen**, and fines collected in the law courts. The land revenue was normally fixed as **one sixth of the produce**. The taxes were collected in cash and kind.
- **Samharta**-The **chief of the Revenue Department**, was in charge of the collection of all revenues of the empire.
- **Sannidhata**- The **chief custodian of state treasury**.
- **Department of Commerce and Industry** -This department had controlled the **retail and wholesale prices of goods** and tried to ensure **their steady supply** through its officers called **Adyakshas**.
- **Coinage**- The **punch marked silver coins** which carry the symbols of **peacock**, and the **hill and crescent** formed the imperial currency of the Mauryas.

JUDICIAL SYSTEM

- Kautilya mentions the existence of both **civil and criminal courts**.
- The **chief justice of the Supreme Court** at the capital was called **Dharmathikarin**.
- There were also **subordinate courts** at the provincial capitals and districts under **Amatyas**.
- Different kinds of punishment such as **finest, imprisonment, mutilation and death** were given to the offenders.
- The **Dhamma Mahamatras** were asked by **Asoka** to take steps against **unjust imprisonment**.

ARMY

- The **Mauryan army** was **well organized** and it was **under the control of Senapati**. The salaries were paid in cash.

IMPORTANT OFFICIALS

Title of Official	Position
Durgapala	Governor of royal fort
Antapala	Governor of the frontier
Akshapatala	Accountant General
Vachabhumika	Officer in charge of the rest houses, groves and wells etc.

Lipikaras	Scribes
Prativedikas	Reporters.

MAURYAN ART AND ARCHITECTURE

➤ PILLAR

- **Asokan pillars** with inscriptions were found in places like **Delhi, Allahabad, Rummindai, Sanchi and Saranath.**
- Their tops were **crowned with figures of animals like lion, elephant and bull.**
- The Saranath pillar with **four lions standing back to back is the most magnificent.**
- The Indian government adopted this capital with some modifications as its **state emblem.**

➤ STUPAS

- A 'stupa' is a solid domical structure of brick or stone, resting on around base.
- **The main purpose of building it was to enshrine some relics of the Buddha or some great Buddhist monk or to commemorate some Buddhist sacred place.**
- The best example is the **famous Sanchi stupa** (Madhya Pradesh) with **massive dimensions.**

➤ CAVES

- This period saw the emergence of rock-cut cave architectures.
- During the Mauryan period, these caves were generally used as viharas, i.e. living quarters, by the Jain and Buddhist monks.
- It also served the **purpose of churches and assembly halls (chaityas).**
- The caves at Barabar hills near Bodh Gaya are wonderful pieces of Mauryan architecture.

APSC QUESTIONS

1) Who authored the famous book, Indica? 2021

- Alexander** Cunningham
- Faxian (Fa-Hien)
- Megasthenes**
- Pliny

2) The Greek General Defeated by Chandragupta Maurya was (2001)

- Antigonas
- Seleucas**
- Eudomas
- Phillippos

3) Chanakya who helped Chandragupta Maurya to annihilate the Nanda Kingdom was a Brahmin from (2001)

- Taxila**
- Pataliputra
- Kanauj

d) Gandhara

4)The Empire of Chandragupta Maurya did not include (1998)

- a) Magadha
- b) Punjab
- c) Kabul
- d) Kalinga**

5)Ashoka did not ask for (1998)

- a) Reverence to all ascetics
- b) Respect to parents
- c) To refrain from violence
- d) Devotion to Buddhist Sangha**

6) Dipavamsa is written in (1998)

- a) Sanskrit
- b) Pali**
- c) Hindi
- d) None of these

CHAPTER 7: THE POST MAURYAN INDIA

SUNGAS DYNASTY (184 BC-75BC)

- Founder of Sunga dynasty was **Pushyamitra Sunga**, who was **commander in chief under the Mauryas**.
- He **assassinated the last Mauryan ruler (Brihadratha)** and **claimed the throne**
- Pushyamitra was a staunch follower of Brahmanism.
- **After the death of Pushyamitra, his son Agnimitra became the ruler.**
- The last Sunga ruler was **Devabhuti, who was murdered by his own minister Vasudeva Kanva, Founder of Kanva dynasty.**

MALAVIKAGNIMITRAM

- **Sanskrit play by Kalidasa.**
- Depicts **Agnimitra** as its hero and he falls in love with **Malvika** who a maid servant of his **Chief Queen** is.
- It gives account of **Rajsuya Yajna of Pushyamitra Sunga.**

KANVA DYNASTY (72 BC-28 BC)

- **Kanva dynasty ruler for approximately for 45 years** and then Supplanted by **Satavahanas** and few **times** later **Guptas** came at **Magadha**.
- After the fall of the Kanvas, the history of Magadha was a blank until the establishment of the Gupta dynasty.
- **Susharma was the last of the Kanvas.**

SATAVAHANAS (235 BC- 2ND CE AD)

- In the Deccan, the Satavahanas established their independent rule after the decline of the Mauryas. Their rule lasted for about 450 years. They were also known as the Andhras.
- The reign of the Satavahana Dynasty began in the mid-1st century BCE and came to an end in the early 3rd century CE.
- **Sources** – Puranas, Inscriptions and Coins.
- **Capital** → Paithan/ Pratisthan on the river Godavari.
- **Official Language** – Prakrit- All inscriptions written in Prakrit Language and written in the Brahmi Script.
- **Simuka** -Founder of Satavahana dynasty.
- **Krishna**- Next ruler who extended his kingdom to west up to Nashik.
- **Hala- 17th King** -Hala became famous for his book Gathasaptasati, also called Sattasai. It contains **700 verses in Prakrit language.**
- **Gautamiputra Satkarni**
 - He was greatest ruler of the Satavahana dynasty .
 - He ruled for a period of **24 years from 106 to 130 A.D.**
 - His achievements were recorded in the **Nasik inscription** by his **mother Gautami Balasri.**
 - Gautamiputra Satakarni captured the whole of Deccan and expanded his empire.

- His victory over Nagapana, the ruler of Malwa was remarkable. He patronized Brahmanism. Yet, he also gave donations to Buddhists.
- **Vashishtaputra Pulamayi**
 - Gautamiputra Satakarni was succeeded by his son Vashishtaputra Pulamayi.
 - He extended the Satavahana power up to the mouth of the Krishna river.
 - He issued coins on which the image of ships was inscribed.
 - They reveal the naval power and maritime trade of the Satavahanas.
- **Yajna Sri Satakarni** - The last great ruler of Satavahanas
- Satavahanas were succeeded by Ikshvakus.

PATTERN OF ADMINISTRATION

- The king was considered as the upholder of Dharma and also attributed divine qualities.
- Satavahana administration was almost same as Mauryans as District were called Aharas and officials Amatyas and Mahamantras.
- Administration of rural areas was placed under Gaulmika who was the head of military regiment.
- Satavahana Rule was of military character.
- They started granting tax free villages to Brahmanas and Buddhist Monks.
- The Satavahana kings claimed to be Brahmanas and considered it their primary duty to uphold varna system i.e. the four fold division of social structure.
- Satavahana Kingdom had 3 grades of feudatories
 - Raja → Sole right to strike coin
 - Mahabhoja
 - Senapati

ECONOMIC CONTRIBUTION

- There was a remarkable progress in the fields of internal trade and overseas commercial activity.
- Silver coins called Karshapanas were used for trade.
- West Port → Kalyani (North east of Mumbai) + East Port → Gandakasela + Ganjam (Odisha).

CULTURAL CONTRIBUTION

- The most famous Chaitya is Karle Chaitya (Pune)- Largest Chaitya Griha among all Buddhist Monuments in India.
- The most important stupa- Amarvati & Nagarjunakonda Stupa.
- Amaravati Stupa began in about 200 BC but was completely reconstructed in the second half of the Second Century AD. It was built during the reign of Ashoka the Great of the Mauryan dynasty, who himself constructed a vast number of Buddhist monuments across the Indian subcontinent. Vashishtaputra Pulamayi repaired the old Amaravathi stupa.
- Their architecture in Nagarjunakonda was also notable. It prospered more under the Ikshvakus, the successors of Satvahanas. It contains not only Buddhist Monuments but also

the earliest brahmanical brick temples. It is named after the renowned **Buddhist Monk Nagarjuna** (the famous Buddhist scholar and the contriver of Mahayana Buddhism) who imparted his summons over here. **Nagarjunakonda was the capital of Ikshvaku Kingdom** and was called Vijayapuri.

- **Brahmanism was revived by the Satavahanas** along with the performance of asvamedha and rajasuya sacrifices.
- They also patronized the **Prakrit language** and literature. **Hala's Sattasai** is an excellent piece of Prakrit literature.

FOREIGN INVASIONS OF NORTHWEST INDIA

BACTRIANS/ INDO-GREEKS

- The **first to cross Hindukush were the Greeks**, who ruled Bactria, lying south of the oxus river in the area covered by **North Afghanistan**.
- **Demeritus -Bactria and Parthia** became independent from the Syrian empire in the **middle of the third century B.C.** Demetrius, the Greek ruler of Bactria invaded **Afghanistan and Punjab** and occupied them.
- **Menander (165-145 BC)**- Menander extended his rule up to **Mathura** and from there he made attempts to capture **Pataliputra**. But he was stopped by the army of **Vasumitra**, the grandson of **Pushyamitra Sunga**. Menander was also known as **Milinda** and the capital of his kingdom was **Sakala (Sialcot)**.
- **Milindapanho** –**Milinda evinced** much interest in Buddhism and his **dialogues with the Buddhist monk Nagasena was compiled in the Pali work, Milindapanho** (Questions of Milinda). He also embraced Buddhism.
- **Helidorus** -A Greek ambassador **Heliodorus became a Vaishnavite** and erected the **Garuda Pillar at Besnagar(Vidisha, Madhya Pradesh)**. The Greek influence in India lasted for more than a century after the death Menander.

EFFECTS OF GREEK RULE

- The Indo-Greeks were the first to issue coins which can be **definitely attributed to the kings**.
- Indo-Greeks were **1st to issue gold coins in India**.
- The Greek rule introduced **features of Hellenistic art in the North-west frontier of India**. The **Gandhara art was largely Hellenistic in the beginning**.

SHAKAS (SCYTHIANS)

- Greeks were followed by **scythians (Shakas) who controlled much larger area of India than Greek did**.
- **VIKRAM ERA** –The **Vikrama era (58 BC)** is said in to have been founded after a victory of King **Vikramāditya over the Śaka**.
- **RUDRADAMAN 1**-Most famous **Shaka ruler in India was Rudradaman 1**
 - **Junagarh Inscription** - It is located on a rock near **Girnar hill, in Junagadh, Gujarat**.

- This inscription written in **Brahmi script, entirely in prose**, using **Sanskrit language** was the earliest record ever written in **perfect Sanskrit**.
- **He issued the first-ever long inscription in chaste Sanskrit.**
- The **Junagarh inscription** gives the information about the **Sudharshan lake that the lake was an artificial reservoir**, was built by the Mauryan emperors (Chandragupta Maurya) for checking floods.
- Around 150 AD, the **lake was repaired by the Shaka ruler Rudradaman I.**

PARTHIANS (PAHLAVAS)

- The **Parthians were of Iranian origin** and because of strong cultural connection with the Shakas, these groups were referred to in the **Indian sources as Shaka-Pahlava.**
- In comparison with the **Greeks and the Sakas** they occupied only a small portion of North-western India in the **first Century.**
- Most famous Parthian king was **Gondopherens**, in whose reign **St. Thomas** is said to have visited India for propagation of Christianity.

KUSHANAS

- Branch of **Yuchis or Tocharians** tribe from north central Asia basically from neighbourhood of China
- Founder of Kushana dynasty was **Kadphises 1.**

KANISHKA (78 – 120 AD)

- Most important ruler of **Kushana dynasty** and founder of **Shaka era** (Starts from 78 AD) used by GOI
- He was not only a great conqueror but also extended his wholehearted **patronage to Buddhism**
- His capital was **Purushapura or modern day Peshawar.**

KANISHKA AND BUDDHISM

- In the age of Kanishka the **Mahayana Buddhism** came into vogue.
- He patronised Buddhist scholars like **Vasumitra, Asvagosha and Nagarjuna.**
- He also convened the **Fourth Buddhist Council** to discuss matters relating to Buddhist theology and doctrine. It was held at the **Kundalavana monastery near Srinagar** in Kashmir under the **presidentship of Vasumitra.**
- **Important Personalities in the rule of Kanishka**
 - **Asvagosha** was a great philosopher, poet and dramatist. He was the author of **Buddhacharita**. He composed **Saundarananda** which is fine example of **Sanskrit Kavya.**
 - **Nagarjuna** from south India adorned the court of **Kanishka.**
 - The famous **physician of ancient India Charaka** who wrote “**Charaksamhita**” was also patronized by him

IMPACT OF CENTRAL ASIAN CONTACT

GANDHARA SCHOOL OF ART

- The home of the Gandhara School of art is the **territory in and around Peshawar in north-western India.**
- The best of the Gandhara sculpture was produced during the **first and second centuries A.D.**
- It originated during the **reign of Indo-Greek rulers** but the real patrons of this school of art were the **Sakas and the Kushanas, particularly Kanishka.**
- Gandhara art was a blend of **Indian and Graeco-Roman elements.**
- Specimens of Gandhara sculpture have been found in **Taxila, Peshawar and in several places of northwest India.**

The **salient features of Gandhara art are.**

- **The stone used for making idols of Buddha and Bodhisattava was predominantly blue-grey schist.**
- **Moulding human body in a realistic manner** with minute attention to **physical features like muscles, moustache and curly hair.**
- **Thick drapery with large and bold fold lines.**
- **Rich carving, elaborate ornamentation and symbolic expressions.**
- The main theme was the new form of Buddhism – **Mahayanism and the evolution of an image of Buddha.**
- The **depiction of Buddha as a ‘man-god’ in Gandharan sculpture** is believed to be inspired from Greek mythology.

MATHURA SCHOOL OF ART

- The school of art that developed at **Mathura in modern Uttar Pradesh is called the Mathura art.**
- It flourished in the **first century A.D.** In its early phase, the Mathura school of art developed on **indigenous lines.** Later, it also borrowed from the **Gandhara school and adopted more than one Graeco- Roman motif.**
- The Buddha images exhibit the **spiritual feeling** in his face which was largely absent in the Gandhara school.
- The **Mathura school also carved out the images of Siva and Vishnu along with their consorts Parvathi and Lakshmi.**
- The female figures of **yakshinis and apsaras of the Mathura school were beautifully carved.**
- Famous for **headless erect statue of Kanishka** with his name inscribed below
- **The artists of Mathura used the spotted red sandstone for making images.**
- It also produced several stone images of **Vardhamana Mahavira.**

AMARAVATI SCHOOL OF ART

- The Amravati school of art flourished in the region of **Andhra Pradesh** between the lower valleys of rivers **Krishna and Godavari**.
- The main patrons of this art form were the **Satavahans** but it carried on even later, patronized by their successor **Ikshavaku** rulers.
- This art is said to have flourished between **150 BC and 350 AD**.
- An important characteristic of the Amravati school is the '**narrative art**'.
- The **use of white marble like stone to carve out the figures**.
- **Religious and secular features**.

LITERATURE AND LEARNING

- **Avadanas-(Sanskrit: “Noble Deeds”,)** legendary material centring on the **Buddha’s** explanations of events by a person’s worthy deeds in a previous life. Most of them composed in **Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit**. Example- **Mahavastu and Divyavadana**.
- **Yavanika** – The foreigners also contributed to the Indian Theatre, by introducing the **use of curtain**. Since the curtain was borrowed from **Greeks** it came to be known as **yavanika**.

SUCCESSOR OF KANISHKA

- The last important **Kushana** ruler was **Vasudeva**.

APSC QUESTIONS

- 1)The hybrid Indo-Greek art form depicting Buddhist themes is known as (2013)
 - a) Tanjore Art
 - b) Gandhara Art**
 - c) Pahari Art
 - d) Kangra Art
- 2)The Gandhara School of Art is a contribution of (2013)
 - A. Asoka
 - B. Harshavardhana
 - C. Pulakeshin II
 - D. Kanishka**
- 3) **Asvaghosa** was the famous scholar in the court of (2006)
 - a) Chandragupta II
 - b) Harsha
 - c) Pratihara Bhoja
 - d) Kanishka**
- 4) The capital of Kanishka’s kingdom was at (2006)
 - a) Rajagriha
 - b) Kabul
 - c) Pataliputra
 - d) Purushapura**
- 5) The Gandhara School of Art emphasized on (2001)

- a) **Indian materials and Greek style**
- b) Greek materials and Indian style
- c) Both Indian materials and Indian style.
- d) Neither Indian materials nor Indian style.

6) **The capital of Kanishka was (1998)**

- a) Sakal
- b) Jalandhar
- c) **Purushapura**
- d) Kaniskapura

CHAPTER 8: SANGAM AGE

SANGAM AGE

- According to Tamil legends, there existed three Sangams (Academy of Tamil poets) in ancient Tamil Nadu popularly **called Muchchangam**.
- **These Sangams flourished under the royal patronage of the Pandyas.**
- **The first Sangam, held at then Madurai, was attended by gods and legendary sages but no literary work of this Sangam was available.**
- The second Sangam was held at **Kapadapuram** but the all the literary works had perished except **Tolkappiyam**.
- **The third Sangam at Madurai** was founded by **Mudathirumaran**. It was attended by many poets who produced voluminous literature but only a few had survived. These Tamil literary works remain useful sources to reconstruct the history of the Sangam Age.

SANGAM LITERATURE

- **Tolkappiyam authored by Tolkappiyar** is the earliest of the Tamil literature. It is a work on Tamil **grammar** but it provides information on **the political and socio-economic conditions** of the Sangam period.
- **The Ettutogai or Eight Anthologies** consist of eight works – **Aingurunooru, Narrinai, Aganaooru, Purananooru, Kuruntogai, Kalittogai, Paripadal and Padirruppattu**.
- The **Pattuppattu or Ten Idylls** consist of ten works – **Thirumurugarruppadai, Porunararruppadai, Sirupanarruppadai, Perumpanarruppadai, Mullaippattu, Nedunalvada, Maduraikkanji, Kurinjippattu, Pattinappalai and Malaipadukadam**.
- Both Ettutogai and Pattuppattu were divided into two main groups – **Aham (love) and Puram (valour)**.
- **Pathinenkilkanakku** contains eighteen works mostly dealing with **ethics and morals**. The most important among them is **Tirukkural** authored by **Thiruvalluvar**.
- **Silappathigaram** written by **Elango Adigal** and **Manimegalai** by **Sittalai Sattanar** also provides valuable information on the Sangam polity and society.

PERIOD OF SANGAM LITERATURE

- The chronology of the Sangam literature is still a disputed topic among the scholars.
- The most **probable date of the Sangam literature has been fixed between the third century B.C. to third century A.D** on the basis of literary, archaeological, and numismatic evidences.

POLITICAL HISTORY

- The Tamil **country was ruled by three dynasties namely the Chera, Chola and Pandyas** during the Sangam Age.
- The political **history of these dynasties can be traced from the literary references.**

THE CHERAS

- The Cheras ruled over parts of modern Kerala. The history of the Cheras was marked by continuous fight with the Cholas and the Pandyas.
- Their **capital was Vanji** and their important seaports were **Tondi and Musiri**. The Cheras owed **its importance to trade with the Romans.**
- The **Pugalur inscription of the first century A.D** refers to three generations of Chera rulers. **Padirrupattu also provides information on Chera kings.**
- **Cheran Senguttuvan (Red Chera)** belonged to **2nd century A.D.** His **younger brother** was Elango Adigal, the author of **Silappathigaram.**
- **Senguttuvan introduced the Pattini cult or the worship of Kannagi** as the ideal wife in Tamil Nadu.
- After the second century A.D., the Chera power declined, and nothing of its history until the eighth century A.D. is known.

THE CHOLAS

- The Cholas Kingdom which was situated between **the Pennar and the Velar rivers was the most powerful of all three kingdoms.**
- Their chief centre of political power was at **Uraiyar**, a place famous for cotton trade.
- In the middle of second century B.C., a **Chola king named Elara Conquered Sri Lanka** and ruled over it for nearly 50 years. He was the first important Chola king.
- A firmer history of the Cholas begins in the **second century A.D.** when their greatest and most famous **king Karikala**, who founded the port city of **Puhar (identical with Kaveripattinam)** and constructed **160 km of embankment along the Kaveri River.**
- **Puhar or Kaveripattanam** was Chola capital. Puhar was also a great centre of trade and commerce.
- **Battle of Venni**- Karikala defeated groups of cheras, pandyas & minor chieftains.
- **Trade in cotton cloth** was one of the main sources of Cholas wealth.

THE PANDYAS

- The Pandyan kingdom occupied the **south-most and the south-eastern portion** of the Indian Peninsula, with **Madurai as its capital.**

- The Pandyas were one of the **most ancient dynasties** to rule South India and are mentioned in **Kautilya's Arhasastra** and **Megasthenes' Indica**.
- The most prominent among Pandyans was **Nedunzalian**, who **made Madurai his capital**.
- **Arvappadai Kadantha Nedunchelivan**- He is responsible for **execution of Kovalan for which Kannagi burnt Madurai**.
- Another king was **Madaranjeral Irumporai** who sent **ambassadors to Roman emperor Augustus and performed Vedic sacrifices**.
- **Maduraikkanji** , the Sangam literature written by **Mangudi Maruthanar** gives us information on **socio-economic condition of the pandya country and flourishing Seaport of korkai**
- Their power declined with the invasion of a **tribe called the Kalabhras**.
- After the Sangam Age, this dynasty lost its significance for more than century, only to rise once again at the end of the 6th century.

SANGAM POLITY

- **Hereditary monarchy** was the form of government during the Sangam period.
- The king had also taken the advice of his minister, court-poet and the imperial court or **avai**.
- Each of the Sangam dynasties had a royal emblem – **carp for the Pandyas, tiger for the Cholas and bow for the Cheras**.
- **The imperial court or avai** was attended by a number of chiefs and officials.
- The king was **assisted by a large body of officials** who were divided into five councils.
- They were ministers (**amaichar**), priests (**anthanar**), military commanders (**senapathi**), envoys (**thuthar**) and spies (**orrrar**).
- The military administration was also efficiently organized during the Sangam Age and **each ruler had a regular army and their respective Kodimaram (tutelary tree)**.

SANGAM SOCIETY

- **Tolkappiyam** refers to the **five-fold division of lands** – **Kurinji (hilly tracks), Mullai (pastoral), Marudam (agricultural), Neydal (coastal) and Palai (desert)**.
- The people living in these five divisions had their respective chief occupations as well as **gods for worship**.
- **Kurinji** – chief deity was **Murugan** – chief occupation, **hunting and honey collection**
- **Mullai** – chief deity **Mayon (Vishnu)** – chief occupation, **cattle-rearing and dealing with dairy products**.
- **Marudam** – chief deity **Indira** – chief occupation, **agriculture**.
- **Neydal** – chief deity **Varunan** – chief occupation **fishing and salt manufacturing**
- **Palai** – chief deity **Korravai** – chief occupation **robbery**.
- Tolkappiyam also refers to **four castes namely Arasar, Anthanar, Vanigar and Vellalar**.
- The **ruling class** was called **Arasar**.
- **Anthanars** played a significant role in the **Sangam polity and religion**.
- **Vanigars** carried on **trade and commerce**.

- The **Vellalas** were **agriculturists**.
- Other tribal groups like **Parathavar, Panar, Eyinar, Kadambar, Maravar and Pulaiyar** were also found in the Sangam society.
- Ancient primitive tribes like **Thodas, Irulas, Nagas and Vedars** lived in this period.

RISE OF SOCIAL CLASSES

- The **Brahmins** first appear in the Tamil Nadu in the Sangam Age. An ideal king was one who never hurt the Brahmins.
- Agricultural operations were generally carried on by **women of the lowest class (Kadaiyiar)**, who's status appear to have differed little from that of Slave.
- Besides agricultural **labourers** we come across **low class artisans**. To this category belonged the **Pulaiyans**, who made rope Charpaiys and used animal skin as mats.
- Several outcastes and forest tribes suffered from extreme poverty and lived from hand to mouth.
- The sharp social inequalities existed in the age of Sangam.

POSITION OF WOMEN

- There is a plenty of information in the Sangam literature to trace the position of women during the Sangam age.
- Women poets like **Avvaiyar, Nachchellaiyar, and Kakkaipadiniyar** flourished in this period and contributed to Tamil literature.
- The courage of women was also appreciated in many poems.
- **Karpu or Chaste life** was considered the highest virtue of women.
- **Love marriage was a common practice.**
- Women were allowed to choose their life partners.
- However, the **life of widows was miserable.**
- **The practice of Sati was also prevalent** in the higher strata of society
- The class of **dancers was patronized by the kings and nobles.**

RELIGION

- The primary deity of the Sangam period was **Seyon or Murugan**, who is hailed as Tamil God.
- The worship of **Murugan** was having an ancient origin and the festivals relating to God Murugan was mentioned in the Sangam literature.
- Murugan was honoured with six abodes known as **Arupadai Veedu**.
- Other gods worshipped during the Sangam period were **Mayon (Vishnu), Vendan (Indiran), Varunan and Korravai**.
- The **Hero Stone** or **Nadu Kal** worship was significant in the Sangam period and was erected in memory of the bravery shown by the warrior in battle.
- **Many hero stones with legends inscribed** on them were found in different parts of Tamil Nadu. This kind of worshipping the deceased has a great antiquity.

FINE ARTS

- **The royal courts were crowded with singing bards called Panar and Viraliyar.** They were experts in folk songs and folk dances.
- **A variety of Yazhs** and drums are referred to in the Sangam literature.
- Dancing was performed by **Kanigaiyar**.
- **Koothu was the most popular** entertainment of the people.

ECONOMY OF THE SANGAM AGE

- **Agriculture was the chief occupation** and **Rice** was the common crop.
- **Jack fruit** and **pepper** were famous in the **Chera country**.
- **Paddy was the chief crop in the Chola and Pandya country.**
- Land revenue **was the chief source of state's income** while **custom duty** was also imposed on foreign trade.
- **The Pattinappalai** refers to the custom officials employed in the seaport of Puhar.
- **Spinning and weaving of cotton and silk clothes** attained a high quality.
- There was a great demand **in the western world for the cotton clothes woven at Uraiyur.**
- **Both internal and foreign trade was well organized** and briskly carried on in the Sangam Age.
- Merchants carried the goods on the carts and on animal-back from place to place.
- Internal trade was mostly **based on the barter system.**
- External trade was carried between South India and the Greek kingdoms.
- **The port city of Puhar became** an emporium of foreign trade, as big ships entered this port with precious goods.
- Other ports of commercial activity include **Tondi, Musiri, Korkai, Arikamedu and Marakkanam.**
- **The author of Periplus** provides the most valuable information on foreign trade.
- The main exports of the Sangam age were **cotton fabrics, spices like pepper, ginger, cardamom, cinnamon and turmeric, ivory products, pearls and precious stones.**
- Gold, horses, and sweet wine were the chief imports.

END OF THE SANGAM AGE

- Towards the end of the third century A.D., the Sangam period slowly witnessed its decline.
- The **Kalabhras occupied the Tamil country** for about two and a half centuries.
- **Jainism and Buddhism** became prominent during this period
- **The Pallavas in the northern Tamil Nadu and Pandyas in southern Tamil Nadu** drove the Kalabhras out of the Tamil country and established their rule.

CHAPTER 9: GUPTA EMPIRE

BACKGROUND

- Although Gupta empire was **not large as the Mauryan empire** it kept north India **politically united for more than a century from 355 to 455 AD.**
- The original kingdom of Guptas comprised **UP and Bihar at the end of third century AD.** The main center of power became **Prayag (Allahabad) during Gupta Period.**

SOURCES

1. Puranas
2. Devichandraguptam and the Mudhrakshasam.
3. Accounts of Fahien.
4. Numismatics
5. Inscriptions

EARLY RULERS

- The **founder of the Gupta dynasty was Sri Gupta.**
- He was succeeded by **Ghatotkacha.** These two were called **Maharajas.**

CHANDRAGUPTA 1 (320 – 330 A.D.)

- 1st to be called as **Maharajadhiraja (Great king of kings)**
- He strengthened his position by a matrimonial alliance with the Licchavis.
- Chandragupta I is considered to be the founder of the Gupta era which starts with **his accession in A.D. 320**

SAMUDRAGUPTA (330-380 A.D.)

- Samudragupta was the **greatest of the rulers of the Gupta dynasty.**
- He was a lover of **art and literature, Self-proficient in music and poetry,** hence called **Kaviraja.**
- His **image depicting him with Veena** is found in the **coins issued by him.** It is the proof of his **proficiency and interest in music.**
- Patronized many **poets and scholars along with famous Harisena.**
- He evinced keen interest in **Buddhism** and was the patron of the **great Buddhist scholar Vasubandu.**
- **He also permitted Buddhist king Meghavarman (King of Sri Lanka) to build monasteries in Bodh Gaya.**
- He was an ardent follower of **Vaishnavism** but tolerant to other religions.

ALLAHABAD PILLAR INSCRIPTION

- The most important source for the reign of **Samudragupta is the Allahabad Pillar inscription.** It describes his **personality and achievements.** This inscription is engraved on an **Asokan pillar.**

- It is written in **classical Sanskrit, using the Nagari script**. It consists of **33 lines composed by Harisena**.
- It describes the circumstances of **Samudragupta's accession, his military campaigns in north India and the Deccan, his relationship with other contemporary rulers**, and his accomplishments as a poet and scholar.
- It is because of his **military achievements** Samudragupta was hailed as **'Indian Napoleon'**

CHANDRAGUPTA 2 (380-415 A.D.)

- Samudragupta was succeeded by his son Chandragupta II Vikramaditya.
- Because of the **high level of cultural progress** that was achieved during this period, the **Gupta period is generally referred to as a golden age**.
- Extended his empire by **military conquests and marriage alliances**.
- He gave his daughter **Prabhavati in marriage to the Vakataka prince Rudrasena II**.
- This alliance served a **useful purpose when Chandragupta-II** undertook his campaign in **western India against the Sakas**.
- **Conquest of Western India-**
 - **Rudrasimha III**, the last ruler of the **Saka satrap was defeated, dethroned and killed**.
 - **His territories in western Malwa and the Kathiawar Peninsula were annexed into the Gupta Empire**.
 - After this victory he performed the horse sacrifice and assumed the title Sakari, meaning, **'destroyer of Sakas'**. He also called **himself Vikramaditya**.
- **Impact of the Conquest**
 - As a result of the **conquest of western India, the western boundary of the Empire** reached to the **Arabian Sea** gaining access to **Broach, Sopara, Cambay and other sea ports**.
 - This **enabled the Gupta empire to control trade with the western countries**.
 - **Ujjain** became an **important commercial city and** soon became the alternative capital of the Guptas.

FAHIEN'S VISIT (399 AD)

- The famous Chinese pilgrim, **Fahien visited India during the reign of Chandragupta II**.
- He visited **Peshawar, Mathura, Kanauj, Sravasti, Kapilavastu, Kusinagara, Pataliputra, Kasi and Bodh Gaya** among other places.
- The main purpose of his visit was to see the **land of the Buddha and to collect Buddhist manuscripts** from India.
- **Fahien** provides valuable information on the **religious, social and economic condition** of the Gupta empire.
- Fahien mentions the **unsatisfactory state of some of the Buddhist holy places like Kapilavastu and Kusinagara**.

GUPTA ADMINISTRATION

- He characterises the **Gupta administration as mild and benevolent.**
- There were **no restrictions on people's movements and they enjoyed a large degree of personal freedom.**
- There was **no state interference in the individual's life. Punishments were not severe. Imposing a fine was a common punishment.**
- The administration was so efficient that the roads were kept safe for travelers, and there was no fear of thieves.
- He mentioned that people were **generally prosperous and the crimes were negligible.**
- Fahien had also appreciated the efficiency of the **Gupta administration as he was able to travel without any fear throughout the Gangetic valley.**
- On the whole the administration was **more liberal than that of the Mauryas.**

KUMARAGUPTA

- **He was the son and successor of Chandragupta II.**
- **He laid the foundation of the Nalanda University.**
- **A branch of the Huns from Central Asia made attempts to cross the Hindukush mountains and invade India.**

SKANDAGUPTA

- He really faced the **Hun invasion.** He fought successfully **against the Huns and saved the empire.**
- **Junagarh Rock – Inscription- Restoration of Sudharsana Lake by Skanda Gupta.**

SUCCESSORS

- After **Skandagupta's death**, many of his successors like **Purugupta, Narasimhagupta, Buddhagupta and Baladitya could not save the Gupta empire from the Huns.**

GUPTA ADMINISTRATION

- **KING** -The king was assisted in his administration by **a council consisting of a chief minister, a Senapati or commander in-chief of the army** and other important officials. The right of succession belonging to the firstborn child was **not followed always. (Primogeniture)**
- **OFFICIAL** -A **high official called Sandivigraha** was mentioned in the Gupta inscriptions, most probably minister for **foreign affairs.** The king maintained a close contact with the provincial administration through a class of officials called **Kumaramatyas and Ayuktas.** Many offices/ posts were held by same person. **This weakened the royal control.**
- **DIVISION OF EMPIRE** -Provinces in the Gupta Empire were known as **Bhuktis** and provincial governors as **Uparikas.** They were mostly chosen from among the princes. **Bhuktis** were subdivided into **Vishyas or districts.** They were governed by **Vishyapatis.** **Nagara Sreshtis** were the officers looking after the city administration. The villages in the district were under the control of **Gramikas.**

- **VILLAGE HEADMAN**-The village headman gained in importance in Gupta times, managing village affairs with the assistance of elders. With the administration of a village or a small town, leading local elements were associated. No land transactions could be effected without their consent.
- **ARMY** – The king maintained a standing army, which was supplemented by the forces occasionally supplied by feudatories. Chariots receded in to background, and cavalry came to the forefront.
- **JUDICIARY** –The Judicial system was far more developed under the Guptas than in earlier times. Several law books were compiled in this period. For the first time Civil and Criminal law were clearly demarcated. Theft and adultery came under criminal law. Elaborate laws were laid down about inheritance.

SOCIAL LIFE

- During the Gupta period, the caste system became rigid.
- Fahien mentions that Chandalas were segregated from the society.
- The position of women had also become miserable during the Gupta period.
- The practice of Swyamvara was given up and the Manusmriti suggested the early marriage for girls.
- The position of Sudras improved in Gupta period. They were now permitted to listen to the epics and Puranas. They could also worship lord Krishna

RELIGION

- Brahmanism reigned supreme during the Gupta period. It had two branches - Vaishnavism and Saivism.
Most of the Gupta kings were Vaishnavaites. They performed Aswamedha sacrifices.
- Religious literature like the Puranas was composed during this period.
- The progress of Brahmanism led to the neglect of Buddhism and Jainism.
- In western and southern India Jainism flourished.
- The great Jain Council was held at Valabhi during this period and the Jain Canon of the Svetambras was written.

ECONOMY

- **DECLINE IN FOREIGN TRADE** -During this time we can see a decline in foreign trade.
- **VISHTI** - Villagers were subjected to forced labour called Vishti for serving royal army and officials. It was forced labour in lieu of tax and therefore not entitled to weekly wages. Anyone can be sent as the forced labourer, not particularly from the eldest son of the labourer. Most of the inscriptions refers to Vishti as more prevalent in the Madhya Pradesh and Kathiawar regions of the Gupta Empire.
- **THE RISE OF LANDED CLASS** – The striking development of the Gupta Period was the emergence of priestly landlords at the cost of local peasants. Land grants made to the priests certainly brought many virgin areas under cultivation. The peasants were reduced to lower class.

- **LAND GRANTS** – The Land Grants to the Brahmins on a large scale suggest that the brahmana supremacy continued in Gupta Times.
- **IMPORTANT PORT** - Tamralipti port handled the north Indian trade during the Gupta period.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

- Both the Nagara and Dravidian styles of art evolved during this period.
- The temple at Deogarh near Jhansi and the sculptures in the temple at Garhwas near Allahabad remain important specimen of the Gupta art.
- There was no influence of Gandhara style. But the beautiful statue of standing Buddha at Mathura reveals a little Greek style.
- The gigantic copper statue of Buddha, originally found at Sultanganj now kept at Birmingham museum, was about seven and a half feet height and nearly a ton weight. It shows the excellence of metal craftship.
- The Delhi Iron pillar of the Gupta period is still free from rust though completely exposed to sun and rain for so many centuries.
- The paintings of the Gupta period are seen at Bagh caves near Gwalior. The mural paintings of Ajantha mostly illustrate the life of the Buddha as depicted in the Jataka stories.
- The paintings at Sigiriya in Sri Lanka were highly influenced by the Ajantha style.

LITERATURE

- The best of the Sanskrit literature belonged to the Gupta age.
- The court of Chandragupta II was adorned by the celebrated Navratnas.
- Kalidasa remain the foremost among them. His master-piece was the Sanskrit drama Shakuntala. It is considered one among the ‘hundred best books of the world’.
- He wrote two other plays - the Malavikagnimitra and Vikramorvasiya. His two well-known epics are Raghuvamsa and Kumarasambhava. Ritusamhara and Meghaduta are his two lyrics.
- The Mahabharatha and the Ramayana were given final touches and written in the present form during this period

NAVRATNAS

<u>PERSONS</u>	<u>REMARKS</u>
Amarsimha	Sanskrit Lexicographer - Amarakosha
Dhanvantri	Great Physician

Kalidasa	Sanskrit Writer And Poet
Kshapanka	Astrologer
Sanku	Architecture.
Varahamihira	Astronomer, Astrologer And Mathematician
Vararuchi	Grammarian
Ghatakarpura	Expert In Sculpture And Architecture
Vetala Bhatta	Sanskrit Author.

OTHER WRITERS

<u>PERSONS</u>	<u>REMARKS</u>
Visakadatta	Mudrarakshasam, devichandraguptam.
Sudraka	Mrichchakatika
Bhasa	Plays
Dandin	Kavyadarsa Dasakumaracharita.
Bharavi	Kiratarjuniya
Vishnusarma.	Panchatantra stories
Subhandhu	Vasavadatta

--	--

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

ARYABHATTA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aryabhatiyam, aryasidhhanta • Great mathematician and astronomer. • First to declare that the earth was spherical in shape and that it rotates on its own axis. • It explains scientifically the occurrence of solar and lunar eclipses.
VARAHMITRA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He composed Pancha Siddhantika, the five astronomical systems. • His work Brihadsamhita is a great work in Sanskrit literature. • It deals with a variety of subjects like astronomy, astrology, geography, architecture, weather, animals, marriage and omens. • His Brihadjataka is considered to be a standard work on astrology
VAGBHATA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ashtangasamgraha (Summary of 8 branches of Medicine).

FALL OF GUPTA EMPIRE

- Due to invasion of **Hunas from central Asia.**
- Due to rise of **Yashodharman in Malwa.**
- **Rise of feudatories and independent kingdoms.**
- **Difficult to maintain army on account of growing practice of land grants for religious and other purposes, which had reduced their revenue.**
- **Decline of foreign trade.**

APSC QUESTIONS

1) Ashokan Pillar at Allahabad provides information about the reign of (2014)

- Chandragupta Maurya
- Chandragupta-I
- Samudragupta**
- Chandragupta -II

2) There are only two known examples of cave paintings of the Gupta period in ancient India. One of these is the paintings of Ajanta Caves. Where is the other surviving example of Gupta paintings? (2016)

- Ellora caves
- Bagh caves**

(c) Lomas Rishi caves

(d) Nasik caves

3) Which one of the following Gupta kings has to face the first Huna invasion? (2016)

(a) Skandagupta

(b) Buddhagupta

(c) Purugupta

(d) Kumaragupta I

4) Who among the following anticipated Newton by declaring that all things gravitate to the earth? (2016)

(a) Aryabhatta

(b) Varahamihira

(c) Buddhagupta

(d) Brahmagupta

5) Who among the following was the first to visit India? (2011)

(a) Huen Tsang

(b) I-Tsing

(c) Fa-Hien

(d) Megasthenes

6) Which one of the following scholars is believed to have written the Panchatantra stories? (2020)

(a) Vishnu Sharma

(b) Bhattadeva

(c) Suchruta

(d) Chaitanya

7) The paintings on the walls and ceilings in the Ajanta caves depict mainly (2016)

(a) Incidents relating to the Ramayana and Mahabharata

(b) Legends relating to Vikramaditya

(c) Incidents relating to the life of Gautama Buddha

(d) Incidents relating to the life of Mahavira

8) Who is considered the founder of the Gupta Empire? (2016)

(a) Chandragupta II

(b) Chandragupta I

(c) Samudragupta

(d) Sri Gupta

9) Mrichchhakatika was authored by (2006)

(a) Sudraka

(b) Kalidasa

(c) Bharavi

(d) Harishena

10) Aryabhatta was a famous (2006)

- (a) Poet
- (b) Scientist
- (c) **Astronomer**
- (d) Physician

11) Who is called the 'Indian Napoleon'? (2001)

- (a) **Samudragupta**
- (b) Chandragupta-II Vikramaditya
- (c) Skandagupta
- (d) Pulakeshin-II

CHAPTER 10- POST GUPTA PERIOD

HARSHA AND HIS TIMES

- The **decline of the Gupta Empire** was followed by a period of political **disorder and disunity** in North India.
- It was only in the **beginning of the seventh century A.D.** that Harshvardhana succeeded in establishing a larger kingdom in north India.

SOURCES

- **Harshacharita** written by Bana and the **Travel accounts of Hiuen Tsang (7TH CE AD).**
- The dramas written by **Harsha- Ratnavali, Nagananda and Priyadarsika.**
- The **Madhuben plate inscription and the Sonpat inscription** are also helpful to know the chronology of Harsha.
- The **Banskhera inscription** contains the signature of Harsha.

PUSHYABHUTIS OF THANESWAR

- The **founder of the family of Harsha was Pushyabhuti.**
- **Pushyabhutis** were the feudatories of the Guptas. They called themselves **Vardhanas.**
- The first important king of **Pushyabhuti dynasty was Prabhakaravardhana.**
- His capital was **Thaneswar, north of Delhi.**
- After Prabhakaravardhana's death, his elder son **Rajyavardhana** came to the throne **Rajyavardhana was killed by sasanka (ruler of bengal).**
- Harsha succeeded his brother at **Thaneswar.** He made **Kannauj as his capital.**

SOUTHWARD MILITARY EXPEDITION

- The **most important military campaign of Harsha** was against the **Western Chalukya ruler Pulakesin II.**
- Both the accounts of **Hiuen Tsang** and the inscriptions of **Pulakesin II** provide the details of this campaign.
- **Harsha** with an ambition to extend his kingdom **south of the Narmada river** marched against the **Chalukya ruler.**

- But the **Aihole inscription of Pulakesin II** mentions the **defeat of Harsha by Pulakesin**, who after this achievement assumed the title **Paramesvara**.
- **Aihole Inscription** was done by **Ravi Kirti in Sanskrit language**.
- **Hiuen Tsang's** accounts also confirm the victory of **Pulakesin**.

HARSHA AND BUDDHISM

- In his early life, **Harsha was a devout Saiva but later he became an ardent Hinayana Buddhist**. **Hiuen Tsang converted him to Mahayana Buddhism**.
- **ALLAHABAD CONFERENCE** —→ **Hiuen Tsang mentions in his account about the conference held at Allahabad, known as Prayag. Once in five years he convened a gathering of representatives of all religions and honoured them with gifts and costly presents.**
- **KANAUJ ASSEMBLY** —→ **Harsha organized a religious assembly at Kanauj to honour the Chinese pilgrim Hiuen Tsang towards the close of his reign. He invited representatives of all religious sects. Hiuen Tsang explained the values of Mahayana doctrine and established its superiority over others. However, violence broke out and there were acts of arson. There was also an attempt on the life of Harsha. Soon, it was brought under control and the guilty were punished. On the final day of the Assembly, Hiuen Tsang was honoured with costly presents.**

HARSHA'S ADMINISTRATION

- **One sixth of the produce was collected as land tax. Cruel punishments of the Mauryan period continued in the times of Harsha.**
- **Hiuen Tsang condemned the trials as barbarous and superstitious.**
- **Land grants were made to priests. In addition Harsha is credited with the grant of land to officers by charters. Thus his administration was more feudal and decentralised.**
- **The feudal practise of rewarding and paying officers with grants of land seems to have begun under Harsha.**
- **The law and order was not well maintained during Harsha's time.** The Hsuan Tsang was robbed of his belongings, although he reports that according to the laws of land severe punishment were inflicted for crime.
- **The maintenance of public records was the salient feature of Harsha's administration.** The archive of the Harsha period was known as **nilopitu** and it was under the control of special officer.

SOCIETY AND ECONOMY UNDER HARSHA

- The **fourfold division of the society** – Brahmin, Kshatriya, Vysya and Sudra – was prevalent.
- The **position of women was not satisfactory**.
- The **trade and commerce had declined during Harsha's period**.
- **There was a sharp economic decline as compared to the economy of the Gupta period**.

HSUAN TSANG'S ACCOUNT

- He visited India during reign of **Harshavardhana i.e; 7th CE**.
- He had came to study in **Buddhist University of Nalanda** and to collect **Buddhist texts** from India.
- He vividly describes **Harsha's court and life in those days**. This account is **much larger than that of Fa- hein**.
- It sheds light on the **economic and social life** as well as the religious sects of the period.

CULTURAL PROGRESS

- The **brick temple of Lakshmana at Sirpur (Chattisgarh)**.
- His biographer **Banabhatta** adorned his royal court. Besides **Harshacharita**, he wrote **Kadambari**.
- **Harsha patronised the Nalanda University by his liberal endowments**.

NALANDA UNIVERSITY

- **Hiuen Tsang** gives a very valuable account of the Nalanda University.
- The term Nalanda means “**giver of knowledge**”. It was founded by **Kumaragupta I during the Gupta period**. It was patronised by his successors and later by Harsha.
- The professors of the University were called **panditas**. Some of its renowned professors were **Dingnaga, Dharmapala, Sthiramati and Silabadhra**.
- Dharmapala was a native of **Kanchipuram** and he became the head of the **Nalanda University**.
- **Nalanda University** was a **residential university** and education was free including the boarding and lodging.
- It was maintained with the **revenue derived from 100 to 200 villages** endowed by different rulers.
- Though it was a **Mahayana University**, different **religious subjects like the Vedas, Hinayana doctrine, Sankhya and Yoga philosophies** were also taught.
- In addition to that, general subjects like **logic, grammar, astronomy, medicine and art** were in the syllabus. It attracted **students not only from different parts of India but from different countries of the east**.

TAXILA UNIVERSITY

- It is an ancient site of buddhism & vedic learning centre which is located in Pakistan during **6th CE BCE TILL 5TH AD.**
- The **Chanakya, Charaka, Panini** are important personalities associated with Taxila University.
- The famous treatise **Arthashastra** by **Chanakya**, is said to have been composed in **Takshashila** itself.
- It became a noted centre of learning at least several centuries BCE, and continued to **attract students from around the old world** until the **destruction of the city in the 5th century CE.**

CHAPTER 11- PALLAVAS AND CHALUKYAS

PALLAVAS

- After the **decline of the Sangam Age** in the Tamil country, the **Kalabhra rule** lasted for about 250 years.
- Thereafter, the **Pallavas established their kingdom in Tondaimandalam** with its capital at **Kanchipuram.**
- Their rule continued till **Tondaimandalam** was captured and annexed by the **Imperial Cholas in the beginning of the tenth century A.D**
- **Pallava dynasty** was established during **275 CE.**

IMPORTANT RULERS

- **SIMHAVISHNU**
 - He **destroyed the Kalabhras** and **firmly established the Pallava rule in Tondaimandalam.**
 - He also **defeated the Cholas** and **extended the Pallava territory up to the river Kaveri.**
- **MAHENDRAVARMAN I (600 – 630 A.D.)**
 - The **long-drawn Pallava – Chalukya Conflict** began during his period.
 - **Pulakesin II** marched against the **Pallavas** and **captured the northern part of their kingdom.**
 - He had also authored the **Sanskrit work Mattavilasa Prahasanam.**
 - His title **Chitrakarapuli** reveals his talents in **painting.**
 - He is also regarded as an expert in **music.** The music inscription at **Kudumianmalai** is ascribed to him.
- **NARASIMHAVARMAN I (630-668 A.D.)**
 - He was also known as **Mamalla**, which means **‘great wrestler’.**
 - He wanted to take **avenge the defeat of his father** at the hands of **Chalukyan ruler PulakesinII.**
 - His **victory over Pulakesin II in the Battle of Manimangalam** near **Kanchi** is mentioned in **Kuram copper plates.**

- He destroyed the **capital city of Vatapi** and assumed the **title ‘Vatapikonda’**. He regained the lost territory.
- Another notable achievement was his **naval expedition to Sri Lanka**.
- He restored the throne to his friend and **Sri Lankan prince Manavarma**.
- During his reign, **Hiuen Tsang visited the Pallava capital Kanchipuram**.
- His description of **Kanchi is vivid**.
- He calls it a **big and beautiful city** which had **100 Buddhist** monasteries in which about 10,000 Buddhist monks lived.
- According to his account the people of **Kanchi esteemed great learning** and the **Ghatika at Kanchi** served as a **great centre of learning**.
- **Narasimhavarman I** was the founder of **Mamallapuram** and the **monolithic rathas** were erected during his reign.
- **NARASIMHAVARMAN II OR RAJASIMHA (695 -722 A.D.)**
 - **Narasimhavarman I** was succeeded by **Mahendravarman II** and **Parameswarvarman I**.
 - The **Pallava – Chalukya conflict** continued during their reign.
 - Thereafter, **Narasimhavarman II** became the ruler of the **Pallava kingdom**.
 - He was also known as **Rajasimha**.
 - The **Shore temple at Mamallapuram** and the **Kailasanatha temple at Kanchipuram** were built in this period.
 - The famous **Sanskrit scholar Dandin** is said to have adorned his court.
 - He **sent embassies to China** and the **maritime trade flourished** during his reign.
- **LATER RULERS**
 - He was succeeded by **Parameswaravarman II** and **Nandivarman II**.
 - The Pallava rule lasted till **the end of the ninth century A.D.**
 - The **Chola king Aditya I** defeated the **last Pallava ruler Aparajita** and **seized the Kanchi region**.
 - With this, **the rule of Pallava dynasty came to an end**.

ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEM

- The **Pallava state** was divided into **Kottams**.
- The **Kottam** was administered by officers appointed by the king.
- The king was at the **centre of administration** in which he was assisted by able ministers. He was the fountain of justice. He maintained a **well-trained army**.
- He provided **land-grants to the temples** known as **Devadhana** and also to the **Brahmans** known as **Brahmadeya**.
- **Land tax** was the primary source of the government revenue. The **Brahmadeya** and **Devadhana lands** were exempted from tax.

SOCIETY

- The **caste system** became rigid.

- The **Saiva Nayanmars** and the **Vaishnava Alwars** contributed to the **growth of Saivism and Vaishnavism**. This is known as the **Bakthi Movement**.
- They **composed their hymns in the Tamil language**. These hymns revealed the **importance of devotion or Bakthi**.

EDUCATION AND LITERATURE

- The **Pallavas** were great patrons of learning. Their capital **Kanchi** was an ancient centre of learning. The **Ghatikaat Kanchi** was popular and **it attracted students from all parts of India** and abroad.
- The founder of the **Kadamba dynasty, Mayurasarman** studied **Vedas at Kanchi**. **Dinganaga**, a **Buddhist writer** came to study at **Kanchi**. **Dharmapala**, who later became the Head of the **Nalanada University**, belonged to **Kanchi**. **Bharavi**, the great Sanskrit scholar lived in the time of **Simhavishnu**. **Dandin**, another Sanskrit writer adorned the court of **Narasimhavarman II**.
- The **Nayanmars and Alwars** composed religious hymns in Tamil. The **Devaram** composed by **Nayanmars** and the **Nalayradivyaprabandam** composed by **Alwars** represent the **religious literature of the Pallava period**.
- **Perundevanar** was patronized by **Nandivarman II** and he translated the Mahabharata as **Bharathavenbain Tamil**. **Nandikkalambagam** was another important work but **the name of the author of this work is not known**.

PALLAVA TEMPLE ARCHITECTURE

- **Pallavas introduced the art of excavating temples** from the rock.
- In fact, the **Dravidian style of temple architecture** began with the Pallava rule.

RULER	FEATURE	EXAMPLE
MAHENDRAVARMA N 1	ROCK CUT TEMPLES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temples were known as mandapas (Mandagappattu, Mahendravadi, Mamandur, Dalavanur, Tiruchirappalli)
NARASIMHAVARMA N 1 (NARASIMHA GROUP)	ROCK-CUT TEMPLES WERE DECORATED WITH INTRICATE SCULPTURES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MANDAPAS-SEPARATE RATHAS. • PANCHAPANADAVA RATHAS. • DHARMARAJARATHA, DRAUPADI RATHA. • DRAVIDIAN STYLE - SUCCESSOR OF THE DHARMARAJA RATHA

RAJASIMHA GROUP	REAL STRUCTURAL TEMPLES. SOFT SAND ROCKS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SHORE TEMPLE AT MAHABALIPURAM. • KAILASHNATH TEMPLE at KANCHIPURAM, ETC.
NANDIVARMAN GROUP	SMALLER TEMPLE ALMOST SIMILAR TO DRAVIDIAN TEMPLES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MATAGENSWARA TEMPLES AT KANCHIPURAM

FINE ARTS

- The **Sittannavasal paintings** belonged to this period.
- The commentary called **Dakshinchitra** was compiled during the reign of **Mahendravarman I**, who had the title **Chittirakkarapuli**.
- The **Descent of the Ganges or the Penance of Arjuna** is called a **fresco painting in stone**.

CHALUKYAS

- The **Western Chalukyas** ruled over an extensive area in the Deccan for about two centuries after which the **Rashtrakutas** became powerful.
- The family of **Western Chalukyas** had its offshoots like the **Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi** and the **Chalukyas of Kalyani**.
- **Pulakesin I** was the founder of the **Chalukya** dynasty. He established a small kingdom with **Vatapi or Badami** as its capital.

PULAKESIN 2 (608-642 AD)

- The **Aihole inscription** issued by him gives the details of his reign.
- The notable achievement of **Pulakesin II** was the defeat of **Harshavardhana** on the banks of the river **Narmada**. He put a check to the ambition of **Harsha** to conquer the south.
- The most important event in the reign of **Pulakesin II** was the visit of **Hiuen Tsang** to his kingdom.

SUCCESSORS OF PULAKESIN 2

- The successor of **Pulakesin II** was **Vikramaditya**.
- **Kirtivarman II** was the last of the rulers of the **Chalukyas**.
- He was defeated by **Dantidurga**, the founder of the **Rashtrakuta** dynasty.

ADMINISTRATION & SOCIETY

- The **Chalukya** administration was **highly centralized** unlike that of the **Pallavas** and the **Cholas**.
- **Village autonomy** was **absent** under the **Chalukyas**.
- **Ravikirti**, the court poet of **Pulakesin II** who composed the **Aihole inscription** was a **Jain**.

TEMPLE ARCHITECTURE

- Chalukyas developed the **Vesara style** in the building of structural temples.
- However, the **Vesara Style** reached its culmination **only under the Rashtrakutas and the Hoysalas.**
- **Structural temples -Aihole, Badami and Pattadakal.**
- **Cave temples-Ajanta, Ellora and Nasik.**
- **The Chalukya temples may be divided into two stages.**
- **The first stage is represented by the temples at Aihole and Badami. Among the seventy temples found at Aihole, four are important.**
 - **Ladh Khan temple** is a low, flat-roofed structure consisting of a pillared hall.
 - **Durga temple** resembles a Buddha Chaitya.
 - **Huchimalligudi temple.**
 - **The Jain temple at Meguti.**
- **Temples at Badami**
 - **Muktheeswara temple and the Melagutti Sivalaya.**
 - **Four rock-cut temples at Badami**
- **Second Stage -Pattadakal**
 - There are **ten temples here, four in the northern style and the remaining six in the Dravidian style.** The **Papanatha temple** is the most notable in the northern style.
 - The **Sangamesvara temple** and the **Virupaksha temple** are famous for their Dravidian style.
- **Virupaksha Temple**
 - **Virupaksha temple** is built on the **model of the Kailasanatha temple at Kanchipuram.**
 - It was built by one of the queens of **Vikramaditya II.**
 - **Sculptors brought from Kanchi were employed in its construction.**

PAINTING

- The best specimens of Chalukya paintings can be seen in the **Badami cave temple and in the Ajanta caves.**
- The reception given to a **Persian embassy by Pulakesin II** is depicted in a **painting at Ajantha.**

VAKATAKAS (250 CE-500 CE)

- **Northern Maharashtra and Vidharba region** Satvahanas succeeded by Vakatakas.
- **Capital -Vatsagulma (washim)**
- Gujarat, Maharashtra, Chattisgarh.
- The Vakatakas, who were brahmanas themselves, are known from a **large number of copper plate land grants issued to Brahmanas.**

- Culturally Vakatakas became a channel for transmitting Brahmanical ideas and social institutions to south India.
- Vakatakas followed by Chalukyas of Badami.
- Ajanta caves built under patronage of Vakatakas.

APSC PYQ

1) Harshavardhana was defeated by a king of the (1998)

- a) Sungas
- b) Maukheris
- c) Satvahanas
- d) Chalukyas**

MEDIEVAL HISTORY

CHAPTER 1- AGE OF THREE EMPIRES

BACKGROUND

- Three empires arose in north India and the Deccan between **AD 750 and 1000**.
- These were the **Pala empire**, which dominated **eastern India** till the **middle of the ninth century**;
- The **Pratihara** empire, which dominated **western India and the upper Gangetic valley** till the **middle of the tenth century**.
- The **Rashtrakuta empire**, which dominated the Deccan and also **controlled territories** in north and south India at various times.

PALAS

- The Pala empire was founded by **Gopala, probably in AD 750**.
- **Gopala was succeeded in AD 770** by his son, **Dharmapala**, who ruled till **AD 810**.
- His reign was marked by a **tripartite struggle between the Palas, the Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas** for the **control of Kanauj** and north India.
- **Devapala**, the **son of Dharmapala**, who succeeded to the throne in **AD 810** and ruled for 40 years, extended his control over **Pragjyotishpur (Assam)** and parts of **Orissa**. Probably a part of **modern Nepal** was also brought under Pala suzerainty.

SIGNIFICANCE OF PALAS

- Pala rulers were **great patrons of Buddhist learning and religion**.
- The **Nalanda university** which had been famous all over the eastern world was **revived by Dharmapala**.
- He also founded the **Vikramasila university** which became second only to Nalanda in fame.

PRATIHARAS

- The Pratiharas (8th century CE - 11th century CE) held their sway over western and northern **India**.
- They are also called as Gurjara- Pratiharas.
- The Pratiharas established a series of principalities in central and eastern **Rajasthan**.
- The **Pratiharas who first had their capital at Bhinmal (Rajasthan)** gained prominence under Nagabhata I .

IMPORTANT RULERS & EVENTS

BHOJA

- The real founder of the **Pratihara empire and the greatest ruler of the dynasty was Bhoja**.
- **Bhoja was a devotee of Vishnu and** adopted the title of ‘Adivaraha’.

MAHENDRAPALA 1

- Bhoja was succeeded by his son Mahendrapala I.

RASHTRAKUTAS (755 – 975 A.D.)

- The **Rashtrakuta Dynasty** ruled parts of South **India** from the **8th to the 10th century CE**.
- At its zenith, their kingdom included the modern state of **Karnataka in its entirety along with parts of the current Indian states of Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Maharashtra and Gujarat**.
- The **Rashtrakutas were of Kannada origin and Kannada language was their mother tongue**.

DANTIDURGA

- He founded Rashtrakuta Empire by defeating Kritivarman II in **753 CE**. (King of Badami Chalukyas).

KRISHNA 1

- He built the magnificent **rock-cut monolithic Kailasa temple at Ellora (between the year 756 and 773 AD)**

AMOGHAVARSHA 1 (815-880 AD)

- He made **Manyakheta (Malkhed in Karnataka now) the centre of the empire** by which they are known today as **the Rashtrakutas of Manyakheta**.
- He himself endorsed and wrote landmark pieces in both the **Kannada and Sanskrit languages**.
- He wrote the famous Kannada work, **Kavirajamarga**.
- He was a follower of **Jainism. Jinasena was his chief preceptor**.

KRISHNA 3

- He **marched against the Cholas and defeated them at Battle of Takkolam**.
- The **Battle of Thakkolam** was fought in **949 CE** between the crowned prince **Rajaditya**, of the **Chola dynasty and King Kannaradevan (Krishna Raja III)** from the **Rashtrakuta Kingdom**.
- The battle was fought at **Takkolam** in the present-day **Vellore District of Tamil Nadu**.
- The battle resulted in the **defeat of the Cholas and the death of Rajaditya on the battlefield**.
- **Rashtrakutas were replaced by Chalukyas of Kalyani/ Western Chalukyas**.

CULTURAL CONTRIBUTIONS

- The **Rashtrakutas** widely patronized the Sanskrit literature.
- **Trivikrama** wrote **Nalachampu** and the **Kavirahasya** was composed by **Halayudha** during the reign of **Krishna III**.
- **Jinasena** composed **Parsvabhudaya**, a biography of Parsva in verses.
- **Gunabhadra** wrote the **Adipurana**, the life stories of various Jain saints.
- **Sakatayana** wrote the grammar work called **Amogavritti**.
- The great mathematician of this period, **Viracharya** was the author of **Ganitasaram**.
- Pampa was the greatest of the Kannada poets. His famous work was **Vikramasenavijaya**.
- Ponna was another famous Kannada poet and he wrote **Santipurana**.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

- The art and architecture of the **Rashtrakutas** were found at **Ellora and Elephanta**.
- At Ellora, the most remarkable temple is the **Kailasa temple**.
- It was excavated during the reign of **Krishna I**.
- It is carved out of a massive block of rock 200 feet long, and 100 feet in breadth and height.
- **Elephanta** Cave is located near **Bombay**.
- The caves are estimated to have been constructed sometime between **5th and 6th century AD**.
- Its having caves dedicated to the **Hinduism as well as Buddhism**

APSC PYQ

1) Who did not take part in the struggle for the possession of Kanauj? (2006)

- (a) Pratiharas
- (b) **Paramaras**
- (c) Rashtrakutas
- (d) Palas

2) Which one of the following is chronologically correct? (2006)

- (a) Satavahanas-Pallavas-Chalukyas of Kalyani-Rashtrakutas
- (b) Rashtrakutas-Pallavas-Chalukyas of Kalyani-Satavahanas
- (c) **Pallavas-Satavahanas-Rashtrakutas-Chalukyas of Kalyani**
- (d) Chalukyas of Kalyani-Rashtrakutas-Pallavas-Satavahanas

CHAPTER 2 -IMPERIAL CHOLAS

BACKGROUND

- The reign of the Cholas began in the 9th century when they defeated the Pallavas to come into power.
- This rule stretched over for over five long centuries until the **13th century**.
- Their capital was Tanjore.
- They also extended their sway in Sri Lanka and the Malay Peninsula.
- Therefore, they are called the Imperial Cholas.

PROMINENT RULERS OF CHOLA KINGDOM

VIJAYALAYA

- The Chola Empire was founded by **Vijayalaya**.
- Tanjore was made the **first capital of the Chola Empire**.

ADITYA 1

- Aditya I **succeeded Vijayalaya to become the ruler of the empire**.
- Aditya put an end to the Pallava kingdom by defeating **Aparajita and annexed Tondaimandalam**.

PARANTAKA 1

- He suffered a defeat at the hands of the **Rashtrakutas** in the **famous battle of Takkolam (949AD)**
- He also provided the **vimana of the famous Nataraja temple at Chidambaram** with a golden roof.
- The **two famous Uttiramerur inscriptions** that give a detailed account of the village administration under the Cholas belong to his reign.

RAJARAJA 1 (947 CE – 1014 CE)

- Chola power reached highest point of glory.
- He was a devout follower of **Saivism**.
- He completed the construction of the famous **Rajarajeswara temple or Brihadeeswara temple at Tanjore in 1010 A.D.**

RAJENDRA 1 (1012 -1044 AD)

- The **whole of Sri Lanka was made part of the Chola Empire**.
- His North Indian Campaign was famous. **Proceeding** through Kalinga, Rajendra I attacked Bengal and defeated the Pala ruler Mahipala in 1022 A.D.

- As he defeated Mahipala 1 of Bengal, To commemorate this Victory Rajendra 1 founded the city of **Gangaikondacholapuram** & constructed the famous Rajesvaram Temple.
- Naval expedition to Kadaram / Sri Vijaya was completely successful. He assumed the title **Kadaramkondan**.
- The term 'Kadaram Kondan' means the 'Conqueror of Kadaram(modern Kedah in Malaysia).

LATER RULERS AND DECLINE OF CHOLA EMPIRE

- The **Last Ruler was Rajendra 3** and he was defeated by **Jatavarman Sundarapandya II**.
- The Chola country was absorbed into the Pandya Empire.

ADMINISTRATION- CENTRAL GOVERNMENT

- The **emperor or king was at the top of the administration**.
- King had a **council of ministers** to advise him.
- There was elaborate administrative machinery comprising various officials called **perundanam** (**Higher Officials**) and **sirudanam** (Lower Officials) were advisors to the King.

REVENUE

- The land revenue department was well organized. It was called **puravuvarithinaikkalam**.
- **All lands were carefully surveyed and classified for assessment of revenue**.
- The residential portion of the village was called **ur nattam**.
- These and other lands such as the **lands belonging to temples were exempted from tax**.
- Besides **land revenue**, there were **tolls and customs** on goods taken from one place to another, various kinds of professional taxes, dues levied on ceremonial occasions like **marriages and judicial fines**.

MILITARY ADMINISTRATION

- The royal troops were called **Kaikkolaperumpadai**.
- Within this there was a personal troop to defend the king known as **Velaikkarar**.
- Attention was given to the training of the army and military cantonments called **kadagams** existed.
- The **Cholas paid special attention to their navy**.
- They **controlled the Malabar and Coromandal coasts**.
- In fact, the **Bay of Bengal became a Chola lake for some time**.

PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION

- The Chola Empire was divided into **mandalams** and each **mandalam** into **valanadus** and **nadus**.
- In each **nadu** there were a number of **autonomous villages**.
- The **royal princes or officers** were in charge of **mandalams**.
- The **valanadu** was under **periyannattar** and **nadu** under **nattar**.
- The town was known as **nagaram** and it was under the administration of a council called **nagarattar**.

VILLAGE ASSEMBLIES

- The **system of village autonomy with sabhas and their committees** developed through the ages and **reached its culmination during the Chola rule.**
- Two inscriptions belonging to the period of **Parantaka I** found at **Uttiramerur** provide details **of the formation and functions of village councils.**
- That village was divided into thirty wards and each was to nominate its members to the village council. The inscription also mentions qualifications and disqualification for **becoming the member of wards.**
- The village committee members were called **variyaapperumakkal.**
- There were **two village assemblies**, called **the ur, and the sabha or mahasabha.**
- The **ur was a general assembly of the village.**
- **Mahasabha** was a gathering of the **adult men in the Brahman villages** which were called **agraharams.**
- **Agraharams were villages with Brahman settlements in which most of the land was rent-free.**
- The **mahasabha could distribute new lands, and exercise ownership rights over them.**
- It could **also raise loans for the village and levy taxes.**
- The self-government enjoyed by **these Chola villages was a very fine system**

SOCIO -ECONOMIC LIFE

- **Caste system was widely prevalent during the Chola period.**
- The inscriptions of the **later period of the Chola rule** mention about two major divisions among the castes – **Valangai (Mainly Agricultural Groups) and Idangai (Mainly Artisans And Trading Group)** castes.
- The **status of women did not improve.**
- The **devadasi system** or dancing girls attached to temples emerged during this period.

RELIGION

- Both **Saivism and Vaishnavism** continued to flourish during the **Chola period.**
- A number of temples were built with the **patronage of Chola kings and queens.**
- The temples **remained centres of economic activity during this period.**
- The **mathas** had great influence during this period. (**Matha**, in Hinduism, any monastic establishment of world renouncers *or* sannyasis.)

ECONOMY

- **Both agriculture and industry flourished.**
- Grants to Brahmins and temples increased, both of which helped in expanding cultivation
- **Reclamation of forest lands and the construction and maintenance of irrigation tanks** led to agricultural prosperity.
- The **weaving industry, particularly the silk-weaving at Kanchi** flourished.

- Commerce and trade were brisk with **trunk roads or peruvazhis** (Ancient trade route that connected many places in Tamilnadu) and merchant guilds.
- Gold, silver and copper coins were issued in plenty at various denominations.

EDUCATION AND LITERATURE

- **Sivakasintamani** written by **Thiruthakkadevar**.
- **Kundalakesi** (Tamil Buddhist) epic written by **Nathakuthanaar** belonged to 10th century.
- The **Ramayana** composed by **Kamban** and the **Periyapuranam** or **Tiruttondarpuranam** by **Sekkilar** are the two master-pieces of this age.
- **Kamban's Ramayana** is considered a classic in Tamil literature.
- **Jayankondar's Kalingattupparani** describes the Kalinga war fought by **Kulotunga I**.
- The **Moovarula** written by **Ottakuthar** depicts the life of three Chola kings.
- The works on Tamil grammar like **Kalladam** by **Kalladanar**, **Yapperungalam** by **Amirthasagarar**, a Jain, **Nannul** by **Pavanandhi** and **Virasoliyam** by **Buddhamitra** were the products of the Chola age.
- **Pampa, Ponna and Ranna** are regarded as the three gems of Kannada poetry

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

- The **Dravidian style of art and architecture** reached its perfection under the Cholas.
- The chief feature of the Chola temple is the **vimana**.
- The **Big Temple at Tanjore** built by **Rajaraja I** is a master-piece of South Indian art and architecture.
- Another notable contribution made by the Cholas to temple architecture is the **Siva temple at Gangaikondacholapuram** built by **Rajendra I**.
- The **Airavathesvara temple at Darasuram** in Tanjore District and the **Kampaharesvara temple at Tribhuvanam** are examples of later Chola temples.
- An important piece of Chola sculpture was the sculpture of **Nataraja in the Tandava dance posture**.

BRONZE STATUE OF NATARAJA- FEATURES

- The upper right hand holds the drum, which signifies the **sound of creation**.
- All creations spring from the great sound of the **damru**.
- The upper left hand holds the eternal fire, which represents destruction.
- **Destruction is the precursor and an inevitable counterpart of creation**.
- The lower right hand is raised in the gesture of **abhaya mudra** signifying **benediction and reassuring the devotee not to be afraid**.
- The lower left hand points towards the upraised foot and indicates the path of **salvation**.
- **Shiva is dancing on the figure of a small dwarf**. The dwarf symbolises **ignorance** and the ego of an individual.

- The **matted and flowing locks of Shiva** represent the **flow of river Ganges**.
- In ornamentation, **one ear of Shiva has a male earring while the other has female**.
- This represents the fusion of male and female and is often referred to as **ardhanarishwar**.
- A snake is twisted around the arm of Shiva. The snake **symbolises the kundalini power, which resides in the human spine in dormant stage**. If aroused, one can attain true consciousness.
- The **Nataraja is surrounded by a nimbus of glowing lights which symbolises the vast unending cycles of time**.

APSC PYQ

1) Which one of the following was not a port of the Chola Empire? (2006)

- (a) Kaveripattanam
- (b) Mahabalipuram
- (c) Shaliyur
- (d) **Tamralipti**

CHAPTER 3- THE AGE OF CONFLICT (CIRCA 1000-1200)

RAJPUT KINGDOMS

- With the break-up of the Pratihara empire, a number of Rajput states came into existence in north India.
- The most important of these were the **Gahadavalas of Kanauj, the Paramaras of Malwa, and the Chauhans of Ajmer**.
- In the period of Muslim aggression, the **Rajputs were the main defenders of the Hindu religion and culture**.
- **The Origin of Rajputs is a subject of debate**. There are many theories that support their origins such as the Agni Kula theory, Tribal Origin theory, Foreign Origin theory, Kshatriya Origin theory, and mixed origin theory.
- According to medieval legends, there are four Agnivanshi clans: Chauhans (Chahamanas), Parihars (Pratiharas), Parmars (Paramaras) and Solankis (Chaulukyas).

LIST OF RAJPUT DYNASTIES

1. Imperial Pratiharas of Kannauj
2. Chauhans (of Sambhar, Nadol, Ranthambore and Jalor)
3. Tomaras of Delhi
4. Chaulukyas (Solankis) and Vaghelas of Gujarat
5. Paramaras of Malwa and Chandravati
6. Gahadavalas of Varanasi and Kannauj
7. Chandelas of Jejakabhukti (modern Bundelkhand)

8. Guhilas of Medapata (modern Mewar)

MUHAMMED BIN QASIM

- In 712 A.D., Muhammad bin Qasim invaded Sind by defeating the ruler of Sindh (Dahir).

MAHMUD OF GHAZNI AND HIS INVASIONS

- Mahmud of Ghazni or Mahmud Ghaznavi was sultan of the kingdom of Ghazna (998–1030)
- Mahmud is said to have made **seventeen raids into India.**
- Through the **Battle of Wahind**, Mahmud Ghazni defeated the ruler of **Hindu Shahi Kingdom** and extended his rule over most of the **Punjab.**
- The **Battle of Waihind in 1008-09 AD** was fought between Mahmud of Ghazni and Hindu shahi ruler Anandapala.
- In 1024, Mahmud marched from Multan across Rajaputana, defeated the Solanki King **Bhimadeva I**, plundered Anhilwad and sacked the famous **temple of Somanatha.**
- **Al – Beruni** was the historian to accompany Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni in several of his expeditions

MUHAMMED GHORI

- In 1175, Muhammad Ghorī captured Multan and occupied whole of Sind in his subsequent expeditions.
- In 1186 he **attacked Punjab, captured it from Khusru Malik** (The last Ghaznavid Sultan was Khusrau Malik, who at the time of Ghorī's attack, was ruling around Punjab and Lahore region) and annexed it to his dominions.
- The **annexation of Punjab** carried his dominion eastward to the Sutlej and led his invasion of the Chauhan kingdom.

FIRST BATTLE OF TARAIN-1191

- The first battle of Tarain (Taraori) was fought between Sultan Mohammad Ghorī and Prithviraj Chauhan in 1191 near the town of Tarain in Haryana.
- . In the first battle of Tarain in 1191 A.D, the army of Mohammed Ghorī was defeated by the Rajput army of Chauhan.

SECOND BATTLE OF TARAIN-1192

- In the ensuing **Second Battle of Tarain in 1192**, Muhammad Ghorī thoroughly routed the army of Prithiviraj, who was captured and killed.
- The second battle of Tarain was a decisive battle. It was a major **disaster for the Rajputs.**

- The first Muslim kingdom was thus firmly established in India at Ajmer and a new era in the history of India began.

BATTLE OF CHANDAWAR-1193/1194

- It was fought between **Muhammed Ghori** and **Gahadavala ruler Jayachandra**.
- **Muhammad routed Jayachandra's forces**
- It took place at **Chandawar (modern Chandawal near Ferozabad)**, on the Yamuna River close to Agra.
- The Ghurid army during the battle of Chandawar was led by **Qutb al-Din Aibak**.
- The **Battles of Tarain and Chandawar contributed to the establishment of Turkish rule in India.**

APSC PYQ

1) Which one of the following Rajput dynasties did not claim their mythical origin from 'Agnikula'? (2006)

- (a) Pratihara
- (b) Chauhana
- (c) **Chandel**
- (d) Solanki

2) Dahir, the king of Sind, was defeated by (2006)

- (a) Sultan Mahmud
- (b) **Muhammad bin Kasim**
- (c) Qutb-ud-din-Aibak
- (d) Muhammad Ghori

3) The historian to accompany Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni in several of his expeditions was (2001)

- (a) Ferishta
- (b) **Alberuni**
- (c) Minhazuddin Siraj
- (d) Badauni

CHAPTER 4- DELHI SULTANATE

BACKGROUND

- The **Muslim invasions into India** had ultimately resulted in the establishment of **Delhi Sultanate** which existed from **A.D. 1206 to 1526**.
- Five **different dynasties** – the **Slave, Khalji, Tughlaq, Sayyids and Lodis** – ruled under the **Delhi Sultanate**.

- Not only they extended **their rule over North India**, but also they penetrated into the Deccan and South India.

SLAVE DYNASTY

- The Slave dynasty was also called Mamluk dynasty.
- **Mamluk was the Quranic term for slave.**
- The Slave dynasty ruled Delhi from A.D. 1206 to 1290.

QUTBUDDIN AIBAK (1206-1210)

- **Qutbuddin Aibak was a slave of Muhammad Ghori, who made him the Governor of his Indian possessions.**
- After the death of Ghori in 1206, Aibak declared his independence and founded the Slave dynasty as well as the **Delhi Sultanate**.
- **He assumed the title Sultan and made Lahore his capital.**
- Aibak died suddenly while playing **chaugan (horse polo)** in 1210.
- He was succeeded by his son **Aram Baksh, who was replaced by Iltutmish after eight months.**

ILTUMISH (1211-1236)

- Iltutmish belonged to the **Ilbari tribe and hence his dynasty was named as Ilbari dynasty.**
- His half brothers sold him as a slave to Aibak, who made him his-son-in law by giving his daughter in marriage to him.
- He shifted his **capital from Lahore to Delhi.**
- In the meantime, **Temujin popularly known as Chengiz Khan, the leader of the Mongols, started invading Central Asia.**
- Chengiz Khan, defeated **Jalaluddin Mangabarni, the ruler of Kwarizam.**
- **Mangabarni crossed the river Indus and sought asylum from Iltutmish.**
- Iltutmish refused to give him shelter in order to save his empire from the onslaught of the Mongols.
- In order to avert this danger, **Iltutmish marched to Lahore and occupied it.**
- **In 1218, the Khwarizmi empire was destroyed by the Mongols who founded one of the strongest empires in history.**
- Fortunately for Iltutmish, **Chengiz Khan returned home without entering into India.**
- In fact, **the Mongol policy of Iltutmish saved India from the wrath of Chengiz Khan.**
- Later he nominated his daughter Raziya as his successor.
- Thus the hereditary succession to Delhi Sultanate was initiated by Iltutmish.

CONTRIBUTION OF ILTUMISH

- Apart from **completing the construction of Qutb Minar at Delhi, the tallest stone tower in India (238 ft.), he built a magnificent mosque at Ajmir.**
- Iltutmish introduced the Arabic coinage into India and the **silver tanka weighing 175 grams became a standard coin in medieval India.**

- Iltutmish had also created a new **class of ruling elite of forty powerful military leaders, the Forty.**

RAZIYA (1236-1240)

- Although Iltutmish nominated his daughter **Raziya as his successor, the Qazi of Delhi and Wazir put Ruknuddin Feroz on the throne.**
- In order to assert her claim, Raziya had to contend against her brothers as well as against powerful Turkish nobles, and could rule only for three years.
- Her reign marked the **beginning of a struggle for power between the monarchy and the Turkish chiefs, sometimes called ‘the forty’ or the chahalgani.**
- **The fall of Raziya paved the way for the ascendancy of the Forty.**

GHIYASUDDIN BALBAN (1246-1287)

- **Ghiyasuddin Balban, who was also known as Ulugh Khan, served as Naib or regent to Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud.**
- **In 1266 Nasiruddin Mahmud died without issues and Balban ascended the throne.**
- **According to Balban the Sultan was God’s shadow on earth and the recipient of divine grace.**
- **Balban introduced rigorous court discipline and new customs such as prostration and kissing the Sultan’s feet to prove his superiority over the nobles.**
- **He also introduced the Persian festival of Nauroz to impress the nobles and people with his wealth and power.**
- **He stood forth as the champion of Turkish nobility. At the same time he did not share power with other nobles.**
- **Indian Muslims were not given important post in the government. He appointed spies to monitor the activities of the nobles.**
- **He established a separate military department - diwan-i-arz – and reorganized the army.**
- **In the northwest the Mongols reappeared and Balban sent his son Prince Mahmud against them. But the prince was killed in the battle and it was a moral blow to the Sultan. Balban died in 1287.**
- **When Balban died, one of his grandsons Kaiqubad was made the Sultan of Delhi.**
- **After four years of incompetent rule, Jalaluddin Khalji captured the throne of Delhi in 1290.**

KHALJI DYNASTY (1290-1320)

JALALUDDIN KHALJI

- **The founder of the Khalji dynasty was Jalaluddin Khalji.**
- **Alauddin Khalji treacherously murdered his father-in-law Jalaluddin Khalji and usurped the throne of Delhi.**

ALAUDDIN KHALJI (1296-1316)

- **He framed regulations to control the nobles.**

- He was first Turkish conqueror to cross Vindhya ranges and extend his power over south.
- He was convinced that the general prosperity of the nobles, intermarriages between noble families, inefficient spy-system and drinking liquor were the basic reasons for the rebellions.
- The intelligence system was reorganized and all the secret activities of the nobles were immediately reported to the Sultan.
- The public sale of liquor and drugs was totally stopped.
- Social gatherings and festivities without the permission of Sultan were forbidden. By such harsh measures his reign was free from rebellions.

REFORMS OF ALAUDDIN KHALJI

- Alauddin Khalji maintained a large permanent standing army and paid them in cash from the royal treasury.
- He introduced the system of **dagh (branding of horses)** and prepared **huliya (descriptive list of Soldiers-unique identification system for his soldiers.)**.
- **Dagh** -The Daggh was a system of branding horses specifically for wars. It was a mark made on each cavalry horse identifying it as a royal or approved horse.
- The introduction of paying salaries in cash to the soldiers led to price regulations popularly called as **Market Reforms**.
- Alauddin Khalji established four separate markets in Delhi, one for grain; another for cloth, sugar, dried fruits, butter and oil; a third for horses, slaves and cattle; and a fourth for miscellaneous commodities.
- Each market was under the control of a high officer called **Shahna-i- Mandi**.
- A separate department called **Diwani Riyasat** was created under an officer called **Naib-i- Riyasat**.
- Every merchant was registered under the Market department.
- There were secret agents called **munhiyans** who sent reports to the Sultan regarding the functioning of these markets.
- Apart from market reforms, Alauddin Khalji took important steps in the land revenue administration.
- He was the first Sultan of Delhi who ordered for the measurement of land.

MILITARY CAMPAIGNS

- **Against Mongols** - Alauddin Khalji sent his army six times against the Mongols. The first two were successful. But the third **Mongol invader Khwaja came up to Delhi but they were prevented from entering into the capital city**. The next three Mongol invasions were also dealt with severely. Thousands of Mongols were killed. The northwestern frontier was fortified and Gazi Malik was appointed as the Warden of Marches to protect the frontier.
- **Gujarat (1299)** – He had led expedition against Gujarat. Alauddin Khalji was also taken to Delhi and later he was made the Malik Naib – military commander.

- **Ranthampur** -In 1301, Alauddin marched against **Ranthampur** and after a three month's siege it fell. The Rajput women committed **jauhar** or self-immolation.
- **Chittor**- It was the powerful state in Rajasthan. The siege lasted for several months. In 1303 Alauddin stormed the Chittor fort. Raja Ratan Singh and his soldiers fought valiantly but submitted. The Rajput women including Rani Padmini performed **jauhar**. This Padmini episode was graphically mentioned in the book **Padmavath** written by Jayasi.

JAUHAR

- Jauhar (Indian rite of collective self-immolation) was a **Hindu tradition practiced by Rajput women** who wanted to **avoid falling into the hands of the enemy**. Instead of consuming poison, they preferred to burn in flames, as fire symbolised purity.
- It is said that the practice was performed only during wars between Rajput men and Muslim invaders, in the face of defeat.
- The women did this to avoid being enslaved and raped by the invaders. In short, they committed jauhar to preserve their royal honour and lineage.

PADMAVAT

- **Malik Muhammad Jayasi** (or as some historians call him, 'Jaisi') was an Indian Sufi poet who preferred to write in Awadhi, the language favoured by the common folk in 15th century.
- Jayasi's most famous work remains **Padmavat**, the story of the historic siege of Chittor by **Alauddin Khalji** (or **Khilji**) and his conquest for **Rani Padmini** (or **Padmavati**).
- Rattan Singh died fighting the battle while Rani Padmini and other Rajput ladies committed self immolation (Jauhar)

DECCAN & SOUTH CAMPAIGN UNDER MALIK KAFUR

- Alauddin Khalji's greatest achievement was the **conquest of Deccan and the far south**.
- Although the Sultan was illiterate, he patronized poets like **Amir Khusrau** and **Amir Hasan**.
- He also built a famous gateway known as **Alai Darwaza** and constructed a **new capital at Siri**.

TUGLAQ DYNASTY (1320-1414)

GHIYASUDDIN TUGHLAQ (1320-1325)

- Founder of the **Tughluq dynasty** died in an accident
- Laid the foundation for **Tughlaq bad near Delhi**.
- **Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq** sent his son **Juna Khan** to fight against Warangal.
- He defeated **Pratabarudra** and returned with rich booty.
- Succeeded by son **Muhammad bin Tughlaq** in 1325

MUHAMMAD BIN TUGHLAQ (1325-1351)

- Muhammad bin Tughlaq was the only Delhi Sultan who had received a comprehensive literary, religious and philosophical education.

TRANSFER OF CAPITAL

- **Muhammad bin Tughlaq wanted to make Devagiri his second capital so that he might be able to control South India better.**
- In 1327 he made extensive preparations for the **transfer of royal household and the ulemas and Sufis from Delhi to Devagiri**, which was renamed as **Daulatabad**.
- After two years, the **Sultan abandoned Daulatabad and asked them to return to Delhi.**

TOKEN CURRENCY

- In 1329-30 **Muhammad bin Tughlaq introduced a token currency.**
- There was a shortage of **silver through out the world in the fourteenth century.**
- **Muhammad bin Tughlaq issued copper coins at par with the value of the silver tankacoins.**
- **But he was not able to prevent forging the new coins.**
- Finally, **Muhammad bin Tughlaq stopped the circulation of token currency and promised to exchange silver coins for the copper coins.**

TAXATION IN DOAB

- To overcome financial difficulties, **increased the land revenue on the farmers of Doab (land between Ganges and Yamuna rivers).**
- During famine, sultan left Delhi and for two and half years lived in a camp called **Swargadwari**, 100 miles from Delhi on the banks of the Ganges near Kanauj.

AGRICULTURAL REFORMS

- Launched **Takkavi Loans (loans for cultivation)** were given to the farmers to buy seed and to extend cultivation.
- A separate department for agriculture, **Diwan- i- Kohi** was established.
- The **Takkavi Loan scheme** failed largely because the men chosen for the purpose proved to be inexperienced and dishonest, and misappropriated the money for their own use.

REBELLIONS

- The rebellion of **Hasan Shah** resulted in the establishment of the **Madurai Sultanate.**
- In 1336 the **Vijayanagar kingdom** was founded.
- In 1347 **Bahamini kingdom** was established.
- According to **Baduani**, the Sultan was freed from his people and the people from the Sultan.

FIROZ TUGHLAQ

- Cousin of **Muhammad Bin Tughlaq**
- He was the **first Sultan to impose irrigation tax.**
- He developed royal factories called **karkhanas** in which thousands of slaves were employed.
- The famous monument was **Firozabad near Red Fort in Delhi, now called Firoz Shah Kotla**
- Old monuments like **Jama Masjid and Qutb-Minar** were also repaired.

- A new department called **Diwan-i-Khairat** was created to take care of orphans and widows.
- He was the **first ruler who took steps to have Hindu religious works translated from Sanskrit into Persian.**

DISINTEGRATION

- Timur was the **founder of the Timurid Dynasty**, who was a **Turko- Mongol Conqueror.**
- Timur was ruler of Central Asia with his capital at **Samarkand.**
- Timur invaded India (1398) during the Reign of **Sultan Nasir-ud-Din Mahmud Shah Tughluq (1394 to 1412)- (Last Tughluq Ruler)**
- When Timur entered Delhi there was no opposition and he sacked Delhi for three days murdering thousands of people and looting enormous wealth.
- He **withdrew from India in 1399 and his invasion in fact delivered a death blow to the Tughlaq dynasty.**

SAYYIDS (1414-1451)

- Before his departure from India, **Timur appointed Khizr Khan as governor of Multan.**
- He captured **Delhi and founded the Sayyid dynasty in 1414.**
- He was succeeded by weak rulers like **Mubarak Shah, Muhammed Shah, Alam Shah.**
- Last Sayyid ruler **Alam Shah abdicated in favour of Bahlul Lodi.**

LODI DYNASTY (1451-1526)

BAHLUL LODI (1451-1489)

- The Lodis, who succeeded Sayyids, were Afghans.
- Bahlul Lodi was the first Afghan ruler while his predecessors were all Turks.
- He died in 1489 and was succeeded by his son, **Sikandar Lodi.**

SIKANDAR LODI (1489-1517)

- He was the **greatest of the three Lodi sovereigns.**
- **Abolished the octroi duty on grains, and established a new measurement of the yard, called the gazz-i-sifyindari (for the measurement of agricultural land), which continued to prevail till the mughal times.**
- He made **Agra a large town and the second capital of the Lodis – City of Agra was founded.**

IBRAHIM LODI (1517-1526)

- **Sikandar Lodi was succeeded by his eldest son Ibrahim Lodi who was arrogant.**
- **Daulat Khan Lodi, the governor of the Punjab was insulted and disaffection between king and courtier became very common.**
- Greatly displeased by the arrogance of **Ibrahim, Daulat Khan Lodi invited Babur to invade India.**
- **Babur marched against Delhi and defeated and killed Ibrahim Lodi in the first battle of Panipat (1526).**

INDIA UNDER THE DELHI SULTANATE

ADMINISTRATION

- The **Delhi Sultanate** was an Islamic state with its religion Islam.
- The **Sultans** considered themselves as representatives of the Caliph.
- Ultimate authority for the political, legal and political matters.
- **No clear law on succession.**
- **Ulemas** played crucial role in accepting the succession.
- Sultan acted as a **court of appeal** from the judges.
- The sultans had to supplement the Muslim law by framing their **own regulations (zawabit).**

CENTRAL GOVERNMENT

- **NAIB**-practically **enjoyed all the powers of the Sultan** and exercised general control over all the departments.
- **WAZIR** -heading the **finance department** called **Diwani Wizarat**.
- **Ariz-i-mumalik**- Head of Military Department
 - **Recruiting the soldiers and administering the military department.**
 - He was **not the commander-in-chief** of the army.
 - The Sultan himself was the **commander-in-chief** of the army.
- **Diwani Rasalat** was the department of religious affairs. It was headed by **chief Sadr**.
- **Chief Qazi** – Head of Judicial department
- The department of correspondence was called **Diwani Insha**.

<u>TERM</u>	<u>MEANING</u>
Iqtas	Provinces
Muqtis/ walis	Governors of provinces
Muqtis/ walis	Maintain law & order , collect land revenue
Shiqs	Division of provinces (districts)
Shiqdar	Head of the shiq
Pargana	Group of villages
Amil	Head of pargana
Muqaddam/ choudhri	Village headman
Patwari	Village accountant

ECONOMY

After consolidating their position in India, the **Delhi Sultans introduced reforms in the land revenue administration**. The lands were classified into **three categories**:

<u>LAND TYPE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>
Iqta land	Lands assigned to officials as iqtas instead of payment for their services.
Khalisa land	Land under the direct control of the Sultan and the revenues collected were spent for the maintenance of royal court and royal household.
Inam land	Land assigned or granted to religious leaders or religious institutions.

COINAGE

- Iltutmish issued several types of **silver tankas, Jital – Copper Coins**
- Gold coins or dinars became popular during the reign of **Alauddin Khalji**.
- Muhammad bin Tughlaq had not only experimented token currency **but also issued several types of gold and silver coins**.
- Gold coins were issued in very **large numbers during the reign of Muhammed bin Tughlaq, thereafter gold coins became scarce**

MUSIC

- New musical instruments such as **sarangi and rabab were** introduced during this period.
- **Amir Khusrau** introduced many new **ragas such as ghora and sanam**. He evolved a new style of light music known as **qwalis** by blending the Hindu and Iranian systems. The invention of **sitar** was also attributed to him.
- The Indian classical work **Ragadarpan** was translated into Persian during the reign of Firoz Tughlaq.
- **Pir Bhodan, Sufi saint** was one of the **great musicians of this period**.
- **Raja Man Singh of Gwalior was a great lover of music**. He encouraged the composition of a great musical work called **Man Kautuhal**.

LITERATURE

- Barani's **Tarikhi-Firoz Shah** contains the history of Tughlaq dynasty.
- Minhaj-us-Siraj wrote **Tabaqat-i- Nasari**, a general history of Muslim dynasties up to 1260.
- Amir Khusrau experimented with several poetical forms and created a new style of **Persian poetry called Sabaqi- Hind or the Indian style**. Amir Khusrau's **Khazain-ul-Futuh** speaks about **Alauddin's conquests**. His famous work **Tughlaq Namah** deals with the rise of **Ghyiasuddin Tughlaq**.

- Sanskrit and Persian functioned as link languages in the Delhi Sultanate. Zia Nakshabi was the first to translate Sanskrit stories into Persian.
- The book **Tutu Nama** or **Book of the Parrot** became popular and translated into **Turkish and later into many European languages.**
- The famous **Rajatarangini** written by **Kalhana** belonged to the period of **Zain-ul-Abidin**, the ruler of Kashmir.
- In Arabic, Alberuni's **Kitab-ul-Hind** is the most famous work. Bengali literature had also developed and **Nusrat Shah** patronized the translation of **Mahabharata** into Bengali.

IBN BATTUTAH (1332-33 AD)

- He was a **Moroccan traveler** and came to India in 1332–33 AD during the reign of **Muhammad Bin Tughlaq** who then appointed him as **“qazi” or judge of Delhi.**
- Ibn Battuta wrote a book of travels in Arabic called **‘Rihla’.**
- It provides vivid details about the social and cultural life of India in the **14 th century**

AMIR KHOSROW- PARROT OF INDIA

- **Born -1253-in Uttar Pradesh, India—died 1325, Delhi.**
- One of India's greatest **Persian-language poets.**
- Patronage of Delhi sultanate, especially sultan **Ghiyās-Ud-Dīn Balban/ Jalal Ud-Din Firuz Khalji.**
- Alauddin Khalji gave Amir Khusrau the title of **Tuti-i-Hind** which means 'Parrot of India'.
- Dedicated follower of the **Muhammad Niam-ud-dīn Awliya.**
- **“Every pearl in the Royal Crown is but the crystallized drops of blood fallen from the tearful eyes of the poor peasants”** This statement is made by Amir Khosrow.

<u>TERM</u>	<u>MEANING</u>
BARIDS	Intelligence agents
DIWAN-I-BANDAGAN	Separate department of slaves set up by Firoz Tughlaq
IQTAS	Provinces
WAKIL-I-DAR	Official concerned with the management of the royal household.
KHUT	Small landlords in village
RAHAT	Simple water lifting device used for lifting water from deeper level for irrigation

APSC PYQ

- 1) "Every pearl in the Royal Crown is but the crystallized drops of blood fallen from the tearful eyes of the poor peasants..." Who made this statement? (2016)
- (a) Ibn Batuta
 - (b) Al-Beruni
 - (c) **Amir Khusru**
 - (d) Badauni
- 2) Rajatarangini written by Kalhana is a story of the King of (2014)
- (a) Nepal
 - (b) Kamrup
 - (c) **Kashmir**
 - (d) Orissa
- 3) Which ruler was a slave in his early life? (2006)
- a) Shah Jahan
 - b) **Qutb-ud-din**
 - c) Sher Shah
 - d) Bahadur Shah
- 4) The first Turkish conqueror to cross Vindhya ranges was (2006)
- a) Iltutmish
 - b) Balban
 - c) **Alauddin Khilji**
 - d) Firoz Shah Tughlaq
- 5) Which invader belonging to Samarkand invaded India in 1398-99? (2006)
- a) Chengiz Khan
 - b) **Taimur**
 - c) Muhammad Ghori
 - d) Mahmud Ghazni
- 6) Who was termed as 'Parrot of Hindustan'? (2006)
- a) Mira Bai
 - b) Kalidas
 - c) **Amir Khusru**
 - d) Kabir
- 7) Raziya Sultana was the ruler of (2006)
- a) **Slave dynasty**
 - b) Khilji dynasty
 - c) Tughlaq dynasty
 - d) Sur dynasty
- 8) A group of forty slaves called "Turk Forty" was organised by (2006)
- a) Qutb-ud-din-Aibak
 - b) **Iltutmish**
 - c) Alauddin Khilji
 - d) Balban
- 9) The Zizia tax was levied of Hindus at first by (2006)
- a) Jalaluddin
 - b) **Iltutmish**
 - c) Balban
 - d) Alauddin

10) Name the first Muslim ruler who introduced pure Arabic coin, called 'Tanka' (2006)

- a) Alauddin Khilji
- b) Akbar
- c) Muhammad bin Tughlaq
- d) Iltutmish**

11) The capital was shifted from Delhi to Daulatabad during the reign of (2006)

- a) Iltutmish
- b) Krishnadevaraya
- c) Muhammad bin Tughlaq**
- d) Alauddin Khilji

12) Malik Kafur was the general of (2006)

- a) Qutb-ud-din
- b) Alauddin**
- c) Ibrahim Lodi
- d) Akbar

CHAPTER 5- SUFISM AND BHAKTI MOVEMENT

SUFISM

- Sufism was a **liberal reform movement within Islam**. It had its **origin in Persia** and spread into India in the **eleventh century**.
- The **first Sufi saint Shaikh Ismail of Lahore** started preaching his ideas.
- Sufism stressed the elements of **love and devotion** as effective means of the realisation of God.
- In Sufism, **self-discipline was considered an essential condition to gain knowledge of God** by sense of perception.
- According to them one must have the **guidance of a pir or guru**, without which spiritual development is **impossible**.

<u>BA-SHARA</u>	<u>BE-SHARA</u>
Orders that followed the Islamic law (sharia) and its directives such as namaz	Not bound by the sharia.
Chishti, suhrawardi, firdawsi, qadiri and naqshbandi silsilahs	Qalandars

RELATED TERMS

- **Silsilah**- Sufis are organized in different orders or Silsilahs. Silsilah means chain that signifies continuous link between master and disciple. The link between the teacher or pir and his disciples or murids was a vital part of the Sufi system. Every pir nominated a successor or Wali to carry on his work.
- **Khanqah or hospice**-A building designed specifically for gatherings of a Sufi brotherhood.
- **Pir** – title for a Sufi spiritual guide
- **Murid** – A person who is committed to Sufi spiritual guide
- **Wali** -guardian, custodian, protector, or helper-means a Muslim saint or holy person.

CHISHTI SILSILAH & SUFI SAINTS

KHWAJA MUINUDDIN CHISHTI (1143-1234)

- The Chishti order was established in India by Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti.
- No authentic record of his activities is available; he did not write any book, but his fame rose, it seems, along with that of his successors
- Disciple - Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- Resting place-Ajmer Sharif Dargah

BHAKTIYAR KAKI (1173-1235)

- He was born in Kyrgyzstan
- Moved to the City of Delhi during the reign of Iltutmish
- Played a great role in establishing the order in and around Delhi.
- Iltutmish was one of his disciples.
- Dargah of Qutbuddin Bakhtiyar kaki is located in Mehrauli, Delhi.

FARID-UD-DIN GANJ-I-SHAKAR (C.1175 – 1265 CE)

- Disciple of Qutub-ud-Din Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- Known by Bābā Farīd or Shaikh Farīd
- Born in kothewal village in Multan, Punjab
- Farid-ud-Din confined his activities to Hansi and Ajodhan (in modern Haryana and the Punjab(Pakistan) respectively).
- He was deeply respected in Delhi, so much so that streams of people would throng around him whenever he visited Delhi.
- His outlook was so broad and humane that some of his verses are later found quoted in the Adi-Granth of the Sikhs.
- The shrine of Baba Farid is located in the city of Pakpattan. (Pakistan)
- Disciple -Hazrat Nizamuddin Auliya

HAZRAT NIZAMUDDIN AULIYA (1238-1325)

- Born in 1238 AD in Baduan, Uttar Pradesh
- Nizamuddin lived at various places in Delhi, before finally settling down in Ghiyaspur (U.P).

- Nizamuddin Auliya adopted yogic breathing exercises, so much so that the yogis called him a **sidh or 'perfect'**.
- **Nizamuddin Dargah – Delhi**
- Disciple -**Shaikh Nasiruddin Chirag Delhavi, Amir Khusro.**

NASIRUDDIN MAHMUD CHIRAG-E-DELHI (1274-1356)

- Last important Sufi of the Chishti order from Delhi.
- Born at Ayodhya, Uttar Pradesh.
- His tomb was built by **Firoz shah Tughluq (r. 1351 – 1388).**
- **Chiragh-E-Delhi Dargah** is situated in the village of Chiragh Delhi.
- **Disciple -Khwaja Bande Nawaz Gesu Daraz** who spread Chishti order to South India.
- After the death of Nasiruddin Chiragh-i-Delhi in the middle of the fourteenth century, the Chishtis did not have a commanding figure at Delhi.
- As a result, the Chishti saints dispersed, and extended their message to the eastern and southern parts of India.

CHISHTI SILSILAH & SUHARWARDI SILSILAH

- The **Suharwardi order entered India** at about the **same time as the Chishtis**, but its activities were confined largely to the **Punjab and Multan.**
- The most well-known saints of the order were **Shaikh Shihabuddin Suharwardi and Hamid-ud-Din Nagori.**
- Unlike the Chishtis, the **Suharwardi saints did not believe in leading a life of poverty.**
- They **accepted the service of the state**, and some of them held important posts in the ecclesiastical department.
- The Chishtis, on the other hand, preferred to keep aloof from state politics and shunned the company of rulers and nobles.

THE BHAKTI MOVEMENT & BHAKTI SAINTS

SHANKARACHARYA (788 AD –820AD)

- In the ninth century **Sankara** started a Hindu revivalist movement giving a new orientation to Hinduism.
- He was born in **Kaladi in Kerala.**
- Sankara's philosophy is called **advaitavada or the doctrine on non-dualism.**
- According to Sankara, **God and the created world are one: the differences were apparent but not real**, and arose due to ignorance, maya being a part of it.

RAMANUJA 11TH CE

- He was born at Sriperumbudur near modern Chennai, preached **Visishtadvaita.**
- According to him God is **Sagunabrahman.**
- The **creative process and all the objects in creation are real but not illusory** as was held by Sankaracharya.

- He also advocated **prabattimarga** or path of self-surrender to God.

MADHAVA 13TH CE

- 13thCE- **Kannada Region.**
- He propagated **Dvaita** or dualism of **Jivatma** and Paramatma.
- According to his philosophy, the world is not an illusion but a reality.

RAMANANDA (1400-1470)

- He was born at Allahabad. He was originally a **follower of Ramanuja.**
- Later he founded his own sect and preached his principles in Hindi at Banaras and Agra.
- His disciples were: a) Kabir, a Muslim weaver b) Raidasa, a cobbler c) Sena, a barber d) Sadhana, a butcher e) Dhanna, a Jat farmer f) Naraharai, a goldsmith and g) Pipa, a Rajput prince.

KABIR -15th CE

- He was born near Banaras to a brahmin widow.
- He was brought up by a Muslim couple who were weavers by profession.
- He was **Disciple of Ramananda.**
- He **denounced idolatry, pilgrimages, bathing in holy rivers or taking part in formal worship**, including namaz.
- He emphasised the essential oneness of all religions by describing **Hindus and Muslims ‘as pots of the same clay’.**
- To him **Rama and Allah, temple and mosque were the same.**
- **According to Kabir, it is not necessary to abandon the life of a householder for the sake of a saintly life.**
- He is regarded as the **greatest of the mystic saints and his followers are called Kabirpanthis.**
- **Kabir died at Maghar near Gorakhpur (U.P) in 1518.**
- **Writings -Bijak, Sakhi Granth, Kabir Granthawali and Anurag Sagar.**

GURUNANAK (1469-1539)

- **Guru Nanak, founder of the Sikh religion and a disciple of Kabir.**
- He was born in Talwandi near Lahore.
- He **denounced caste distinctions and rituals like bathing in holy rivers.**
- His followers were known as **Sikhs.**

CHAITANYA MAHAPRABHU -15TH CE

- He was another well-known saint and reformer of **Bengal who popularised the Krishna cult.**
- He believed that **through love and devotion, song and dance, a devotee can feel the presence of God.**
- Chaitanya is said to have travelled all over India, including **Vrindavan, where he revived the Krishna cult.**
- **He exerted an extraordinary influence, particularly in the eastern parts of India, and attracted a wide following, including some Muslims and people from the low castes.**

VALLABHACHARYA (1479-1531)

- Follower of Ramanuja- Birth (Chhattisgarh)
- Preacher of the krishna cult of **Vaishnavism**
- His school is known as **Rudrasampradaya or PushtiMarg.**
- **He preached Suddhavvatia or pure non-duality or pure monism.**
- **God and soul are not distinct, but one. God can be realized through Bhakti.**
- **Pushtimarga** – Path of Grace of God.

SURDAS (1478-1581 C.E.)

- **Born in village Sihi of Faridabad district in Haryana.**
- He was **disciple of Vallabhacharya.**
- **Popularized Krishna cult in North India.**
- Patron – **Mughal Emperor Akbar**
- **Author of the sur sagar, sur sarawali etc.**

TULSIDAS (1543-1623)

- He was **worshipper of Rama.**
- He used a **dialect of Hindi spoken in the eastern parts of Uttar Pradesh.**
- Famous work- **Ramcharitmanas, the Hindi version of Ramayana.**

MIRABHAI (1498-1547)

- Born in **Rajasthan.**
- He was great **devotee of Krishna**
- She became popular in **Rajasthan for her bhajans (Devotional Song).**

DADU DAYAL (1544-1603)

- He was born in **Gujarat.**
- Lived mostly in **Rajasthan.**
- He advocated for **Non-sectarian (Nipakji) path.**
- He **refused to identify himself with either the Hindus or the Muslims.**
- He founded a sect known as **Dadupanth.**
- **Devotion to god should not be restricted to particular religion alone.**
- **Famous work was dadu anubhav vani.**

NIMBARKA -13TH CE

- Bhakti Saint from **Andhra Pradesh.**
- Worshipped the deity **Krishna and his consort, Radha.**
- **He preached the philosophy of Dvaitadvaita - world and soul are different from God (Brahman).**
- They could survive with the support of God only. They are separate but dependent.

APSC PYQ

1) Who once said - "Call him Ram, Rahim, Allah, Khuda, Hari, Govinda, but He is one"?

(2006)

(a) Mahatma Gandhi

(b) Kabir

(c) Akbar

(d) Dr Sarvapalli

CHAPTER 6- VIJAYANAGAR EMPIRE

SOURCES

- **Indigenous Literature** - Krishnadevaraya's Amukthamalyada, Gangadevi's Maduravijayam (Kumarakampana's expedition to Madurai was described in the Maduravijayam.) and Allasani Peddanna's (distinguished in Telugu literature) Manucharitam .
- **Inscriptions** - The copper plate inscriptions such as the **Srirangam** copper plates of Devaraya II **provide the genealogy and achievements of Vijayanagar rulers.** The

VIJAYNAGAR EMPIRE- DYNASTIES (A.D. 1336 to 1646)

SANGAMA DYNASTY

- **Founding of the Vijayanagar Kingdom-**
 - Vijayanagar Kingdom and the city was founded by **Harihar-I and Bukka-I** (sons of **Sangama**) who were feudatories of **Kakatiyas**.
 - Later they proclaimed their independence and founded a new city on the **south bank of the Tungabhadra river**. It was called **Vijayanagar** meaning city of victory.
- **Kumarakampana (Son of King Bukka I) –**
 - Kumara Kampana led the successful invasion of the Madurai Sultanate.

SALUVA DYNASTY

- Founded by **Saluva Narsimha**. It reigned only for a brief period (1486-1509).

TULVA DYNASTY

- Founded by **Vira Narsimha**

KRISHNADEVA RAYA (1509 – 1530)

- The greatest of the Vijayanagar rulers, Krishna Deva Raya belonged to the Tuluva dynasty.
- Albuquerque sent his ambassadors to Krishna Deva Raya.
- He was a great patron of literature and art and he was known as Andhra Bhoja.
- Eight eminent scholars known as Ashtadiggajas were at his royal court.
- Allasani Peddanna was the greatest and he was called Andhrakavita Pitamaha. His important works include Manucharitam and Harikathasaram.
- Pingali Suranna and Tenali Ramakrishna were other important scholars.
- Krishna Deva Raya himself authored a Telugu work, Amukthamalyadha and Sanskrit works, Jambavati Kalyanam and Ushaparinayam.

LATER RULERS OF TULVA DYNASTY

- After Krishna Deva Raya's death, Achutadeva and Venkata succeeded the throne.
- **Battle of Talaikotta (Raksasa Thangadi-1565)**- During the reign of Rama Raya, the combined forces of Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, Golkonda and Bidar defeated him at the Battle of Talaikotta in 1565.
- This battle is also known as Raksasa Thangadi.
- Rama Raya was imprisoned and executed.
- The city of Vijayanagar was destroyed.
- This battle was generally considered to mark the end of the Vijayanagar Empire.
- However, the Vijayanagar kingdom existed under the Aravidu dynasty for about another century.

ARAVIDU DYNASTY

- Thirumala, Sri Ranga and Venkata II were the important rulers of this dynasty.
- The last ruler of Vijayanagar kingdom was Sri Ranga III.

ADMINISTRATION

- **DIVISION OF EMPIRE** -The Empire was divided into different administrative units called Mandalams, Nadus, sthalas and finally into gramas. The governor of Mandalam was called Mandaleswara or Nayak. Vijayanagar rulers gave full powers to the local authorities in the administration.
- **REVENUE & EXPENDITURE** -Besides land revenue, tributes and gifts from vassals and feudal chiefs, customs collected at the ports, taxes on various professions were other sources of income to the government. Land revenue varied according to the type of crops, soil, method of irrigation. The expenditure of the government includes personal expenses of king and the charities given by him and military expenditure.
- **ARMY** - The Vijayanagar army was well-organized and efficient. It consisted of the cavalry, infantry, artillery and elephants. High-breed horses were procured from foreign traders. The

top-grade officers of the army were known as **Nayaks or Poligars**. They were granted land in lieu of their services. These lands were called **amaram**. Soldiers were **usually paid in cash**.

- **AMARANAYAKA SYSTEM** - The **amara-nayakas** were military commanders **who** were given territories to govern by the raya. They collected taxes and other dues from peasants, **crafts persons** and traders in the area. They retained a part of the revenue for personal use and for maintaining a stipulated contingent of horses and elephants. Many features of this **system** were derived from the **iqta system of the Delhi Sultanate**.

SOCIAL LIFE

- **CASTE SYSTEM** - Allasani Peddanna in his **Manucharitam** refers the existence of four castes – **Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas and Sudras** - in the Vijayanagar society.
- **RELIGION** - The Sangama rulers were chiefly **Saivaites** and **Virupaksha** was their family deity.

CULTURAL CONTRIBUTIONS

- The rulers of the Vijayanagara Empire (1335-1565 AD) were great patrons of art and architecture with capital at **Hampi (Karnataka)**.
- They combined the features of **Chola, Hoysalas, Pandyas, Chalukyas** architectural styles.
- Under them, the architectural style began getting influenced by the **Indo Islamic** style of **Bijapur**.
- The walls of the temples were highly decorated with carvings and geometrical patterns.
- **Goupurams**, which were previously present on the front side, were now built on all the sides.
- The chief characteristics of the **Vijayanagara architecture** were the construction of tall **Raya Gopurams or gateways** and the **Kalyanamandapam** with carved pillars in the temple premises.
- More than one mandapas were built in each temple. The central mandap came to be known as **kalyana mandapa**.
- The horse was the most common animal **found in** these pillars or mythical creature **Yali**.
- **Vittalaswamy and Hazara Ramaswamy temples** were the best examples of this style.

BAHMANI KINGDOM

ALAUDDIN HASAN BAHMAN SHAH (1347-58)

- He also known as **Hasan Gangu** and whose original name was **Ismail Mukh**
- Founded the Bahmani kingdom with its capital at **Gulbarga (First capital)**.
- There were a **total of fourteen Bahmani Sultans**.

TAJ-UD-DIN FIROZ SHAH (1397-1422)

- **The Greatest among them all**. He was determined to make Deccan the cultural centre of India.
- **Inducted large number of Hindus in the administration on large scale**.
- **He encouraged pursuit of astronomy and built an observatory near Daulatabad**.
- Paid much attention to the **ports of his Kingdom Chaul and Dabhol** which attracted trade ships from Persian Gulf and Red Sea.

AHMAD SHAH WALI (1422-35)

- Transferred the capital from **Gulbarga to Bidar**

MAHMUD GAWAN

- He was the **Prime Minister or the Peshwa of Muhammad Shall III** between 1463-81.
- The Bahmani kingdom saw a resurgence under his guidance.
- His military conquests included **Konkan, Goa and the Krishna-Godavari delta**.
- He divided the kingdom into **eight Tarafs**, each governed by a **Tarafdar**.
- In every province, **Khalisa (tract of land)** was set apart for the expenses of the Sultan.
- He made **endowments to build a college at Bidar** which was built in the **Persian style of architecture**.
- **Allowances were reduced to the nobles who shirked their responsibility**. This was **disliked by the nobles**.
- The **discontented nobles**, organised a conspiracy against Gawan (an Afaqi) and had him executed in 1482.
- **After Gawan's execution, the Bahmani kingdom began to decline and disintegrate**.
- They were **Ahmadnagar, Bijapur, Berar, Golkonda and Bidar** and known as **Deccan Sultanate**

BREAKUP OF THE BAHMANI KINGDOM

NIZAM SHAHIS OF AHMEDNAGAR (1490-1633)

- Founder of **city of Ahmednagar** and the Kingdom was founded by **Ahmad Nizam Shah**.
- Later conquered and annexed by **Shah Jahan (1633)**.

ADIL SHAHIS OF BIJAPUR (1490-1686)

- Founded by **Yusuf Adil Shah**.
- Greatest ruler was **Ibrahim Adil Shah**.
- **Introduced Dakhini in place of Persian** as court language.
- Bijapur was later conquered and annexed by **Aurangzeb (1687)**

GOL GUMBUZ

- **Gol Gumbaz** was built by **Muhammad Adil Shah** located at **Bijapur, Karnataka**.
- **Tomb of Mohammed Adil Shah (ruled 1627–1657)**.
- **Second Largest Dome**, unsupported by pillars, in the world, after St. Peter's in the Vatican City of Rome.
- The central chamber, **every sound is echoed seven times. (Whispering Gallery)**.
- **Indo-Islamic architecture**

IMAD SHAHIS OF BERAR (1490-1574)

- Founded by **Fatullah Khan Imad-ul-Mulk** with **Daulatabad** as capital.
- Later it was conquered and **annexed by one of the Nizam Shahi rulers of Ahmadnagar**.

QUTUB SHAHIS OF GOLCONDA (1518-1687)

- Founded by **Quli Qutub Shah (1518-43)** who built the famous **Golconda fort** and made it his capital.
- Most important port of **Qutub Shahi Kingdom** was **Masulipatnam**.
- Muhammad Quli Qutub Shah founded city of Hyderabad & Charminar.
- The kingdom was later annexed **by Aurangzeb (1687)**.
- Charminar was built in 1591 by Muhammad Qulī Qutb Shah.
- The Charminar is situated on the east bank of Musi River.
- Charminar was built at the centre of the city, to commemorate the eradication of plague.

BARID SHAHIS OF BIDAR (1528-1619)

- Founded by **Ali Barid**.
- It was later annexed **by the Adil Shahis of Bijapur**

APSC PYQ

1) Who built the Charminar of Hyderabad and **on what** occasion? (2014)

- (a) Nawab of Hyderabad built it to celebrate freedom from British Rule(1947)
- (b) Nawab Safdar Jang built it to celebrate relief from a major famine(1739)
- (c) **Sultan Mohammad Quli Qutub Shah constructed it to commemorate the eradication of Plague(1591)**
- (d) None of the above

2) The Vijayanagar State came into existence during the reign of (2006)

- (a) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
- (b) **Muhammad bin Tughlaq**
- (c) Firuz Shah Tughlaq
- (d) Khizr Khan

3) The greatest ruler of the Vijayanagar Empire was (2006)

- (a) Harihara II
- (b) **Krishnadevaraya**
- (c) Mallikarjuna
- (d) Firoz Shah

4) The founder of the Bahmani kingdom was (2006)

- (a) Sher Shah
- (b) Qutb-ud-din-Aibak
- (c) Alauddin
- (d) **Hasan Ganga**

CHAPTER 7- THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

- Muslim dynasty of Turkic-Mongol origin that ruled most of **Northern India from the early 16th to the mid-18th century.**
- From their mother's side, they were **descendants of Genghis Khan (died 1227), ruler of the Mongol tribes, China and Central Asia.**
- From their father's side, they were the **successors of Timur (died 1405).**

BABUR (1526-1530)

FIRST BATTLE OF PANIPAT – (20 APRIL 1526)

- **The First Battle of Panipat was fought between the invading forces of Babur and the Lodi Empire, which took place on 21 April 1526 in North India.**
- It marked the **beginning of the Mughal Empire.** This was one of the **earliest battles involving gunpowder firearms and field artillery.**
- Gunpowder was known in India but its use for artillery (large, heavy guns that are moved on wheels;) became common in north India with the advent of Babur.
- Babur used modern tactics of warfare and introduced the deadly combination of **Tulghuma and Araba.**
- **Tulghuma meant the division of the army into the left, right and center units, while Araba referred to the carts used to launch cannon fire.**

BATTLE OF KHANWA -1527

- **Rana Sangha of Mewar (Rajasthan) was a great Rajput warrior.**
- He marched against Babur and in the **Battle of Khanua (near Agra) held in 1527 Babur won a decisive victory over him.**
- The battle of Khanwa secured Babur's position in the Delhi-Agra region. Babur assumed the **title Ghazi (War Champion).**
- In 1528, Babur captured **Chanderi in Malwa** from another Rajput ruler **Medini Rai.**

BATTLE OF GHAGHRA -1529

- In the next year, **Babur defeated the Afghans in the Battle of Ghaghra in Bihar.**
- It was fought between Babur on one side and **Mahmud Lodi brother of Ibrahim Lodi & Nusrat Shah (ruler of Bengal) on the other side .**
- By these victories, **Babur consolidated his power in India.**
- **Babur died at Agra in 1530 at the age of forty-seven**

HUMAYUN (1530-40 & 1555-56)

- **Humayun was the eldest son of Babur.**
- In the **Battle of Chausa, held in 1539, Sher Khan destroyed the Mughal army and Humayun escaped from there.**
- Humayun was forced to **fight with Sher Khan alone in the Battle of Bilgram in 1540.** This battle was also known as **Battle of Kanauj.**
- **Humayun was thoroughly defeated by Sher Khan.**

- After losing his kingdom, Humayun became an exile for the next fifteen years.

SUR INTERREGNUM

SHER SHAH SUR (1540-1545)

- The **founder of the Sur dynasty** was Sher Shah, whose original name was Farid.
- Farid served under the **Afghan ruler of Bihar**, who gave him the title **Sher Khan** for his bravery.

SHER SHAH'S ADMINISTRATION

FOUR IMPORTANT MINISTRIES

- **Diwan –i- Wizarat** – also called as Wazir - in charge of Revenue and Finance.
- **Diwan-i-Ariz** – in charge of Army.
- **Diwan-i-Rasalat**- Foreign Minister.
- **Diwan-i-Insha**- Minister for Communications.

ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISION

- Sher Shah's empire was divided into **forty seven sarkars** .
- **Chief Shiqdar (law and order) and Chief Munsif (judge- collection of land revenue)** were the **two officers in charge of the administration in each sarkar**.
- Each **sarkar** was divided into several **parganas (Number of Villages)**.
- **Shiqdar (military officer)**, **Amin(land revenue)**, **Fotedar (treasurer)** **Karkuns (accountants)** were in charge of the administration of each **pargana**.
- A number of sarkars were sometimes grouped into provinces, but we do not know how many of such provinces existed and the pattern of provincial administration.
- There were also many administrative units called **iqtas**.
- **Military-Sher Shah borrowed many ideas like the branding of horses from Alauddin Khalji**

LAND REVENUE

- The land revenue administration was **well organized** under Sher Shah.
- **Land survey was carefully done**.
- All cultivable lands were classified into three classes – **good, middle and bad**.
- The **state's share was one third of the average produce** and it was paid in cash or crop.
- The peasants were **given the option of paying in cash or kind**, though the state preferred cash.
- The areas sown, the type of crops cultivated, and the amount each peasant had to **pay was written down on a paper called patta** and each peasant was informed of it.
- **No one was allowed to charge from the peasants anything extra**.

TRANSPORT

- Sher Shah had also **improved the communications by laying four important highways**.
- They were: 1. Sonargaon to Sind 2. Agra to Burhampur 3. Jodhpur to Chittor and 4. **Lahore to Multan**.
- **Rest houses (Sarais)were built on the highways for the convenience of the travelers**.
- The sarais were also used as **stages for the news service or dak-chowki**.

- He also established an efficient postal system, with mail being carried by relays of horse riders.

ESTIMATE OF SHER SHAH

- **Malik Muhammad Jayasi** wrote the famous Hindi work **Padmavat** during his reign

HUMAYUN (1555-1556)

- Humayun died in 1556 due to his fall from the staircase of his library.

AKBAR -SECOND BATTLE OF PANIPAT- 1556

- Akbar was at the age of thirteen at the time of his coronation at Kalanaur
- When he came in to power his position was dangerous because Delhi was seized by the Afghans.
- Hemu -commander-in-chief of Muhammad Adil Shah, the last sur ruler, was still controlling Uttar Pradesh and Bihar was in charge of it.
- The battle between the Mughals and the Afghan forces led by Hemu, took place once again at Panipat (5 November 1556)
- Akbar defeated Hemu.

EXPANSION OF EMPIRE

- **Conquest of Malwa by defeating the Baz Bahadur (1561)**
- **Kingdom of Garh-katanga included the Narmada Valley and the northern portions of present Madhya Pradesh.**
- He conquered Gujarat -1572-73 and built the **Buland Darawaza at Fatehpur Sikri in commemoration of this victory.**
- **He conquered Bihar and Bengal (1574-76).**

BATTLE OF HALDIGHATI-1576

- In the **Battle of Haldighati, Rana Pratap Singh was severely defeated by the Mughal army led by Man Singh in 1576.**
- Following the defeat of Mewar, most of the leading Rajput rulers had accepted Akbar's suzerainty.

RELIGIOUS POLICY

- **Abolished the Pilgrim tax**
- **1562-abolished jiziya.**
- **He allowed his Hindu wives to worship their own gods.**
- In 1575, he ordered for the **construction of Ibadat Khana (House of worship)** at his new capital Fatepur Sikri.
- Akbar invited learned scholars from all religions like **Hinduism, Jainism, Christianity and Zoroastrianism.**
- In 1579, he issued the "Infallibility Decree" by which he asserted his religious powers.
- In 1582, he promulgated a **new religion called Din Ilahi or Divine Faith.** It believes in one God. It contained **good points of all religions.** Its basis was rational. It **upholds no dogma.** It was aimed at **bridging the gulf that separated different religions.**

- Akbar tried to emphasise the concept of sulh-i-kul or peace and harmony among religions in other ways as well

LAND REVENUE ADMINISTRATION

- Akbar made some experiments in the land revenue administration with the help of Raja Todar Mal.
- The land revenue system of Akbar was called **Zabti or Bandobast** system.
- It was further improved by **Raja Todar Mal**. It was known as **Dahsala System** which was completed in 1580.
- By this system, **Todar Mal** introduced a **uniform system of land measurement**.
- The revenue was **fixed on the average yield of land assessed on the basis of past ten years**.
- The land was also divided into four categories – **Polaj (cultivated every year)**, **Parauti (once in two years)**, **Chachar (once in three or four years)** and **Banjar (once in five or more years)**.
- Payment of revenue was made **generally in cash**.

MANSABDARI SYSTEM

- Under this system every officer was assigned a rank (mansab).
- The **Lowest rank was 10 and the highest was 5000 for the nobles**.
- **Princes of royal blood received even higher ranks**.
- **The ranks were divided into two – zat and sawar**.
- **Zat- It fixed the personal status of a person, and also the salary due to him**.
- **Sawar rank indicated the number of cavalymen (sawars) of a person who was required to maintain. Every sawar had to maintain at least two horses**.
- The mansab rank was not hereditary.
- **The salary due to the soldiers was added to the salary of the mansabdar, who was paid by assigning to him a jagir. Sometimes, the mansabdars were paid in cash.**

JAGIRDARI SYSTEM

- The **system of assignment of revenue of a particular territory to the nobles for their services to the state continued under the Mughals also**.
- Under the Mughals, the areas assigned were generally **called Jagir and its holders Jagirdars**.
- **A jagir did not confer any hereditarily rights on the holder or disturb any of the existing rights in the area**.
- It only meant that the land revenue **due to the state was to be paid to the jagirdar**.
- Mansabdar had the **right to collect the revenue but no right to maintain law and order**.
- **It was a pure fiscal arrangement**.

JAHANGIR (1605-1627)

- **Prince Salim, the eldest son of Akbar, succeeded to the throne without any difficulty, his younger brothers having died during the life-time of Akbar due to excessive drinking**.
- Prince Salim succeeded with the **title Jahangir (Conqueror of World) in 1605**.
- His son Khusrau revolted but was **defeated and imprisoned**.

EXECUTION OF GURU ARJUN DEV

- Guru Arjun Dev was the **fifth Sikh guru, credited with compiling the Adi Granth.**
- In the year **1606, the fifth Sikh guru, Guru Arjan Dev**, was captured by **Mughal Emperor Jahangir** and imprisoned in **Lahore Fort.**

RESISTANCE OF MALIK AMBAR

- The Malik Ambar rose in to power in Ahamadaagar and adopted guerilla mode of warfare by organizing Maratha troops.
- With the help of the **Marathas, Ambar made it difficult for the Mughals to consolidate their position in Berar, Ahmadnagar and Balaghat.**
- His attempts to complete the annexation of **Ahmednagar** did not succeed due to the stiff resistance of **Malik Ambar.**
- In 1627, Jahangir passed away at **Bhimbar in Kashmir** and was buried in the famous **Dilkusha Garden at Lahore.**
- After Jahangir's death in 1627, **Shah Jahan reached Agra with the support of the nobles and the army.**

SHAHJAHAN VS NURJAHAN

- Nur Jahan, born Mehr-un-Nissa was the chief wife and empress consort of the Mughal emperor Jahangir.
- It was believed by some historians that **Nur Jahan formed a group of "junta" and this led to two factions in the Mughal court.**
- This drove **Shah Jahan into rebellion against his father in 1622**, since he felt that **Jahangir was completely under Nur Jahan's influence.**

SHAHJAHAN (1627-1658)

DECCAN POLICY

- His **Deccan policy was more successful.**
- He **defeated the forces of Ahmadnagar and annexed it.**
- Both **Bijapur and Golkonda signed a treaty with the emperor.**
- **Shah Jahan carved four Mughal provinces in the Deccan – Khandesh , Berar, Telangana and Daulatabad.**
- They were **put under the control of his son Aurangazeb**

WAR OF SUCCESSION

1658-BATTLE OF DHARMAT

- It was fought on **banks of Narmada river , Madhya Pradesh.**
- **On hearing of the military preparations of his sons and their decision to march on the capital, Shah Jahan had sent an army to sent to Malwa under Raja Jaswant Singh, the ruler of jodhpur.**

- Aurangzeb won over Jaswant. The victory of Aurangzeb at Dharmat (15 April 1658) emboldened his supporters and raised his prestige, while it dispirited Dara and his supporters.

1658-BATTLE OF SAMUGARH

- The battle was fought between the princes **Aurangzeb and Murād Bakhsh**, third and fourth sons of the emperor, on the one side, and **the eldest son and heir apparent, Dārā Shikōh, on the other.**
- After losing the battle at Samugarh, **Dara had fled to Lahore.**

END OF WAR OF SUCCESSION

- The **battle of Deorai near Ajmer (March 1659)** was the last major battle Dara fought against Aurangzeb.
- Aurangzeb emerged victorious in this struggle.
- Shah Jahan lived for eight long years lovingly nursed by his daughter Jahanara.
- He died in **1666 and buried beside his wife's grave in the Taj Mahal.**

PANDIT JAGANNATH (17TH CE)

- Pandit Jagannath was a famous poet and literary critic in the courts of the Mughal emperors **Jehangir and Shah Jahan.**
- He is renowned for his **Rasagagadhara, a work on poetic theory.**
- He was granted the title of **Paanditaraja by the Mughal emperor Shah Jahan.**

DARA SHIKOH (1615-1659)

- **Dara Shikoh was born in Ajmer.**
- Dara wrote his first book, **Safinat-ul-Awliya**, a concise document detailing the lives of the Prophet and his family.
- Dara Shikoh was initiated into the **Kadiri order** of Sufis by his pir (spiritual guide), Mulla Shah.
- He had translated **Gita into persian.** Dara declared the vedas to be **'heavenly books in point of time' and 'in conformity with the holy quran'.**
- He Believed in **'the oneness of God'.**

AURANGAZEB (1658 TO 1707)

- He assumed the title **Alamgir, World Conqueror.**
- **Jat & Satnami (1672) rebellion happened during his reign.**

DECCAN POLICY -POLITICAL BLUNDER (1658-1687)

- During his initial reign he concentrated on **northwest frontier.**
- At that time, the **Maratha ruler, Sivaji carved out an independent Maratha kingdom in the territories of north and south Konkan.**
- To contain the **spread of the Marathas, Aurangzeb decided to invade Bijapur and Golkonda.**
- He defeated **Sikandar Shah of Bijapur and annexed his kingdom.(1686)**
- Then, he proceeded against **Golkonda and eliminated the Kutb Shahi dynasty. It was also annexed by him. (1687)**
- In fact, the destruction of the Deccan kingdoms was a **political blunder on the part of Aurangzeb.**

- The barrier between the Mughals and the Marathas was removed and there ensued a direct confrontation between them.
- Also, his Deccan campaigns exhausted the Mughal treasury

EXECUTION OF GURU TEGH BAHADUR

- In 1675, Guru Tegh Bahadur was brought to Delhi from his head-quarters with five of his followers.
- Various accusations were made against him, and he was asked to recant his faith which he refused. As a punishment, he was beheaded
- The execution of Guru Tegh Bahadur forced the Sikhs to go back to the Punjab hills.
- Guru Govind Singh founded the military brotherhood or The Khalsa in 1699.

RELIGIOUS POLICY OF AURANGAZEB

- He created a separate department to enforce moral codes under a high-powered officer called Muhtasib.
- He discontinued the practice of jarokhadarshan.
- Jharokha darshan was a daily practice of addressing the public audience at the balcony at the forts and palaces of medieval kings in India.
- He also discontinued the celebration of nowruz
- Jizyah was re-imposed in 1679.
- Aurangzeb did not hesitate in issuing secular decrees, called zawabit.
- A compendium of his decrees, and government rules and regulations had been collected in a work called Zawabit-i-Alamgiri.

INDIA UNDER THE MUGHALS ADMINISTRATION

<u>POST /TERM</u>	<u>FUNCTION/MEANING</u>
Mir Bakshi	Head of military department
Vakil or Regent	Representative of the king
Sadr-us-Sudur	Head of the ecclesiastical department
Khan-i-Saman	Head of the royal household and the royal 'karkhanas'
Chief qazi.	Judicial Department
Waqia-navis	News reporters
Wazir	Head of Revenue Department

Hundis	Financial Instrument used in trade Letter of credit payable after a period of time at a discount.
---------------	--

ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISION

- Empire was organized into different provinces or '**subhas**'.
- **Subedar**- governor of provinces.
- Division of a province into '**sarkars**' or **districts**.
- **Faujdar**- Chief officer of Sarkar-law and order
- **Amalguzar**- Chief officer of Sarkar- assessment and collection of the land revenue.
- Division of a 'sarkar' into '**parganas**'.

ZAMINDAR

- In addition to **owning the lands they cultivated, a considerable section of the zamindars** had the hereditary **right of collecting land revenue from a number of villages**. This was called his **talluqa or his zamindari**.
- For collecting the land revenue, the zamindars received **a share of the land revenue** which could go up to **25 per cent in some areas**.
- The **zamindar was not the 'owner' of all the lands comprising his zamindari**.
- The peasants who actually cultivated the **land could not be dispossessed as long as they paid the land revenue**.

JIZYAH

- Tax paid by non-Muslim populations to their Muslim rulers.
- **Qutb-ud-din Aibak imposed jizya on non-Muslims for the first time**.
- Jizya was abolished by the Mughal ruler **Akbar in 16th century but was re-introduced by Aurangzeb in the 17th century**.
- During the reign of Firoz Tughlaq -Jizyah became a separate tax- Earlier it was collected as part of Land Revenue
- Firuz refused to exempt the Brahmans from the payment of jizyah since this was not provided for in the sharia.
- Only women, children, the disabled and the indigent who had no means of livelihood were exempt from it.

TERMS

- The **landless peasants and labourers** often belonged to the class of people called '**untouchables**' or **kamin**.
- The peasants who owned the **land they tilled were called Khudkasht**.

- **Muzarian**-category of cultivators less privileged than the khwud kashta and were occasionally dependent on the village money lender, zamindar and headman for bullocks, ploughs and seeds, etc.

ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL LIFE

- Agriculture was prosperous. A large variety of crops such as **wheat, rice, gram, barley, pulses** were cultivated.
- Commercial crops such as cotton, indigo, sugarcane and oil-seeds were also cultivated.
- During the **seventeenth century two new crops, namely, tobacco and maize** were added. Seth, bohra traders specialized in long distance trade while local traders were called banik.
- Another class of traders was known as banjaras, who specialized in carrying bulk goods.
- The banjaras used to move to long distances with their goods on the back of oxen.

LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

- **Ain-i-Akbari and Akabar Nama** authored by **Abul Fazl**.
- Jahangir's autobiography, **Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri** was famous for its style.
- Shah Jahan also patronized many writers and historians like **Abdul Hamid Lahori**, author of **Padshah Nama** and **Inayat Khan** who wrote **Shah Jahan Nama**.

MUGHAL MINIATURE PAINTING

<u>RULER</u>	<u>IMPORTANT PAINTERS/ WORK</u>	<u>FEATURES</u>
BABUR	Bihzad (Persian Artist)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No Major Contribution • Illustration of Mughal Family Tree
HUMAYUN	Abdus Samad & Mir Sayyid Ali	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Persian influence in Mughal Paintings
AKBAR	<u>Famous Painters-</u> Daswanth, Basawan and Kesu. <u>Manuscripts-</u> Tutinama (Mir Sayyid Ali & Abdu Samad), Hamzanama, Anvar-i-Suhaili and Gulistan of Said.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entire department for painting. • Tasvir Khana (artistic studio). • Indian Influence. • 3D figures. • Calligraphy • Popular art to court art.

JAHANGIR	<p>Famous Artist- Ustad Mansoor.</p> <p>Animal Fable - Ayar-i-Danish (Touchstone of Knowledge)</p> <p>Anwar-i-sunavli.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Painting reached at its zenith. • Naturalistic- flora& fauna- animal, birds, trees and flowers. • Naturalism to portrait (individual) painting. • Decorated Margins around the paintings that were sometimes as elaborate as the paintings themselves. • He had his own private workshop although no major work by him survives. • Naturalistic paintings of the Zebra, the turkey and the cock. • Siyah Qalam technique became fashionable. • This is a technique of fine brush-drawing with black ink that developed in Iran during the 15th century, hence the name – Siyah = Black, Qalam = Brush or Pen.
SHAH JAHAN		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Artificial element. • European Influence. • Sketch using pencil. • Use of gold and silver. • Bright colours. • Eschewed the use of charcoal
AURANGZEB		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No major contribution. • Decline in Painting. • Painters migrated to provincial courts.

MUGHAL ARCHITECTURE

BABUR

- Babur undertook the construction of mosques in Panipat and Rohilkhand, both constructed in 1526 AD.
- But no major developments

HUMAYUN

- Humayun's reign was marked with **constant power struggle against Sher Shah Suri**.
- So, **he couldn't focus much on art and architecture**.
- He led the foundation of a **city named Dinpanah, but couldn't finish it**.

SHER SHAH

- He built the **Qila-e Quhunah (Mosque of the Old Fort) mosque in Delhi**.
- He built the famous **Rohtas Fort** in Pakistan and the Sher Shah Suri Masjid in Patna in Afghan style to mark his reign.
- He also undertook the re-construction and extension of **an old Mauryan route** and renamed it as **Sadak-e- Azam (Great Road)** which was later called as **Grand Trunk Road**.
- **Sher Shah Suri's tomb was built at his birthplace Sasaram**. It was made up of **red sandstone** and is situated inside a lake.
- After Akbar ascended the throne of Delhi in 1556, **the golden period of Mughal art and architecture started**.

AKBAR -AGRA FORT

- It was **one of the first constructions** which started during the **reign of Akbar**.
- However, **most of the structures present inside the fort were done during the reign of Shah Jahan**.
- Some of the prominent buildings here are:
 - **Moti Masjid, by Shah Jahan**.
 - **Diwan-i-aam (Hall of Public Audience) by Shah Jahan**
 - **Diwan-i-khas (Hall of Private Audience) by Shah Jahan**.
 - **Jahangiri Mahal**
 - **Sheesh Mahal (Turkish Bath)**

AKBAR - FATEHPUR SIKRI

- **Buland Darwaza the imposing 40 metre red sandstone structure was built in 1576 AD**, to commemorate Akbar's victory over Gujarat. It is the highest gateway of the world.
- **Salim Chishti's tomb was built in 1581 AD**. It has beautiful Jaali work in white marble.
- **Panch Mahal is a five-storied structure** made of columns and is inspired by the concept of Persian badgir (**wind-catcher**).
- **Jodha Bai's Palace or Mariam-uz-Zamani's Palace (Mary of the Age)**
- **Ibadat Khana**: Akbar used to meet the leaders of different religions here to have discussion.
- **Pachisi Court in the courtyard where Akbar is said to have played chess**.
- **Hiran Minar was built in memory of Akbar's favourite elephant, named Hiran**.
- **Anup Talao - The Anup Talao is a magnificent, one-of-its kind water tank built in front of Akbar's private quarters**.

JAHANGIR

- Akbar's tomb in Sikandra.
- Shalimar Bagh in Kashmir.
- Moti Masjid at Lahore.

TOMB OF ITMAD-UD-DAULAH

- It was undertaken by **Noor Jahan (wife of Jahangir)**
- It was during this time that **white marble became the chief building material, replacing red sandstone.**
- The tomb of **Itmad-ud-daulah was the first Mughal work made completely of white marble.**
- Tomb of Jahangir was **constructed by his son Shah Jahan at Lahore.**

SHAHJAHAN -TAJ MAHAL

- It was constructed in the memory of his **wife Arjumand Banu Begum or Mumtaz Mahal.**
- **Ustad Isa was the architect of Taj Mahal.**
- The dome of **Taj Mahal has exactly same height and the length of base.**
- It was commissioned in **1632 by the Mughal emperor, Shah Jahan (reigned from 1628 to 1658).**
- The Taj Mahal was designated as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in **1983.**
- It is regarded by **many as the best example of Mughal architecture** and a symbol of India's rich history.
- Apart from **Taj Mahal, Shah Jahan constructed a number of other monuments, gardens and buildings such as:**
 - Red Fort in Delhi
 - Jama Masjid in Delhi
 - Shalimar Bagh in Lahore
 - City of Shahjahanabad
 - Peacock Throne -Finest examples of metal work during this period.

AURANGZEB

- During the reign of Aurangzeb, Mughal architecture declined.
- Although, Aurangzeb commissioned the construction of Bibi-ka-Maqbara in memory of his wife **Begum Rabia-ud-Daurani.**
- It is situated in Aurangabad and is described as a **poor imitation of Taj Mahal.**

APSC PYQ

1) Which of the following Mughal buildings is said to possess the unique feature of being exactly equal in length and breadth? (2016)

- (a) Agra Fort
- (b) Red Fort
- (c) Buland Darwaza
- (d) Taj Mahal**

2) Who among the following kings was credited with establishing the equivalent of a modern postal delivery system in India? (2015)

- (a) Humayun
- (b) Ashoka
- (c) Quli Qutub Shah
- (d) Sher Shah Suri**

3) The Red Fort was built by (2016)

- (a) Akbar
- (b) Jahangir
- (c) Shah Jahan**
- (d) Sher Shah

4) The Ain-i-Akbari was written by (2014)

- (a) Farishta
- (b) Ibn Batuta
- (c) Abul Fazl**
- (d) Birbal

5) What is the date of the Third Battle of Panipat? (2011)

- (a) AD 1551
- (b) AD 1661
- (c) AD 1761**
- (d) AD 1861

6) Who ascended the Mughal throne after the death of Babur? (2006)

- (a) Shah Jahan
- (b) Dara Shikoh
- (c) Humayun**
- (d) Bahadur Shah

7) To whose court did Abul Fazi belong? (2006)

- (a) Akbar**
- (b) Iltutmish
- (c) Babur
- (d) Rana Sangram Singh

8) Name the lady who influenced Jahangir in his administration (2006)

- (a) Raziya Sultana**

- (b) Mumtaz Mahal
- (c) Nurjahan**
- (d) Moti Begum

9) Who among the following belonged to the Sur dynasty? (2006)

- (a) Sher Shah**
- (b) Islam Shah
- (c) Bahadur Shah
- (d) Sikander Shah

10) Who wrote Ain-I-Akbari? (2006)

- (a) Abul Faizi**
- (b) Badauni
- (c) Munim Khan
- (d) Nizam-ud-din Ahmed

11) Taj Mahal was designed by (2006)

- a) Ustad Isa**
- b) Ustad Mansur
- c) Ustad Rahim
- d) Ustad Shamsheer

12) Ibrahim Lodi was defeated by Babur at the (2006)

- a) Battle of Chausa
- b) Battle of Thaneswar
- c) First Battle of Panipat**
- d) Battle of Haldighat

13) What was the age of Akbar at the time of his coronation at Kalanaur?

- (a) Thirteen**
- (b) Fifteen
- (c) Eighteen
- (d) Twenty

14) Carrying mail on horseback was introduced by

- (a) Akbar
- (b) Babur
- (c) Sher Shah**
- (d) Shivaji

15) The famous financial advisor of Akbar was (2006)

- (a) Abul Fazl
- (b) Todar Mal
- (c) Bairam Khan
- (d) Raja Birbal

16) Which Guru of the Sikhs was assassinated during the reign of Jahangir? (2006)

- (a) Guru Nanak**

- (b) **Guru Arjun**
(c) Guru Hargovind
(d) Guru Teg Bahadur
- 17) **The Moti Masjid was built by Shah Jahan at (2006)**
(a) Fatehpur Sikri
(b) Delhi
(c) Lahore
(d) **Agra**
- 18) **Pandit Raj Jagannath was the poet Laureate at the court of (2006)**
(a) Humayun
(b) Akbar
(c) **Shah Jahan**
(d) Aurangzeb
- 19) **Who succeeded Shah Jahan? (2006)**
(a) Dara Shikoh
(b) Shah Shuja
(c) **Aurangzeb**
(d) Murad
- 20) **A new technique of painting known as 'Siyahi Qulam', became fashionable during the reign of (2006)**
(e) Akbar
(f) Aurangzeb
(g) **Jahangir**
(h) Shah Jahan
- 21) **During Akbar's reign, the famous men Haribans Mukund and Daswant was (2006)**
(a) Architects
(b) **Painters**
(c) Warriors
(d) Writers
- 22) **Which of the following buildings is not located in Fatehpur Sikri? (2006)**
(a) Buland Darwaza
(b) Anup Talao
(c) **Qila-I-kuhna Mosque**
(d) Panch Mahal
- 23) **Which of the following kings realized that the material welfare of the subjects is more important than wars? (2006) - delete this question**
a) Qutb-ud-din-Aibak
b) Firuz Shah Tughlaq
c) Muhammad bin Tughlaq
d) **Sher Shah**

24) Which pair is not correctly matched?(2006)

- a) Iqta - revenue assignment for civil and military service
- b) Mansab - official status of the nobles in the Sultanate administration**
- c) Khalisa - directly administered land by Mughal emperor
- d) Jara - a contractual system of revenue assignment

25) Grand Trunk Road which extended from Sonargaon in East Bengal to Sindh was built by (2001)

- (e) Akbar
- (f) Jahangir
- (g) Sher Shah**
- (h) Alauddin Khilji

CHAPTER 8- MARATHA EMPIRE

BACKGROUND

- The **Maratha Empire** or the **Maratha Confederacy**, was a **Hindu state located in present-day India. It existed from 1674 to 1818.**
- **Various factors contributed to the rise of Marathas in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.** The mountainous region and dense forests made them brave soldiers and adopt guerilla tactics. They built a **number of forts on the mountains.**
- The **spread of the Bhakti movement in Maharashtra** inculcated a spirit of religious unity among them.
- The **political unity was conferred by Shivaji.** The Marathas held important positions in the administrative and military systems of Deccan Sultanates of Bijapur and Ahmadnagar.
- The credit of establishing a **powerful Maratha state goes to Shahji Bhonsle and his son Shivaji.**

SHIVAJI

- **Shivaji was born at Shivner in 1627.** His father was **Shahji Bhonsle** and mother **Jija Bai.**
- He **inherited the jagir of Poona** from his father in **1637.**
- After the death of his guardian, **Dadaji Kondadev in 1647,** Shivaji assumed full charge of his **jagir.**
- Even before that he conquered **Raigarh, Kondana and Torna** from the ruler of Bijapur.

SHIVAJI vs AFZAL KHAN

- **1657, he attacked the Bijapur kingdom and captured a number of hill forts in the Konkan region.**
- The **Sultan of Bijapur (Adil Shah) sent Afzal Khan against Shivaji.** But Afzal Khan was murdered by Shivaji in 1659.

SHIVAJI VS SHAISTA KHAN

- Aurangzeb sent the **Mughal governor of the Deccan, Shaista Khan against Shivaji.**
- **Shivaji suffered a defeat at the hands of the Mughal forces and lost Poona.**
- **But Shivaji once again made a bold attack on Shaista Khan's military camp at Poona in 1663, killed his son and wounded Khan.**
- **Khan was recalled by Aurangzeb.**

SHIVAJI VS JAI SINGH

- **1664, Shivaji attacked Surat, the chief port of the Mughals and plundered it.**
- Aurangzeb sent **Raja Jai Singh of Amber to fight against Shivaji. Jai Singh captured Purander Fort**
- The negotiation between Shivaji and Jai Singh resulted in signing of **Treaty of Purander 1665.**

TREATY OF PURANDER-1665

- Shivaji had to **surrender 23 forts to the Mughals out of 35 forts held by him.**
- The **remaining 12 forts were to be left to Shivaji on condition of service and loyalty to Mughal empire.**
- On the other hand, the **Mughals recognized the right of Shivaji to hold certain parts of the Bijapur kingdom.**
- **Shambaji (Son of Shivaji)was granted a mansab of 5000.**

SHIVAJI'S VISIT TO AGRA

- **Shivaji visited Agra in 1666 but he was imprisoned there.**
- He managed to escape from prison.
- He renewed his wars against the Mughals.
- **1670- Again Surat was plundered.**
- He also captured all his lost territories by his conquests.

TITLE- CHATRAPATHI (PROTECTOR OF PEOPLE)

- In 1674 Shivaji crowned himself at **Raigarh and assumed the title Chatrapathi.**
- Then he led an expedition into the **Carnatic region and captured Ginjee and Vellore.**
- After his return from this expedition, **Shivaji died in 1680.**

SHIVAJI'S ADMINISTRATION

He was assisted by a council of ministers called **Ashtapradhan**. However, each minister was directly **responsible to Shivaji.**

- **Peshwa** – Finance and general administration. Later he became the prime minister.
- **Sar-i-Naubat or Senapati** – Military commander, a honorary post.
- **Amatya** – Accountant General.
- **Waqenavis** – Intelligence, posts and household affairs.
- **Sachiv** – Correspondence.
- **Sumanta** – Master of ceremonies.
- **Nyayadish** – Justice.
- **Panditarao** – Charities and religious administration.

REVENUE SYSTEM

- The revenue system of Shivaji was based on that of **Malik Amber of Ahmadnagar**. ‘
- Lands were measured by using the measuring rod called **kathi**.
- Lands were also classified into three categories – paddy fields, garden lands and hilly tracks.
- He reduced the powers of the existing **deshmuks and kulkarnis**.
- He appointed his own revenue officials called **karkuns**.

CHAUTH AND SARDESHMUKHI

- These are the taxes collected **not in the Maratha kingdom but in the neighboring territories of the Mughal empire or Deccan sultanates**.
- **Chauth was one fourth of the land revenue paid to the Marathas** in order to avoid the Maratha raids.
- **Sardeshmukhi was an additional levy of ten percent on those lands which the Marathas claimed hereditary rights. This went to the Chhatrapathi.**

ARMY

- The regular army consisted of about **30000 to 40000 cavalry supervised by havildars**.
- They were given **fixed salaries**. Shivaji also maintained **Navy**

There were **two divisions** in the Maratha cavalry –

1. **Bargirs**, equipped and paid by the state;
2. **Silahdars**, maintained by the nobles.

SUCCESSORS OF SHIVAJI

- There ensued a war of succession after the death of Shivaji between his sons, **Shambaji and Rajaram**.
- **Shambaji** emerged victorious but later he was captured and executed by the **Aurangzeb**.
- **When Prince Akbar** revolted against Aurangzeb and it was supported by **Sambhaji**.
- **Son Shahu (Son of Sambhaji) taken captive** and released after the death of Aurangzeb.
- **Rajaram** succeeded the throne but the Mughals made him to flee to the **Ginjee fort**. He died at **Satara**.
- He was succeeded by his **minor son Shivaji II** with his mother **Tara Bai** as regent.
- The next ruler was **Shahu** in whose reign the **Peshwas** rose to power.

THE PESHWAS (1713-1818)

BALAJI VISWANATH (1713-1720)

- Peshwa of Shahu.
- He was **instrumental in making Shahu as the ruler**.
- In 1719, **Balaji Viswanath** got certain rights from the then Mughal emperor, **Farukh Siyar (1713-1719)**.
- First, the **Mughal emperor** recognized **Shahu as the Maratha king**.
- Second, he allowed **Shahu to collect Chauth and Sardeshmukhi from the six Mughal provinces of the Deccan** including the Carnatic and Mysore.

BAJI RAO I (1720-1740)

- Baji Rao was the eldest son of Balaji Viswanath.
- He initiated the system of confederacy among the Maratha chiefs.
- Under this system, each Maratha chief was assigned a territory which could be administered autonomously.
- As a result, many Maratha families became prominent and established their authority in different parts of India.
- They were the Gaekwad at Baroda, the Bhonsle at Nagpur, the Holkars at Indore, the Scindias at Gwalior, and the Peshwas at Poona.

BALAJI BAJI RAO (1740-1761)

- Son of Bhaji Rao.
- Maratha king Shahu died in 1749 nominated successor Ramraja.
- Ramraja was imprisoned by the Peshwa Balaji Baji Rao at Satara.
- The full control of the Maratha kingdom came under the Peshwa.
- Peshwa entered into an agreement with the Mughal Emperor Ahmad Shah. in 1752.
- According to it the Peshwa gave assurance to the Mughal Emperor that he would protect the Mughal Empire from internal and external enemies in return of Chauth.
- When Ahmad Shah Abdali (1748-1767) invaded India, it became the responsibility of the Marathas to protect India.
- The Marathas fought very bravely against Ahmad Shah Abdali in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761. But they got defeated.

1) Which Indian ruler introduced 'Chauth' and 'Sardeshmukhi'? (2006)

- a) Sher Shah
- b) Rana Pratap
- c) **Shivaji**
- d) Babur

2) Who among the following is generally considered the greatest exponent of Guerrilla Tactics of warfare after Shivaji? (2006)

- a) Tara Bai
- b) Balaji Viswanath
- c) Rajaram
- d) **Baji Rao I**

3) Shivaji was crowned as an independent king at (2006)

- a) **Rajgarh**
- b) Surat
- c) Ahmedabad
- d) Poona

MODERN HISTORY

CHAPTER 1- ADVENT OF THE EUROPEANS

The Europeans who came to India in the chronological order were:

1. The Portuguese
2. The Dutch
3. The English
4. The Danes
5. The French

THE PORTUGUESE

VASCO DA GAMA

- Vasco da Gama discovered the sea trade route to India
- **He was received by the Zamorin (Manu Vikrama Varman) of Calicut on May, 18, 1498.**
- Vasco Da Gama visited India three times.
- Gama died and buried at Cochin

PEDRO ALVAREZ CABRAL

- Portuguese Traveller
- Established a factory at Calicut- 1500
- **It was the first European factory in India.**

FRANCISCO DE ALMEIDA

- Francisco de Almeida became first Portuguese Governor and introduced **Blue Water Policy (Control over Sea instead of making fortes on land)**
- He Established their headquarters at Cochin
- He introduced **blue water policy which was aimed at fortification of Indian ocean**
- His vision was to make the **Portuguese the master of the Indian Ocean.**
- He opposed establishing a territorial empire in India.

CARTAZE SYSTEM

- Portuguese were **first to issue naval trade licenses called 'Cartazes'.**
- The "cartazes" licensing system was created in **1502 to control and enforce the Portuguese trade monopoly over a wide area in the Indian Ocean.**
- They compelled **all other Asian partners in the Indian Ocean to recognise their supremacy by paying a toll called cartaz.**
- The **cartaz was a pass, the holder of which was declared to be free from seizure by the Portuguese navy.**
- The cartaz entitled its holder freedom of movement in the Indian Ocean.

ALPHONSO DE ALBUQUERQUE

- **He conquered Goa from Sultan of Bijapur in 1510AD** -Ismail Adil Shah with the help of Krishnadev raya (ruler of Vijaynagar empire).
- **The first part of India to fall to European colonial rule was Goa on the west coast.**

NINO DA CUNHA

- 1529-third Portuguese governor
- **Shifted HQ from Cochin to Goa**
- Famous Christian missionary leader, **Francis Xavier visited Goa**

CROPS INTRODUCED BY PORTUGUESE

- **Tobacco**
- **Potato**
- **Pappaya**
- **Cashew nut**
- **Tomato**
- **Maize**

CENTERS OF PORTUGUESE TRADE AND THEIR DECLINE

- **Surat:** In 1612, Captain Best of English defeated Portuguese in the **Battle of Swally/ Battle of Suvali** and they lost Surat.
- **Ormuz (in Present Iran) and Cochin:** Portuguese lost Hormuz and Cochin to Dutch in 1622 and 1663 respectively
- **Bombay:** It was given as **dowry to Prince Charles II of England** when he got married with a princess of Portugal.
- **Salasetti (In Maharashtra) and Bessein (Vasai in Maharastra):** In 1739, **Peshwa Baj Rao I** occupied Salasetti and Bessain
- **Portuguese were left with Dadra and Nagar Haveli, Goa, Daman and Diu**
- **Dadra and Nagar Haveli:** National Movement Liberation Organisation (NMLO), and the Azad Gomantak Dal conquered the territories of Dadra and Nagar Haveli from Portuguese India in 1954
- **Goa, Daman and Diu** were occupied by Government of India through **Operation Vijay** in 1961
- **They were the last Europeans to leave India.**

THE DUTCH

- Dutch East India Company was established in **1602 in Netherlands**
- It was the most powerful of all the European companies
- The **only company authorized to declare war** and conclude peace and mint the coins
- Founded their **first factory at Masulipattanam in 1605**
- **Followed by Pulicat (1610), Surat (1616), Bimlipatam (1641), Chinsurah (1653).**
- **1622: Amboyna massacre happened** (23 English officers were killed by Dutch army at Amboyna in Indonesia). It is the Present-day Maluku Island in Indonesia
- **Dutch were defeated by English in the Battle of Biderra/ Battle of Chinsurah/Battle of Hoogly** when Mir Jafar was the Nawab of Bengal in 1759
- The Dutch vacated India for English and English vacated Indonesia for Dutch.

THE ENGLISH

- The English East India Company was established on **31st December 1600**
- The Charter of the company was granted by **Queen Elizabeth I**
- **John Watts and George White** are two founders of the company

PROGRESS OF THE ENGLISH EAST INDIA COMPANY

- **1609- Captain Hawkins** reached at the court of Jahangir with the mission to establish factory at Surat didn't succeed.
- **1611-** trading @ Masulipatam started
- **1612- Battle of Swally-** Captain Thomas Best defeated the Portuguese in the **sea off** Surat; an impressed Jahangir granted permission to the **English in early 1613 to establish a factory at Surat under Thomas Aldworth.**
- **1615- Sir Thomas Roe visited the court of Jahangir.**
- Got permission to set up factories at **Agra, Ahmedabad and Broach.**
- **1616-** The company established its **first factory at South in Masulipatam.**
- **1632- 'Golden Farman'** issued to them by the **Sultan of Golconda (Abdulla Qutb Shah)-** privilege of trading freely in the ports of Golconda.
- **1633-** The Company extended trading activities to east India- **Hariharpur (U.P), Balasore (Odisha).**
- **1639 received from the ruler of Chandragiri permission to build a fortified factory at Madras** which later became the **Fort St. George** (It was the first company settlement in India to be fortified) and **replaced Masulipatam as the headquarters of the English settlements in south India.**
- **1662- Bombay was given to King Charles II by the King of Portugal** as dowry when Charles married the Portuguese princess, Catherine.
- **1687- Bombay was made the HQ.**
- **Shah Shuja**, the subahdar (or governor) of Bengal in 1651, allowed the English to trade at Hooghly
- He was treated by **dr. George Boughton** when he had fallen sick
- **1667- Aurangzeb gave the English a Farman for trade in Bengal.**
- other factories: **Kasim bazar (WB), Patna and Raajmahal(JHARKHAND).**
- Job Charnock fortified 3 villages **Sutanuti, Kalikkatta and Govindpur.**
- **He founded Calcutta at the site of Sutanuti, Kalikkatta and Govindpur.**
- The fortified settlement was **named Fort William 1700**
- Fort William also **became the seat of the eastern presidency (Calcutta)** with **sir Charles Eyre as its first president.**

FARRUKHSIYAR'S FARMANS

- In Bengal – **Company's goods were exempted from additional custom duties and taxes.**
- Company was allowed to **issue Dastaks (Passes/ Trade Permit) for the transportation of Goods.**
- **Company was permitted to rent more lands around Calcutta.**
- **Exempted from duties in Surat, Hyderabad.**

THE DANES

- Danish East India Company was founded in **1616**.
- **First settlement was in Tranquer near Chennai**
- Among all Europeans, they were more committed for promoting Christianity
- They disposed of their settlements to English

THE FRENCH

- **French East India Company was founded in 1664 by Jean Colbert** (Financial Wizard of France)
- **First settlement of French East India Company was in Surat**
- Other settlements were **Masulipattanam, Yanam, Karaikal, Pondichery and Mahe**
- In Bengal, they fortified at **Chandranagore**
- They were the **last Europeans to come here**.

PONDICHERRY- NERVE CENTRE OF FRENCH

- **1673- Sher Khan Lodi**- Governor of Bijapur Sultan granted Francois Martin granted a site for settlement.
- **1674- Francois Martin (Director of Masulipatam Factory)** set up a trading center at Pondicherry and this outpost eventually became the chief French settlement in India.
- Other settlements were **Yanam, Karaikal (Pondichery) and Mahe, Balasore (Odisha) and Qasim Bazar**.

GENERAL ITEMS OF EXPORT

- **Opium**
- **Textiles & Silk**
- **Rice**
- **Cotton**
- **Indigo**
- **Saltpetre**
- **Sugar**
- **Handicrafts**
- **Pepper**

ANGLO-FRENCH WAR/ CARNATIC WAR

FIRST ANGLO-FRENCH WAR (1740–1748)

- Started with **Austrian Succession War** in Europe between England and France.
- Dupleix, the French Governor, defeated the English and captured Fort St. George.
- British took shelter in the court of Anwarudheen, Nawab of Carnatic.
- The **Battle of Saint Thome/ Battle of Adayar (1746)** between French Army and Anwarudheen (nawab of Carnatic) was the first battle between native and European armies.
- Dupleix defeated the large troop of Anwarudheen.
- The war ended with **Aix-La-Chapelle treaty -1748**.
- Madras was given back to the British in exchange for the French fortress of Louisbourg in North America, which the British had captured.

SECOND ANGLO FRENCH WAR

- Started with civil war in **Hyderabad after the death of Asaf Jha Nizamul Mulk**
- English supported Nasir Jung (Son of Nizamul Mulk)
- French supported Muzaffar Jung (Grandson of Nizamul Mulk)
- In Carnatic, Nawab Anwarudeheen was challenged by son-in-law of Dost Ali, Chanda Sahib who was supported by the French
- **In the Battle of Amber (1749), Combined armies of Muzaffar Jung, Chanda Sahib and Dupleix defeated the allied forces of English and Anwarudheen.**
- **Anwarudheen was killed in the battle at Ambur and Chanda Sahib was made Nawab in Carnatic.**
- Nasir Jung (British Candidate) was killed in the war
- Muzaffar Jung was appointed as Nawab
- However, Muzaffar Jung died in an accident while marching to the palace after victory
- Then French declared Salabat Jung as the Nawab
- In 1751 Robert Clive captured Arcot (Capital of Carnatic) and besieged it for 49 days with 51 soldiers
- 1754-Dupleix was recalled
- Dupleix was replaced by Charles-Robert Godeheu & adopted policy of negotiations.
- **He signed the Treaty of Pondicherry (1754).**
- British candidate Mohamed Ali was recognised as the Nawab.
- **As per the treaty, the English and the French were to indulge only in commercial activities in India and not interfere in sub-continental political affairs.**

THIRD ANGLO FRENCH WAR

- Started with **7 years' war in Europe between English and French**
- Bussi, French Governor in Hyderabad was defeated by Col.Ford of English in the **Battle of Chandurthi**
- French lost Hyderabad
- **1760: Most decisive battle was fought at Wadavish (Vandavasi)**
- Entire French Navy was defeated
- **Paris treaty (1763) was signed**
- It ended the fortunes of France in India

APSC PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1) Which one of the following Europeans were the last to enter pre independent India as traders? (2016)

- (a) Dutch
- (b) English
- (c) French**
- (d) Portuguese

2) Which one of the following was the first fort constructed by the British in India? (2016)

- (a) Fort William
- (b) Fort St. George**
- (c) Fort St. David
- (d) Fort St. Angelo

3) Job Charnock founded Calcutta at the site of (2016)

- (a) Sutanuti
- (b) Kalikata
- (c) Govindpur
- (d) All of the above**

4) Which one was not the principal item of export in the 17th century Indian trade? (2016)

- (a) Pepper
- (b) Opium
- (c) Ivory**
- (d) Sugar

5) The East India Company was established on 31st December, 1600 as per the Royal Charter issued by (2015)

- (a) Queen Victoria
- (b) Queen Elizabeth I**
- (c) Henry VII
- (d) British parliament

6) During which period did the East India Company begin to build up its territorial power in India? (2011)

- (a) Beginning of the 18th century
- (b) Last quarter of the 17th century
- (c) Middle of the 18th century**
- (d) First quarter of the 19th century

7) British came to India as (2006)

- (a) Invader
- (b) Religious propagator
- (c) Trader**
- (d) Reformer

8) Which factory in Bengal was established by the Dutch? (2006)

- (a) Bandel
- (b) Hooghly
- (c) Serampore
- (d) Chinsura**

CHAPTER 2- LATER MUGHAL RULERS

WEAK RULERS AFTER AURANGAZEB (1658-1707)

JAHANDARSHAH 1712-1713

- Son of **Bahadur Shah 1.**
- Became emperor with the help of Zulfikar Khan (Son of Wazir of Aurangzeb).
- **Abolished Jizya**
- **Izara system was introduced.**
 - **Revenue farming system**
 - Right of collecting revenue of a particular area was auctioned to the highest bidder.
 - A fixed amount need to be paid to government by revenue farmers & middlemen.
 - **An Ijaradar had no proprietary right in land and in this he differed from the zamindar as an intermediary.**
 - They were left free to collect whatever they could from the peasant.
 - **Well-known practice in the land-revenue administration under the sultans of Delhi.**

FARUKH SIYAR (1713-1719)

- With the help of Sayyid brothers, Abdullah Khan and Hussain Ali– (the kingmakers) killed Jahandar Shah (Uncle)
- **Abolished Jizya & Pilgrimage Tax**
- **1717- Farmans to British.**
- Banda Bahadur the Sikh chief was captured and killed.
- **1719- Sayyid Brothers with the help of Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath dethroned Farrukh Siyar and killed.**
- **First time in Mughal History an emperor was killed by his noble.**

MUHAMMED SHAH (1719-1748)

- Grandson of Bahadur Shah 1.
- **Muhammed Shah killed Sayyid Brothers with the help of Nizam Ul Mulk.**
- Nizam Ul Mulk- serving the Mughals from the time period of Aurangzeb.
- **1724- Nizam Ul Mulk became wazir & founded independent state of Hyderabad.**

1739- NADIR SHAH INVASION

- **Nadir Shah was Persian emperor.**
- Attracted by wealth.
- **Invaded during the time period of Muhammed Shah.**
- **Battle of Karnal (Haryana)-1739- NS conquered Lahore & defeated Mughal Army.**
- Annexed areas west of Indus to Persian empire.
- **Koh-i-noor diamond and the jewel studded peacock throne of Shahjahan was taken.**

1748- 1767- INVASIONS OF AHMED SHAH ABDALI

- General of Nadir Shah.
- Repeatedly plundered & invaded multiple times.
- **1747- established Durrani empire in Afghanistan annexing Lahore.**

AHMAD SHAH (1748-1754)

- Son of Muhammed Shah.
- Left the affairs in the hands of **queen mother Udham Bai.**
- **Ahmed Shah Abdali marched up to Delhi**
- To save Delhi, he Ceded Punjab and Multan to Abdali
- Was blinded and deposed by the Marathas.

ALAMGIR 2 (1754-1759)

- Grandson of Jahandar Shah.
- **1757- Ahmed Shah Abdali reached Delhi.**
- **Battle of Plassey happened during his reign.**

SHAH ALAM II (1759-1806)

- Son of Alamgir 2
- **Third battle of Panipat (1761) happened during his reign.**
- **Battle of Buxar (1764) happened during his reign.**

THIRD BATTLE OF PANIPAT-14 JANUARY-1761

- **Ahmed Shah Abdali vs Maratha commander Sadashiv Rao.**
- Durrani's son Timur Shah was appointed as the governor of the Lahore.
- **Peshwa Baji Rao captured the Lahore & kicked out Timur Shah**
- **Immediate reason -to avenge the expulsion by Marathas of his son.**
- **Ahmad Shah Abdali got support of the local rulers (Rohilla Afghans of the doab and Shuja-Ud-Daula, the nawab of Awadh)& fought the battle with Marathas.**
- **Marathas were defeated.**

AKBAR 2 (1806-1837)

- Second Son of Shah Alam
- **Gave the title of Raja to Rammohan Rai.**

BAHADURSHAH 2 (1837-1857)

- **Last Mughal emperor.**
- **Revolt of 1857.**
- Captured by English & sent to Rangoon (present day Yangon in Myanmar).
- **In legal terms, with queen Victoria proclamation 1858- Mughal rule came to an end.**

CHAPTER 3- RISE OF REGIONAL KINGDOMS AND BRITISH CONQUEST

METHODS USED FOR ANNEXATION-RING FENCE POLICY – WARREN HASTING

- Doctrine enacted by **warren hasting (1773-1785)**.
- To encounter powerful forces of **Marathas, Hyderabad, Mysore**
- It involved defending their neighbors' frontiers to **safeguard their own territories**.
- Creating **buffer zones** to defend the company's frontiers.
- States under the **ring-fence system** were required to maintain **subsidiary forces of the company**.
- These subsidiary forces were to be **paid by the rulers of these states**.
- States were assured of military assistance in times of **external aggression**.
- Example – **defense of Awadh**.
- Wellesley's policy of **Subsidiary Alliance**- an extension of Ring Fence Policy.

SUBSIDIARY ALLIANCE – LORD WELLESLEY

- **Used by Wellesley (1798-1805) to build an empire in India.**
- The state who is entering into alliance **is compelled to**
- Accept permanent stationing of British force within his territory
- Pay **subsidy for its maintenance**
- **Posting of a British resident at his court**
- **Indian ruler could not employ any European in his service without prior approval of British.**
- **Don't negotiate with any other Indian ruler without consulting GG.**
- British Would defend the ruler from his enemies.
- **British would adopt a policy of non- interference in the internal matter of allied state.**
- Ruler virtually lost all his independence and became a British 'protectorate'.

STATES THAT ADOPTED SUBSIDIARY ALLIANCE

- **Hyderabad (1798)**
- **Mysore (1799)**
- **Awadh (1801)**
- **Peshwa (1801)**
- **Gaekwad (Marathas) (1803)**
- **Bhonsle (Marathas) (1803)**
- **Sindhia (1804)**
- **Holkars (1818)**

DOCTRINE OF LAPSE – DALHOUSIE

- **Annexation policy used by Dalhousie (1848 to 1856)**
- **Any adopted son of the Indian ruler could not be proclaimed as heir to the kingdom.**
- **He can be heir to the private property of foster father.**
- British **will** decide whether to bestow the state on the adopted son or to annex it.
- Doctrine was stated to be originated from a Hindu Law.
- **Lord Dalhousie not originator.**

STATES ANNEXED BY DOCTRINE OF LAPSE

- Satara (Maharashtra) -1848
- Sambalpur (Odisha) -1849
- Baghat (Himachal Pradesh)-1850
- Udaipur (Rajasthan)- 1852
- **Jhansi (Uttar Pradesh) -1853**
- Nagpur (Maharashtra)-1854

HYDERABAD

- Founder- **nizam ul mulk**(1724-1748)
- Nizam disgusted with Mughal emperor's appointment of **Mubariz Khan** as full-fledged viceroy of deccan.
- **Battle of Shokr- Kheda (1724)(berar- maharashtra)-** nizam killed & defeated Mubariz Khan.
- 1724 established **autonomous rule over the deccan region and started the asaf jahi dynasty.**
- Nizam's death followed by **war of succession**
- **1798- Nizam Ali Khan** (nizam of Hyderabad) **signed subsidiary alliance.**
- **First to accept the subsidiary alliance.**

CARNATIC

- One of the subah of Mughal emperor
- Came under the **authority of Nizam of Hyderabad.**
- When nizam became **independent of Hyderabad, deputy governor of Carnatic** (nawab of Carnatic) **freed himself from the viceroy of deccan.**
- **Deputy governor of Carnatic Sadatullah Khan** founded **Arcot** as his capital.

BENGAL

- Founded by **Murshid Quli Khan (1717-27).**
- Diwan of Bengal under Aurangzeb.
- He granted **Taccavi** loans to the cultivators and renovated Port Calcutta
- Nullified goldern faraman of Faruukh Siyar and forced English to pay tax
- **He added Orissa to Bengal**
- **His son Shujaudheen added Bihar to Bengal**
- Sarfaras Khan (Son of Shujaudheen) was killed by Alivardhi Khan (deputy governor / Deputy Subahdar of Bihar)
- **Alivardi renovated Port Kolkata and encouraged the settlement of Baniyas and Lucknow Muslims and hence population of Calcutta increased.**

SIRAJ-UD- DAWLA (1756-1757) -PRELUDE TO BATTLE OF PLASSEY

- He is the **grandson of Alivardi Khan**
- He declared war on English in 1756 when they refused to pay tax as done during the time of Murshid Kuli Khan
- **He asked them to stop fortification in Calcutta and the English refused**
- He defeated English and made Manik Chand governor of Kolkata
- Siraj seized English factories at Kasim Bazar and occupied Fort Williams

BLACK HOLE TRAGEDY -1756

- **British officer Holwell** has written that large number of British soldiers who were imprisoned by Siraj in Fort Williams they were kept in a tiny cell.
- The small room without ventilation. 123/ 146 imprisoned officials died because of the suffocation.
- **Historians do not believe/ says the number of victims must have been smaller.**

TREATY OF ALINAGAR-1757

- Admiral Watson and Robert Clive were sent by Madras government to capture Bengal
- They recaptured the Calcutta on Jan. 2, 1757.
- **Treaty signed between Robert Clive & Siraj-ud-daulah.**
- The treaty restored Calcutta to the East India Company with its privileges and permitted the fortification of the town and the coining of money.
- **The treaty was named after the short-lived title given to Calcutta by Sirāj after his capture of the city.**

BATTLE OF PLASSEY-1757

- Clive conspired with court nobles of Siraj like **Mir Jafar, Manik Chand** (governor of Calcutta), **Rai Durlab** (Zamindar of Burdwan), **Jagat Seths** (the richest bankers) **Kadim Khan** (Commander of troop) and **Omichund** (richest Sindhi merchant).
- Under the deal, **Mir Jafar wd be made the Nawab who will reward the company for its services.**
- **In Battle of Plassey a small contingent of French army supported Siraj against British**
- **Battle of Plassey took place in 1757 on the bank of river Bhagirathi**
- Siraj was killed by Miran son of Mir Jafar

AFTERMATH OF BATTLE OF PLASSEY

- **Mir Jafar was appointed as Nawab.**
- **Gave large sums of money plus the zamindari of 24 parganas to the English.**
- **Sovereignty of the English over Calcutta was recognized.**
- English posted a Resident at the **nawab's court.**

SIGNIFICANCE OF BATTLE OF PLASSEY

- **Laid the foundation for British empire in Bengal.**
- French ousted.
- **Established the military superiority of English in Bengal.**
- **British monopolised trade and commerce in Bengal.**
- No apparent change in the form of government.

MIR JAFAR (1757-1760)

- Irritated by the interference of Clive.
- Failed to make the payments due to the company.
- Entered conspiracy with the Dutch.
- **British defeated the Dutch & Mir Jafar in the battle of Bedara/Battle of Chinsura. (1759).**
- **British deposed Mir Jafar and appointed Mir Qasim (Son-in-Law) of Mir jafar as the Nawab.**

MIR QASIM (1760-1763)

- Ablest nawab among the successors of Alivardi Khan.
- **Shifted the capital from Murshidabad to Munger in Bihar.**
- Reorganised bureaucracy and army.

PRELUDE TO BATTLE OF BUXAR-1764

- **Main Cause:** The misuse of the Company's dastakor trade permit (a permit which exempted the goods specified from payment of duties) by Company officials for private trade.
- **Mir Qasim decided to abolish the duties altogether.**
- Mir Qasim joined with Mughal **Emperor** Shah Alam and Nawab of Awadh (Ayodhya) **Shuja ud Dawla** against British
- The combined armies of Mir Kasim were defeated by the English forces under Major Hector Munro at Buxar(Bihar).

AFTERMATH OF BATTLE OF BUXAR-1764

- **Mir Qasim was deposed, and Mir Jafar was brought back.**
- Mir Jafar handed over Midnapore, Burdwan, Chittagong in West bengal to British East India Company
- **Allahabad treaty (1765) was signed**
- **Shuja-Ud-Daula & Shah Alam 2 surrendered.**

TREATY OF ALLAHABAD -AUGUST- 1765

Two treaties under Treaty of Allahabad

- **Robert Clive vs Nawab of Awadh-Shuja-Ud-Daula**
 - Surrender Allahabad and kara (both in UP) to emperor Shah Alam II.
 - Pay Rs 50 lakh to the company as war indemnity.
- **Robert Clive Vs Mughal Emperor -Shah Alam 2**
 - Reside at Allahabad to be ceded to him by the nawab of Awadh under company's protection.
 - **Issue a farman granting the diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the East India Company**

SIGNIFICANCE OF BATTLE OF BUXAR-1764

- **Not only the nawab of Bengal but also the Mughal emperor of India was defeated by the English.**
- BEIC gained dominance over entire Bengal
- **Mughal emperor fully under the British control.**
- Revenue from Bengal, Bihar, Orissa to the company

DUAL SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT 1765-1772

- **Robert Clive introduced.**
- **Rule of two- rule of company & nawab.**
- **Both diwani & nizamat rights with company.**

- Diwani- collection of revenue
- Nizamat- police and judicial functions.
- Diwani rights from emperor & Nizamat rights from subahdar of bengal.
- **Nawab responsible for maintaining peace and order.**
- Company appointed two deputy diwans, Mohammad Reza Khan for Bengal and Raja Sitab Roy for Bihar.
- Mohammad Reza Khan also acted as deputy nazim or deputy subahdar.
- **Warren Hastings did away with the dual system in 1772.**

NAJIM- UD- DAULA (1765-1772)

- Minor Son of Mir Jafar.
- After death of **Mir Jafar**, he became Nawab.
- **Nawab during dual system of government in Bengal.**
- Puppet in the hands of British.

EMERGENCE OF MYSORE STATE

- **Battle of Talikota (1565)**- many small kingdoms emerged out of remnants of Vijayanagar empire.
- Region of Mysore emerged in 1612 from remnants of Vijaya Nagar Empire under Hindu Rulers Wodeyars.

HYDER ALI (1761-1782)

- **Commander in chief to Krishnaraja Wodeyar 2(1734-1766).**
- When he was appointed as **faujdar (military officer) of Dindigal** he defended Dindigal against Marathas.
- He captured the power from two Wodeyar brothers Devaraja and Nanjaraja(Ministers).
- **1761- Hyder Ali who was soldier under Wodeyar Dynasty overthrew wodeyars & established his own administration in the region.**
- **With the help of French at Dindigal (T.N) he established the first modern arms factory in India.**
- **Introduced western method of army training.**

ANGLO- MYSORE WARS-1ST ANGLO MYSORE WAR (1767–69)

- British East India Company made an alliance of Marathas and Nizam against Mysore
- **Hyder defeated English and the war ended with Madras treaty**
- Under the treaty English promised to help Hyder Ali in case he was attacked by another power.

SECOND ANGLO MYSORE WAR (1780–84)

- **Causes: Against the spirit of Madras treaty, the English did not support Hyder when Marathas attacked him**
- English attacked Mahe, the French port used by Hyder for importing war technology
- Hyder defeated the English several times and many British soldiers surrendered in front of him

- However, most decisive battle was fought at Portonovo and Hyder was defeated
- **During this Hyder died of cancer and his son Tipu continued the war and was defeated by British.**
- **The war ended with Mangalore Treaty and Tipu and the English exchanged the territories captured during the war**
- **Warren Hastings was the Governor General of Bengal during this time**

3RD ANGLO MYSORE WAR (1790–92)

- **Immediate cause was Tipu's attack on Travancore (friendly state of English)**
- Tipu was defeated once again, and the war ended with **Srirangapattanam treaty**
- According to the treaty, Tipu ceded half of the territory to the British
- **Tipu also paid a huge war compensation to the company**
- **Cornwallis was the Governor General of Bengal**

4TH ANGLO MYSORE WAR (1799)

- **Cause was that Tipu refused to sign Subsidiary Alliance of Wellesley**
- Wellesley was concerned with the Tipu's growing friendship with the French.
- Tipu was shoot at Srirangapattanam and he died
- Mysore was given back to Vodayars
- **William Bentick suspended the administration of Vodayars and annexed Mysore.**

TIPU SULTHAN

- Organized his army on the **European model.**
- He took the help of the **French officers to train his soldiers.**
- He also **made an effort to build a modern navy.**
- Credited as the '**pioneer of rocket technology**' in India.
- He wrote a **military manual explaining the operation of rockets.**
- Pioneer in introducing **sericulture to the Mysore state.**
- Keen interest in **French revolution.**
- He became member of **Jacobian club.**
- He planted the **tree of liberty at Seringapatam.**
- He sanctioned funds for the **repair of the Sringeri temple (Karnataka).**

MARATHA

- Marathas were in Five Confederacies
 1. **Peshwa : Poona**
 2. **Gaekwad : Baroda**
 3. **Scindia : Gwalior**
 4. **Holkar : Indore**
 5. **Bhosle : Nagpur**

ANGLO- MARATHA WARS

FIRST ANGLO MARTHA WAR (1775-1782)

- **Cause** : Interference of the British in the internal affairs of Marathas.
- After the death of **Madhav Rao(PESHA in 1772)** **Narayanrao (Brother)** succeeded as the next Peshwa.
- **Ragunath Rao (Uncle)** murdered Narayan Rao declared himself as the **Peshwa**.
- **Maratha chiefs led by Nana Phadnavis opposed the authority of Ragunath Rao.**
- They made effort to name the posthumous son of **Narayanrao (Sawai Madhavrao Narayan)** as the new peshwa and rule for him as regents.
- **Ragunath Rao concluded the Treaty of Surat (1775) with the English at Bombay.**
- **Under treaty Ragunath Rao would cede Salsette & Bassein & English wd provide army.**
- British Calcutta council annulled Treaty of Surat.
- **British Calcutta council made a new treaty (Treaty of Purandhar, 1776) with the regency.**
- Bombay council rejected Purandher treaty & **Offered** protection to Ragunath Rao.
- **Nana Phadnavis violated the Treaty of Purandhar & ceded territory to French and British attacked Marathas .**
- **Martha army was led by Mahadji Shinde.**
- He utilised a scorched earth policy-destroy anything that the Allies could find useful- (burning farmland and poisoning wells) to defeat English.
- English surrendered by mid-January 1779 and signed the **Treaty of Wadgaon(1779)**
- Treaty forced the Bombay government to relinquish all territories acquired by the English since 1775.
- Dissatisfied with the terms of Wadgaon again English clashed with Marathas and reached a compromise through **Treaty of Salbai (1782) proposed by Mahadji Sindhia.**
- The treaty guaranteed peace between the two sides for twenty years.

SECOND ANGLO- MARATHA WAR (1803-1805)

- Baji Rao 2 (Son of Ragunath Rao) came in to power after Madhav Rao Narayan died by committing suicide (1795).
- 1800- death of Nana Phadnavis.
- Baji Rao 2 killed the brother of Jaswant Rao Holkar.
- Holkars rebelled against Baji Rao 2
- Holkars defeated the combined armies of Sindhia and the Peshwa.
- Bajirao 2 sought the help of English and signed the **Treaty of Bassein (1802)- Peshwa accepted the Subsidiary Alliance.**

TREATY OF BASSEIN (1802)

- Peshwa agreed to station regular army of English in his territories
- Peshwa surrendered important territories like Surat
- Accepted the company's arbitration in all the differences between him and other powers.
- Subjected his relations with other states to the control of the English
- Even after the treaty there was attempt by Bhonsle, Sindhia & **Holkars to fight against British.**

- But Marathas were defeated and they were reduced to Vassals of British & they were isolated from one another.
- **Other Treaties Signed**
 - 1803- Treaty of Devgaon- Defeat of Bhonsle
 - 1803- Treaty of Surajiarjangaon-Defeat of Sindhia
 - 1806- Treaty of Rajpurghat- Defeat of Holkar

THIRD ANGLO- MARATHA WAR (1817-1818)

- **Pindaris were attached to Maratha armies as mercenaries (Soldiers).**
- **Pindaris plundered the neighboring territories, including the companies.**
- English charged Marathas with giving shelter to Pindaris.
- **Cause- Lord Hastings' actions taken against the Pindaris**
- It was seen as a transgression of the sovereignty of the Marathas.
- **Baji Rao 2- made his last attempt to rally Maratha Chiefs against the English.**
- But by this time the administrative & political mechanism of Marthas were in total breakdown.
- English succeeded in not allowing Peshwa to exert his authority again.

DEFEAT OF PESHWA

- June 1817, Treaty of Poona, with Peshwa.
- November 1817, Treaty of Gwalior, with Scindhia.
- January 1818, Treaty of Mandasor, with Holkar.

BATTLE OF KOREGAON (1818)

- **It took place on January 1st, 1818, near the banks of Bhima River in Koregaon (north-west of Pune)**
- Important event happened during third Anglo- Maratha War.
- **Mahars- community of untouchable from Maharashtra.**
- **Mahars were part of Maratha Army during the reign of Shivaji.**
- After Shivaji's reign, Mahars were oppressed by Peshwas.
- This led Mahars to fight against Marathas by aligning with the British.
- **When the battle of Koregaon took place, the Mahars formed a majority of the British troops.**

AFTERMATH OF THIRD ANGLO MARATHA WAR

- **Peshwa surrendered.**
- **Maratha confederacy was dissolved.**
- **Peshwaship was abolished.**
- Peshwa Bajirao became British retainer.
- Small principality Satara (Maharashtra) was formed which was placed under Pratap Singh (descendent of Shivaji).
- **Later annexed to Bombay under Doctrine of Lapse (1848)**

AHILYABAI HOLKAR (1725-1795)

- She was a Holkar dynasty Queen of the Malwa kingdom.
- **Khanderao Holkar, Ahilyadevi's husband, died in the battle of Kumher in 1754.**

- Twelve years later, her father-in-law, **Malhar Rao Holkar**, died.
- She inherited the throne and became one of India's great women rulers.
- Upon taking the throne as queen, **she launched a campaign to rid her kingdom of Thugs** who sought to plunder the kingdom, personally leading her army into battle.
- **Rani Ahilyabai was a great pioneer and builder of Hindu temples.**
- **She built hundreds of temples and Dharmashalas throughout India.**

EMERGENCE OF AUTONOMOUS STATE OF PUNJAB

- **Weakness of the Mughals and invasions of Ahmad Shah Abdali created a general confusion in Punjab.**
- **Sikhs organized themselves into Misls.**
- Misls means territory administered by a unit or brigade of Sikh warriors.
- During the period, 1763 to 1773, many Misls started to rule the Punjab region under Sikh chieftains.

RAJA RANJIT SINGH (1780-1839)

- Born -November 2, 1780.
- **He was the son of Mahan Singh, the leader of the Sukarchakia Misl.**
- **He founded his independent kingdom in the Punjab.**
- 1799- Appointed as Governor of Lahore by Zaman Shah (Ruler of Durrani Empire).
- 1805- He acquired Jammu and Amritsar.
- **His empire extended up to Peshawar and Sindh.**

ANGLO-SIKH RELATIONS

- Because of fear of joint Franco Russian Invasion of India British wanted to establish friendship with Raja Ranjith Singh.
- 1807, Lord Minto sent Charles Metcalfe to Lahore but the negotiation was failed.
- **1809- Ranjit Singh agreed to sign the Treaty of Amritsar.**
- **Amritsar treaty was signed between Ranjith Singh and the English recognizing Sutlej as the border**

TRIPARTITE TREATY -1838

- **A tripartite treaty was signed between Ranjit Singh, Shah Shuja (Deposed Ruler of Afghanistan) and Lord Auckland in June 1838.**
- Shah Shuja will be restored to the throne
- British will support Shah Shuja
- Sikh will help Shah Shuja by providing army.
- Shah Shuja recognised **Raja Ranjith Singh's claim over Afghan territories on right bank of Indus River.**
- **RRS refused to give passage to the British army**
- Through his territories to attack Dost Mohammad, The Afghan Amir

FIRST ANGLO- AFGHAN WAR (1839-1842)

- Initially English succeeded in placing Shah Shuja into the throne.

- But because of the rebellion British were required to evacuate the Kabul & recognize Dost Muhammed as independent ruler of Afghanistan.
- It resulted in the death of thousands of British (Indian) soldiers and waste of Crores of Rupees. Thus British failed in the first Anglo Afghan War.
- Lord Auckland was the viceroy during this time.

ANNEXATION OF SINDH (1843)

- 1839- Sindh accepted Subsidiary Alliance-Lord Auckland
- Sindh allowed the movement of the British troop in Sindh by land or water.
- 1839-1842- First Anglo- Afghan war British got defeated.
- Sindh was charged with hostility and disaffection against British during the First Anglo- Afghan war.
- 1843- After Afghan reverses Lord Ellenborough (1842- 1844), tried to negotiate again a humiliating treaty with Sindh (had to cede important provinces).
- Further under Charles Napier (Major- General), British interfered in the succession dispute of Sindh and provoked a war.
- Amirs (rulers of Sindh) were defeated through battles at Miani (February 17) and Dabo (Dubba), near Hyderabad (March 24).
- 1843, under Governor-General Ellenborough, Sindh was merged into the British Empire and Charles Napier was appointed its first governor.

FIRST ANGLO SIKH WAR 1845–46

- After Ranjith Singh, his minor son Dalip Singh came to power
- He was the youngest son of Maharaja Ranjith Singh and the only son in his wife Jind Kaur or Rani Jindan
- The immediate reason was that Sikh army crossed Sutlej in 1845
- British declared Amritsar treaty null and void
- Sikhs were defeated, and the war ended with Lahore Treaty
- A war compensation of 1 crore was charged from Punjab by British East India company
- As Sikhs were unable to pay the amount, they surrendered Kashmir, and it was sold over by the English to Raja Gulab Sing of Dogra Dynasty for 75 lakh rupees
- Sikhs were not satisfied with the treaty of Lahore (1846) in the matter of Kashmir.
- They rebelled against the treaty of Lahore.
- Again, new treaty signed- Treaty of Bhairawal- 1846
- As per the treaty, a British resident was established in Lahore under Henry Lawrance
- Later, Rani Jindan was removed as regent by another treaty, Treaty of Bhairawal in 1846.
- She was sent to Benares as pensioner.

SECOND ANGLO SIKH WAR 1845–46

- Mulraj, the Sikh governor of Multan was removed by the British

- As a revenge, 2 British officers were killed by Mulraj
- Dalhousie declared war and Mulraj was defeated
- **Three decisive battles were fought during second Anglo Sikh war**
- **They are battle of Ramnagar (1848), Battle of Chillianwala (1849) and battle of Gujarat(1849) (It is small town on the bank of river Jhelum)**

AFTERMATH OF ANGLO- SIKH WAR

- Surrender of the Sikh army.
- **Annexation of Punjab.**
- **Three-member board to govern (Henry Lawrence, John Lawrence, Charles Mansel)**
- **1853- board nullified & Punjab placed under chief commissioner.**
- **John Lawrence – first chief commissioner**

AUTONOMOUS STATE OF AWADH

- It was a Mughal subah.
- **Saadat Khan was appointed as the Subehdar of Awadh by Muhammed Shah.**
- **Saadat Khan (1722-1739) known as Burhan-ul- Mulk founded the independent principality of Awadh.**
- **He laid the foundation of Faizabad and made it the capital city.**
- **1801- Saadat Ali Khan 2 signed Subsidiary treaty with Lord Wellesley.**
- Subsidiary Alliance led to the financial bankruptcy of the treasury.
- **1856 Dalhousie annexed Awadh after deposing Wajid Ali Shah on the ground of misgovernance.**

KINGDOM OF ROHILAKHAND

- North – western part of U.P (Rampur, Bareilly, Moradabad)
- **It was emerged as a fall out of Afghan Migration during 17th- 18th Century.**
- Migration due to political & economical disruption in Afghanistan.
- Following Nadir Shah invasion, Ali Muhammed Khan set up Rohilla Kingdom.

FARUKHABAD

- **Located in U.P- banks of Ganga River**
- **Set up by Muhammed Khan Bangesh (1665-1743), An Afghan in 1715**

JATS

- **Living around Delhi, Mathura, and Agra.**
- Churaman (1695-1721) and Badan singh (1722-1756)-set up the Jat state of Bharatpur (Rajasthan).
- **Important ruler- Suraj Mal (1707-1763).**
- He extended territories - subahs of Agra, Mathura, Meerut and Aligarh.
- After death of Suraj mal – split into small kingdoms controlled by zamindars.

IMPORTANT TREATIES

<u>TREATY</u>	<u>PARTIES</u>	<u>CONTEXT</u>
Treaty of Sagauli 1816	British East India Company and Gorkha chiefs of Nepal	Ended the Anglo-Nepalese (Gurkha) War (1814–16).
Yandaboo Treaty-1826	East India company and the Burmese	Formally ended the First Anglo-Burmese War. (1824-1826)
Treaty of Gandamak -1879	Afghan ruler Mohammed Yaqub Khan and British Government	Ended the first phase of the Second Anglo-Afghan War.
Treaty of Lhasa -1904	Tibet and the British Empire.	It was signed following the British expedition to Tibet of 1903-1904, a military expedition led by Colonel Francis Younghusband,

ANNEXATION OF BURMA

- Different portions of Burmese territories were annexed at different times.
- Tenasserim and Arakan were taken in 1826 by the British after their victory in the First Anglo-Burmese War.
- The delta region including Rangoon (Lower Burma) was annexed in 1852 after the Second Anglo-Burmese War.
- The annexed territories were designated the minor province (a Chief Commissionership), British Burma, of British India in 1862.
- Upper Burma fell to the British after the Third Anglo-Burmese War in 1885.

1) Who put an end to the system of Dual government in Bengal? (2015)

(a) Lord Clive

(b) Warren Hastings

(c) Lord Bentinck

(d) Lord Irwin

2) The Yandaboo Treaty was signed in 1826 between (2013)

(a) East India company and the Ahom king

(b) East India company and the Burmese

(c) British crown and the Ahom king

(d) British crown and the Burmese

3) Ahalya Bai was a distinguished (2011)

(a) Maratha leader

- (b) Rajput leader
- (c) Sikh leader
- (d) Mughal leader

5) In 1862, the Treaty of Yandaboo was signed by which the British practically occupied Assam from the Burmese. In which year was Burma annexed by the British? (2011)

- (a) 1837
- (b) 1826**
- (c) 1864
- (d) 1891

6) The Battle of Buxar was fought in (2006)

- (a) 1763
- (b) 1764**
- (c) 1765
- (d) 1784

7) The Famine of 1770 took a toll of 1/3rd of people of Bengal. The chief contributing factor for this misery was (2006)

- (a) Absence of rain
- (b) Exploitation of money lenders
- (c) Poor soil fertility
- (d) The policies of the company**

8) The British policy towards India during 1765-1813 is known as the (2006)

- (a) Policy of ring fence**
- (b) Policy of subordinate alliance
- (c) Policy of non-intervention
- (d) Aggressive imperialism

9) One hundred years before the Indian War of Independence (1857), a battle fought where destiny of India changed drastically was (2006)

- (a) Second Battle of Panipat
- (b) First Battle of Haldighati
- (c) Battle of Jhansi
- (d) Battle of Plassey**

10) Saugali Treaty was concluded between the British and (1998)

- (a) Gorkhas**
- (b) Afghans
- (c) Pindaris
- (d) Marathas

11) The Mughal Emperor who granted Dewani to the East India Company was (1998)

- (a) Bahadur Shah - I
- (b) Shah Alam -I**

- | |
|--|
| <p>(c) Shah Alam - II</p> <p>(d) Bahadur Shah - II</p> |
|--|

CHAPTER 4- PEOPLE'S RESISTANCE AGAINST THE BRITISH

THREE TYPES OF REVENUE SYSTEM- ZAMINDARI SYSTEM/ PERMENANT SETTLEMENT

- Drafted by **Sir John Shore Committee** appointed by **Court of Directors of the Company**
- **The Permanent Settlement was introduced first in Bengal and Bihar and later in the south district of Madras and Varanasi.**
- Zamindars who have auctioned the **authority to collect taxes were given the power to collect taxes as much they wish**
- Out of the total revenue collected, **10/11 was the share of the company**
- **1/11 was the commission of the Zamindar**
- **Zamindars were given magisterial powers**
- Zamindars were made **owners of the land**
- The ownership of the land was made **hereditary and transferable**
- Land was made saleable, mortgageable and alienable
- Cultivator was left to the status of tenant at the mercy of zamindars or government
- **Tenet's land can be taken away if he fails to pay tax**

RYOTWARI SYSTEM

- Introduced by **Thomas Munro and Col. Reed**
- Introduced in **Madras and later extended to Bombay and Assam**
- **Peasant was recognized as the owner of the soil** and given the title "Deed" called "Patta"
- It established a direct relationship between the peasants and the government
- **The highest rate of tax in Indian history (55%) was under this system**
- **Rate of tax was periodically revised**
- In this system government directly collected the tax **without any mediator**
- The peasants were **gradually impoverished due to high rate of tax**

MAHALWARI SYSTEM

- **Holt Mackenzie in 1822 and it was reviewed under Lord William Bentinck in 1833.**
- **North-West Frontier, Agra, Central Province, Gangetic Valley, Punjab, etc.**
- **Lands were divided into Mahal.**
- **Mahals means one or more villages.**
- In this system, the **responsibility of collecting taxes was with the village or Mahal.**
- **Rate of tax was periodically revised**

- The estimated revenue of each plot within a village was added up to calculate the revenue that each village (mahal) had to pay.
- **Revenue was collected by the village headman or village leaders.**
- **Ownership rights were with the peasants.**
- **Each peasant will give their share.**

CAUSATIVE FACTOR FOR PEOPLE'S RESISTANCE

- Heavy burden of new taxes
- Eviction of peasants from their lands
- Encroachments on tribal lands.
- Growth of intermediary revenue collectors.
- Loss of patronage to artisans and handicraftsmen
- Migration of workers from industry to agriculture
- Transformation from net exporter to net importer

DEVELOPMENT OF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM UNDER BRITISH RULE

- **Grand Trunk Road between Kolkata and Delhi started in 1839**
- Steam Engine was introduced in 1852
- **Railways by 1853-First Railway from Bombay to Thana.**
- Posts and Telegraph by 1853-**First telegraph line was from Calcutta to Agra**
- Dalhousie introduced the postal stamp in India.
- He made uniform rates of half an anna for a letter all over India.
- Underground cable network between Kolkata and Delhi in 1857

ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANIZATIONS OF THE BRITISH IN INDIA

- **Civil Services** was introduced by **Cornwallis**.
- He is known as the **father of Indian Civil Services**
 - **Indian Police** was also established by **Cornwallis**.
 - **Warren Hastings** started **civil and criminal courts in India**
 - However, Cornwallis established it by setting up a **Diwani Adalat in each district**
 - British made a law commission headed by **Macaulay** to codify Indian laws. He formed the **Indian Penal Code**

CIVIL REBELLIONS OF 19TH CENTURY INDIA

FAKIR REBELLION 1776-1777

- **Fakir- Wandering Muslim Mendicants.**

- Leaders of Fakir levied contribution from **Zamindars & Peasants** and defied **British authority**.
- Leaders: **Majnum Shah & Chirag Shah**.
- Attacked British factories & seized goods.
- Brought under the control at the beginning of **19th Century**.

SANYASI UPRISING BENGAL 1770-1782

- Imposed restrictions on the sanyasis barring them from visiting holy places.
- The **Sanyasis rose in rebellion against the British and raided English factories** and government treasuries.
- Forests of **murshidabad and baikunthupur, bengal**.
- Displaced peasants & **Dispossessed Zamindars also joined**
- It took prolonged time for Warren Hastings to subdue **Sanyasi Revolt**.
- It was made famous by the novel Anand Mat written by **Bankim Chandra Chatterjee**.

PAIKA REBELLION 1817

- **Paiks- traditional landed militia of Odisha**.
- Reason: British conquest reduced the power and prestige of the Paiks, Extortionist land revenue policy of the company.
- **Leader :Bakshi Jagabandhu**.
- The rebellion was brutally repressed by 1818.
- 1825 Jagabandhu surrendered under negotiated terms.

AHOM REVOLT 1828

- British had pledged to withdraw from **Assam after first Burmese War (1824-26)**
- On contrary, they tried to annex Assam to British India
- **Gomadhar Konwar led a revolt against British**
- British handed over Upper Assam Maharaja Purandar Singh Narendra
- Parts of the Ahom Kingdom was given back to the dynasty

KUTCH/ CUTCH REBELLION (1816-1832)

- **King of Kutch, Rao Bharamal 2 was dethroned by the British**.
- British resident governed the areas as the de facto ruler with the help of a regency council. (Administrative Innovations)
- Company's authorities were compelled to follow a conciliatory policy.

SURAT SALT AGITATIONS (1840)

- Government's step to raise the salt duty from 50 paise to one rupee
- Government withdrew the additional salt levy

NAMDHARI/ KUKA MOVEMENT 1872

- First started by **Bhagat Jawahar Mal and Baba Balak Singh** as a social reform movement among the Sikhs

- Opposed consumption of liquor and demanded male-female equality
- **Under Ram Singh, it became Kuka Movement**
- They agreed only **10th Sikh Guru Guru Gobind as real Sikh Guru**
- Opposed the presence of Muslims in the Punjab
- Rams Singh captured Amritsar and declared the formation of Kuka government
- 49 supporters of him were blown up by a canon and killed
- **Ram Singh was deported to Burma and the movement came to an end**
- **Concepts of swadeshi and non-cooperation were propagated by the kukas.**

POLIGAR REBELLION (1795-1801)

- BEIC opposed land tax collection by **Polygars (Palayakkarargal).**
- Polygars means feudal lords who were appointed as military chiefs given the charge of a Palayam or a group of villages
- **Location : Tirunelveli, Tamil Nadu.**
- **Leader: Kattabomman Nayakan**
- **Carnatic Treaty of 1801- British direct control over Tamil Nadu.**
- With this, the authority of the Polygars also ended.
- The movement was suppressed by British.

DIWAN VELU THAMPI REVOLT (1808-1809)

- **Reason: Resentment over Subsidiary Alliance.**
- Failed to make dues under Subsidiary Alliance .
- **Velu Thampi (PM of Kingdom Travancore 1802-1809) rose against the company.**
- **Kundara Proclamation** refers to the famous address Velu Thampi made to the crowd gathered at Kundara in Kollam on 16 January 1809.
- It declared the British to be the enemy of the people and calling upon them to fight for the land's independence from the foreign power.
- **Velu Thampi committed suicide.**

TRIBAL REBELLIONS

CHUAR REBELLION OF BENGAL 1799

- **First tribe to revolt against British land revenue policy and famine**
- **Durjan Singh** was the leader of the movement
- He established his rule over 30 villages and attacked the East India Company establishments
- Around 200 people were executed by the British
- **Chuar is a derogatory word which means pig**
- Hence, some historians call it as the **Freedom struggle of Jangal Mahal**

SINGHPHOS REBELLION 1830

- **Nirang Phidu** was the leader of the revolt
- He attacked British Garrison and killed several British soldiers

- Another leader Khasma Singhphos attacked British village in Assam and was captured
- Immediately suppressed but continued to organise revolts.

KOL MUTINY-1831

- **Inhabitants of Chhotanagpur.**
- large-scale transfers of land from Kol headmen to outsiders like Hindu, Sikh and Muslim farmers.
- **Leader-Buddho Bhagat**
- Only after large-scale military operations could order be restored.

KHASIS OF ASSAM AND MEGHALAYA 1833

- **Revolted under the leadership of Tirot Singh and Darmanik**
- East India Company wanted to build a road linking the Brahmaputra Valley with Sylhet (Bangladesh).
- Against the presence of army in their area and the land revenue policy
- The movement was suppressed by British.

KHONDS UPRISING OF ORISSA 1846 AND 1855

- Revolted under **Chakra Besai** against **stopping the Mariah System (Traditional Human Sacrifice practiced by the Khonds), by Hardinge I**
- Another reason of the revolt were British revenue system and Zamindari system
- The Khonds in Orissa played a vital role in preparing the revolt of 1857
- With Chakra Bisoi's disappearance, the uprising came to an end.

SANTHAL REBELLION AT RAJMAHAL HILLS IN BIHAR (1855-56)

- The Rebellion is also known as **Santhal Hool**
- Revolted against **British land revenue policy**
- The rebellion was led by the four **Murmu Brothers – Sidhu, Kanhu, Chand and Bhairav**
- They stood against leasing out the tribal lands to outsiders
- Defeated British armies under **General Borrough** and declared the formation of first Independent Kingdom in modern India between Bahagapur and Patna or Rajmahal
- Large number of Zamindars, money lenders and their operatives were put to death
- The uprising aimed to remove the outsiders and the British from the Santhal areas
- The revolt had direct impact on the 1857 revolt
- **Dikus were the term used for outsiders which included money lenders, British officials and not tribal**
- As a result of the revolt, Santhal inhabited areas were constituted into separate administrative units called Santhal parganas.
- **It was suppressed by 1856**

MUNDA UPRISING 1899-1900

- **Mundas were tribals who inhabited chotanagpur area.**
- Zamindari system replaced the Khuntkatti System (joint land holding system).
- **Birsa Munda was the leader**

- He is known as **Dharti Aaba** meaning 'father of the land'
- Revolted against Christian missionary activities
- **Started sons of soil movement called Ulgulan**
- 1900- Birsa Munda died in jail.
- **Chotanagpur tenancy act 1908 was passed.**
- The act Recognized khuntkatti rights and also Banned beth begari (forced labour)

ORAONS OF CHOTA NAGPUR 1914-19

- **Ranchi, Jharkhand.**
- **Leaders were Jatra Bhagat and Turia Bhagat**
- Formed a **movement Tanabagat Movement and preached monotheism**
- Fought against British for freedom
- **Incorporated Gandhian methods like 'No-rent payment' campaign.**
- Jatra, along with his leading disciples was arrested on 23 April 1914.

KOYA OF GODAVARI AREA IN ANDHRA PRADESH 1879-80

- Under the leadership **Alluri Seetharama Raju**
- Raju is known as "**Manyam Veerudu**" ("Hero of the Jungles")
- **Against British revenue policy and exploitation of the tribal people by the tribal chiefs**
- **Other reasons were British opposition to Podu Cultivation (Shifting cultivation)**
- He attacked Chintapalli police station and killed notorious officer Bastian
- Raju was eventually trapped by the British in the forests of Chintapalli, then tied to a tree and was executed by gunfire in Kayyuru village

BHIL REVOLTS 1817

- **Bhils, are tribals who lived in the Western Ghats**
- **Location: Khandesh (Maharashtra)**
- British Policies denied them their traditional forest rights and exploited them.
- **Leader: Sewa Ram (1825)**
- Suppressed.

NAGA UPRISING

- Led by **Rani Gaidinliu and her cousin Zodanang**
- **Heraka religious movement** was the name of the movement organized by Rani Gidilinu against the British
- At the age of 16, she was arrested by the British and was sentenced to life imprisonment by the then British India Government
- In 1937, **Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru had met her at Shillong Jail and promised to pursue her release. During this time, Nehru gave her title of Rani (Queen)**
- **Imprisoned Rani Gidilinu was released in 1947 and called Daughter of Indian Independence by PM Nehru**

RAMOSI UPRISING (1822-1841)

- **Hill tribes of the western ghats.**

- After the annexation of the Maratha territories by the British, the **Ramosis, who had been employed by the Maratha administration, lost their means of livelihood.**
- The Ramosis plundered the regions around Satara and attacked the forts
- Leader: **Chittur Singh (1822)**
- **British agreed to give them job in the British Army and the revolt ended**

APSC PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1) In India, the Zamindari system was first introduced in (2020)

- (a) **Bengal**
- (b) Madras
- (c) Bombay
- (d) Delhi

2) Permanent settlement in India was introduced by (2014)

- (a) Lord Warren Hastings
- (b) Lord Bentinck
- (c) **Lord Cornwallis**
- (d) Lord Ripon

3) The first rebellion against the British rule in Assam in 1828 was led by (2013)

- (a) Piyali Phukan
- (b) Maniram Dewan
- (c) **Gomdhar Konwar**
- (d) Piyali Barua

CHAPTER 5- REVOLT OF 1857

BACKGROUND REASONS FOR THE REVOLT

ECONOMIC CAUSES OF THE REVOLT

- **Zamindari System and Ryotwari system impoverished the peasantry**
- Peasants became unable to return the debt dues to moneylenders
- British annexation resulted in loss of patronage for Indian artisans, and they also lost their source of livelihood
- **British promoted British goods and discouraged goods of Indian artisans**
- **Zamindars who lost their land also joined the revolt to revenge the British East India Company**

POLITICAL CAUSES OF THE REVOLT

- **British Policy of Expansion**
 Warren Hastings: Ring Fencing Policy

Wellesley: Subsidiary Alliance

Dalhousie: Doctrine of Lapse

- **The annexation of Awadh by Dalhousie had a direct impact on the revolt**
- **Dalhousie abolished the titles of the native kings and refused the pension to Nana Sahib (Adopted Son of last Peshwa Bajirao II)**

SOCIO RELIGIOUS CAUSES OF THE REVOLT

- **Wellesley abolished female infanticide among Rajaputs**
- **William Bentick abolished Sati (1829)**
- **Dalhousie passed Widow Remarriage Act (1856)**
- **In 1856, British passed Religious Disabilities Act (Indian inheritance Act) which retained property right for those converted against the spirit of Dharma Shastra**
- **Company has given grants and aid to the Christian missionaries for promoting Christianity in India**
- **Imposed taxes on temples and mosques**

GREIVIANCES OF SEPOYS

- **Service Enlistment Act, 1856** passed by Canning prohibited sepoys from performing religious rituals in the military camps
- **New recruits in the Bengal army were forced to sign an agreement that they would wage war even going abroad by crossing the sea. It was prohibited for upper caste.**

BEGINNING OF THE REVOLT

- **Sparking Point – Sepoys refused to use a new Enfield Gun on the suspicion that cartridge was made of cow and pig fat**
- **On March 29, 1857, Mangal Pandey (34th Bengal Native Infantry) and his cousin Iswar Pandey of Barackpore regiment started the revolt. They were immediately hanged by the British officers**
- **On May 10, Captain Bhakt Khan of Meerut regiment organized the revolt**
- **They released imprisoned soldiers in Meerut and killed British officers**
- **The sepoys entered Delhi and occupied it.**
- **Declared Bahadur Shah as the Emperor of India and head of the revolt**

MAJOR CENTERS OF THE REVOLT

CENTERS	LEADERS
----------------	----------------

DELHI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nominal & Symbolic leadership: Bahadur Shah. • Real Power: Court of Soldiers headed by Bakht Khan. • Court of Soldiers- 10 members (6 soldiers + 4 civilians).
KANPUR (U.P)-NANA SAHEB (Balaji Baji Rao)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao 2 • He was expelled from Poona • Declared himself as peshwa • Tantia Tope was associate of Nana Saheb. • Associate of Nana Saheb. • Continued to fight even after nana was forced to leave by the British army. • Joined the Rani Laxmibai after the loss of Kanpur.
LUCKNOW / BEGUM OF AWADH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Beegum Hazrat Mahal • Second wife of deposed Nawab Wajid Ali Shah. • Her son Birjis Qadir was proclaimed the nawab.
BARIELLY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Khan Bhadur Khan (the head of Rohillas)
BIHAR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Zamindar of Jagdishpur
FAIZABAD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maulavi Ahmadullah • He is known as 'Lighthouse of Rebellion'- Awadh.
JHANSI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rani laxmi bai • Against doctrine of lapse • British refused to allow her adopted son (Damodar Rao) to succeed to the throne after her husband Gangadhar Rao died. • Joined by Tantia Tope (associate of Nana Saheb) • Died fighting British colonial rulers near Gwalior.

CAUSES OF FAILURE

- Eastern, Southern & Western parts of India remained more or less unaffected.

- Not more than ¼th of the area and not more than 1/10th of the population was affected.
- Different sections of population did not participate – Big Zamindars, Money lenders, Merchants, Indian Rulers (Sindhia of Gwalior, Maharaja of Kashmir).
- Modern educated Indians remained neutral to the revolt of 1857.
- Poor arms and equipment like swords and spears with Indians but British with Enfield Rifles, Electric Telegraph system.

ANALYSIS OF REVOLT

- Complete Hindu Muslim cooperation (people, soldiers, leaders).

SUPPRESSION OF THE REVOLT

- Canning was the Governor General
- Collin Campbell was the Chief Commander of Operations
- Sir John Nicholson got back Delhi, but he died during the fight
- Bahadur Shah was imprisoned and sent to Mandalay jail in Myanmar
- His two sons were killed by shooting by British army officer Hudson
- Willian Tylor and Vincent Eyre defeated Kunwar Singh in Arrah
- Collin Campbell recaptured Kanpur
- Nana Sahib escaped to Nepal and there is no information on him after that
- Lucknow was also regained by Collin Campbell with the help of Gorkha army
- Sir Hug Rose defeated Rani Lakshmi Bhai of Jhansi after a severe fight
- Begum Hazrat Mahal took asylum in Nepal
- Maualavi Ahmadullah was killed by the Raja of Puwain, a Hindu fanatic
- Tantia Tope offered severe Guarilla warfare and captured by the **British** through cheating and was executed
- By 1859, British authority was completely reestablished over India

OPINIONS ON THE REVOLT

- Sir John Seely (British Historian) called it Sepoy Mutiny
- Dr K. Datta considers the revolt of 1857 to have been “in the main a military outbreak, which was taken advantage of by certain discontented princes and landlords, whose interests had been affected by the new political order”
- VD Savarkar introduced it as Planned War of National Independence in his book First War of Indian Independence.
- Dr S.N. Sen in his Eighteen Fifty- Seven considers the revolt as having begun as a fight for religion but ending as a war of independence.
- Dr R.C. Majumdar, however, considers it as neither the first, nor national, nor a war of independence.
- L.E.R. Rees considered it to be a war of fanatic religionists against Christians or T.R. Holmes who saw in it a conflict between civilization and barbarism.

QUEEN’S PROCLAMATION 1858

- Canning read out the Queen’s Proclamation in Allahabad Durbar.
- The Act declared Queen Victoria as the sovereign of British India

- The company rule was abolished.
- Direct responsibility for the administration of the country assumed by the British crown.
- Appointment of a secretary of State for India (a member of the British cabinet) – responsible for the government of India.
- Lord Stanley was first secretary of State for India.
- British Governor General of India also given the title Viceroy who was also the representative of the monarch.
- British princely states were assured against annexation.
- Doctrine of lapse was withdrawn.
- British promised to respect the dignity and rights of the native princes.
- Lord Canning was the first Viceroy of India.

1) In which division of the British Indian Army, Mangal Pandey was inducted as a soldier? (2016)

- (a) **34th Bengal Native Infantry**
- (b) 5th Royal Gurkha Rifles
- (c) Madras Light Cavalry
- (d) None of the above

2) The educated middle class in India (2016)

- (a) Opposed the Revolt of 1857
- (b) Supported the Revolt of 1857
- (c) Fought against native rulers
- (d) **Remained neutral to the Revolt of 1857**

3) By which act, was the governance of India passed to the British crown? (2015)

- (a) Rowlatt Act, 1919
- (b) Dominion Lands Act, 1872
- (c) **Government of India Act, 1858**
- (d) Official Secrets Act, 1923

4) When did the British Government take over the reign of India from the East India Company and who was the first Viceroy? (2014)

- (a) 1857, Lord Linlithgow
- (b) **1858, Lord Canning**
- (c) 1861, Lord Curzon
- (d) 1858, Lord Curzon

5) Which Act transferred power from the company to the Crown in India? (2011)

- (a) Act of 1861
- (b) Act of 1862
- (c) **Act of 1858**
- (d) Act of 1853

6) Who was popularly known as 'Nana Saheb'? (2006)

- (a) Bajji Rao I
- (b) **Balaji Bajji Rao**
- (c) Balaji Viswanath

(d) Sawai Madhav Rao

7) In Bihar the Revolt of 1857 was led by (1998)

(a) Nana Saheb

(b) Tantia Tope

(c) Khan Bahadur Khan

(d) **Kunwar Singh**

CHAPTER 6- 19TH CENTURY INDIAN RENAISSANCE

RAJA RAM MOHAN ROY (1772-1833)

- **Father of Indian renaissance and the maker of Modern India.**
- He was born in Radhanagar in Burdwan district, Bengal- 22 May 1772
- Given the title Raja by Mughal Emperor Akbar II and sent to London to plead his pension case
- **He believed in Doctrine of Monotheism – Doctrine of the Single God & Opposed Idol worship.**
- He wrote **Tuhfat-ul-Muwahhiddin (Persian) or Gift to Monotheists (1809)**
- Other Works : **Precepts of Jesus , the Guide to Peace and Happiness**
- **1814-He set up the Atmiya Sabha (or Society of Friends) in Calcutta**-to propagate the monotheistic ideals of the Vedanta and to campaign against idolatry, caste rigidities, meaningless rituals and other social ills.
- **1828- Founded Brahmo Sabha which was later renamed as Brahmo Samaj.**
- It was at the instance of **Raja Ram Mohan Roy sati was abolished by William Bentinck 1829.**
- In collaboration with **David Hare and Alexander Duff, Raja Rammohan Roy established Hindu College at Calcutta in 1817.**
- In 1825, he established a **Vedanta college (kolkata)** where courses in both indian learning and western social and physical sciences were offered.
- **JOURNALS** -the **Brahmanical Magazine (1821)**; the **Bengali weekly, Samvad Kaumudi (1821)**; and the **persian weekly, Mirat-Ul-Akbar.**
- **Features of Brahmo Samaj**
 - It **denounced polytheism and idol worship.**
 - It **discarded faith in divine avatars (incarnations).**
 - It denied that any scripture could enjoy the status of ultimate authority transcending **human reason and conscience.**
 - **Prayers, Meditation & Reading of Upanishad method of Prayer.**
 - It took no definite stand on the doctrine of karma and transmigration of soul and left it to individual brahmos to believe either way.
- **The Calcutta Unitarian Committee, jointly founded by William Adam and Rammohun Roy in September 1821**-for the promotion of religious monotheism and social reform among Hindus

- Roy's progressive ideas met with strong opposition from orthodox elements like **Raja Radhakant Deb** who organised the **Dharma Sabha (1830)** to counter **Brahmo Samaj** propaganda.
- Died -September 27, 1833 (aged 61) Bristol England.

BRAHMO SAMAJ AFTER RAJA RAM MOHAN ROY

- **1866: Brahmo Samaj Split into two:**
 1. All India Brahmo Samaj under **Kesab Chandra Sen**, **Anand Mohan Bose** and **Shivanarayan Shastri**
 2. Adi Brahmo Samaj under **Devendranath Tagore**
- In 1878, Second split happened in Brahmo Samaj
- **Sadharan Brahmo Samaj** was founded by **Ananda Mohan Bose**, **Shibchandra Deb** and **Umesh Chandra Datta** in 1878.

TATWABODINI SABHA 1839

- It was by **Debendranath Tagore** for promoting Indian Philosophy
- It was formed as a splinter group of the Brahmo Samaj
- The movement helped to spread national outlook among the intellectuals
- **Tatwabodini Patrika**, the official journal of the organization promoted a systematic study on India's past in the Bengali Language

KESHAB CHANDRA SEN

- Founded **Indian Reforms Association (1870)**.
- **1868 Keshab** laid the foundation stone of his mandir called the **Tabernacle of New Dispensation**.
- He was instrumental in passing of **Native Marriage Act Of (Age of Consent) act 1891**.
- The act was passed as a result of famous **Rakhmabai case of 1884** for restitution of conjugal rights.
- Many orthodox leaders like **Bal Gangadhar Tilak** Opposed the act.

ISHWAR CHANDRA VIDYASAGAR

- Father of Modern Bengali Prose
- **1850- Principle of Sanskrit College (Calcutta)**.
- Founded 18 schools for promoting women education.
- **Responsible Widow Remarriage Act 1856 (Lord Dalhousie)**
- Started **Bethune schools** for the education of girls
- **Barnaparichay or Barna Parichay (1855)- Bengali Primer** written by ICV.

YOUNG BENGAL MOVEMENT BY HENRY VIVIAN DEROZIO

- **Henry Vivian Derozio** taught at the **Hindu College** from 1826 to 1831.
- He was inspired by the French Revolution
- **Derozio** is known as the **first nationalist poet of modern India**

PARAMAHANSA MANDALI

- At mumbai-1849-1850
- Atma Ram Pandurang along with Balkrishna Jaikar and Dadoba Pandurang.
- Precursor of Prarthana Samaj.
- Secret society to spread liberal ideas.
- Monotheism, widow remarriage, women's education and opposed caste discrimination.

PRARTHANA SAMAJ

- Established by Atmaranag Pandurang in Bombay with the help of Keshab Chandra Sen
- MG Ranade is known as the architect of the movement.
- Other Leaders- **R.G. Bhandarkar (1837-1925)** and **N.G. Chandavarkar (1855-1923)**.
- **Veerasalingam was responsible for spreading the movement in Tamil Nadu**
- The programmes of the movement include education to women and downtrodden, Widow remarriage and development of lower caste people.
- **Major aim of the movement was to make people believe in one God and worship one God**

SATYA SHODAK SAMAJ- JYOTIBA OR (JYOTIRAO PHULE-1827-1890)

- Founded by **Mahatma Jyotibha Phule**
- Jyotibha championed the cause of untouchable Mali community
- Wrote the books "**Gulamgiri**" and **Sarvajanik sathyadharmadha Pustak**
- **Jyotibha established a girls' school in Pune**
- Mahatma title by Maharashtrian social activist **Vithalrao Krishnaji Vandeekar in 1888.**

SAVITRIBAI PHULE

- She along with **Jyotirao** founded the first women's school at **Bhide Wada in Pune in 1848.**
- It became **India's first girl's school run by Indians.**
- **She set up Mahila Seva Mandali** to raise awareness among women against child marriage, female foeticide and the sati system.
- She set up '**Balyata Pratibandak Gruha**', a childcare centre for the protection of pregnant widows and rape victims.
- Two poetic collections- **Kavya Phule** and **Bhavan Kashi Subodh Ratnakar.**
- University of Pune was renamed as **Savitribai Phule Pune university in 2015.**
- Her birthday is celebrated as "**Balika Din**" in Maharashtra every year

SWAMI VIVEKANANDA (1862-1902)

- Actual name is **Narendra Dutta**
- Title **Vivekananda** was given by Maharaja of Khetri (In Rajasthan)
- Popular as spiritual ambassador of India
- **Disciple of Ram Krishna Paramhansa.**
- Participated in the world parliament on Religion in Chicago and the Congress on the History of World Religions in Paris
- **In 1897 he founded the Ramakrishna mission.**
- **1898- Ramakrishna math @ Belur ,West Bengal**

DAYANANDA SARSWATI AND ARYA SAMAJ

- Arya Samaj founded by **Dayananda Saraswathi or Mulshankar (1824-1883)**.
- **First Arya samaj** unit was set up at Bombay in 1875.
- Later the headquarters of the samaj were established at **Lahore**.
- **Book-Satyarthi Prakash (the true exposition)**.
- Journals: Veda Bhashya and Veda Bhashya Bhumika
- He gave the slogan “ Back to Vedas”

Works Done:

- **Promoted Studies on Vedas**
- Vedas are infallible.
- **Opposed domination of priestly classes**
- **Opposed Child marriage and suggested minimum age of 25 for boys and 16 for girls for marriage**
- Promoted widow remarriages
- **Sudhi Movement of reconverting people to Hinduism**
- **Cow Protection movement against cow slaughtering (Gaurakshini Sabha)**
- **Main centre was Punjab. Spread to UP, Rajasthan and Gujarat also**

Split in the movement after Dayananda Saraswati

1. **Swami Shradhananda founded Gurukula section at Haridwar** and supported Sanskrit as a medium of lecture. This section is known as **Mahatma or Gurukula Party**. Led by **Guru Datta Vidyarthi and Lala Munshi Ram**. The mahatma party was in favour of all the aryas being strict vegetarians.
2. **Lala Hansraj and Lala Lajpat Rai** established **Oriental College at Lahore** and supported **English medium**. They are also known as **Dayand Anglo Vedic Group (DAV)/ College Party/ Cultural Party**. Leaders were **Lala Hansraj, Lala Lal' Chand and Lala Lajpat Rai**. College party had nothing against non-vegetarianism, claiming that diet was a personal choice, and it was not mentioned in the principles of the samaj.

THEOSOPHICAL SOCIETY

- Established in **New York by Madam HP Blavatsky and Col. Olcott in 1875**.
- Later shifted from New York to **Adayar in Chennai**
- **Madam Annie Besant was the promoter of this in India**
- It advocated for universal brotherhood
- It tried to revive ancient religions in different parts of the world
- Its philosophy agreed the transmigration of the soul of human beings

SERVANTS OF INDIA SOCIETY BY GOPALA KRISHNA GOKHALE

- **It was started in Pune in 1905.**
- **Founded by Gopala Krishna Gokhale**
- **The Society fight the social evils of untouchability and discrimination**

RAMAKRISHNA PARAMAHANSA

- **Actual name is Gadadar Chatopadya**
- **Popular as saint of Dakshineswar**
- He was the spiritual leader of Kali temple in Dakshineswar near Calcutta

ANNIE BESANT

- **Annie Besant had come to India in 1893.**
- **Founded the Central Hindu University @ Benares.**
- Later developed into **Benares Hindu University by Madan Mohan Malaviya.**
- She was international president of the Theosophical Society from 1907 until her death.

M. G. RANADE

- Founded the **Widow Remarriage Association (1861).**
- **Deccan Education Society (1880).**
- **Established the Poona Sarvajanik Sabha (1867).**

SOCIAL SERVICE LEAGUE

- **N.M.Joshi- in Bombay-1911**
- Founded the All-India Trade Union Congress (1920).

FARAIZI MOVEMENT

- Founded by **Haji Shariatullah in 1818.**
- State- East Bengal.
- It was against the un-Islamic practices current among the Muslims of the region.
- **Movement became revolutionary under Dudu Mian (Son of Haji)-1840s.**

WAHABI MOVEMENT

- **Islamic revivalist movement founded by Syed Ahmed of Rai Bareilly.**
- **Inspired by the teachings of Abdul Wahab (1703-87) of Saudi Arabia and Shah Waliullah of Delhi.**
- The movement surrendered around Patna was active since 1830s.
- Condemned the western influence on Islam.
- **Important role in spreading anti- British sentiments.**

ALIGARH MOVEMENT

- **Founded by Sir Syed **Ahmad** Khan**
- Founded the scientific society to translate English books on science and other subjects into Urdu.
- **He established the Anglo- Mohammadan School (1875) which was later upgraded to AMU.**
- Rational Interpretation of Islam & Quran even though he held the Quran to be final authority.
- Believed in the cooperation of British Government for the advance of Muslims.
- Opposed participation of Muslims in INC activities.
- **WORKS - Tahdhib-ul-Akhlaq (Improvement of Manners and Morals).**

DEOBAND SCHOOL

- Was begun at the **Darul Uloom (or Islamic academic center), Deoband**, in Saharanpur district (united provinces) in **1866**.
- **By Mohammad Qassim Nanotavi (1832-80) and Rashid Ahmed Gangohi (1828-1905)**
- **It welcomed the formation of the Indian National Congress.**
- Issued a fatwa(religious decree) against **Syed Ahmed Khan 'organisations, the United Patriotic Association and the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Association.**
- **United Patriotic Association-** political organisation founded in 1888 by Sir Syed Ahmad Khan and Raja Shiv Prasad Singh of Benaras.
- **Sir Syed Ahmad Khan founded the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association** in the year 1893 with the assistance of **Theodore Beck**. The main purpose of founding this association was to unite Muslims.

SIKH REFORM MOVEMENT

NIRANKARIS

- Religious reform movement within Sikhism
- **Founded by Baba Dayal Das.**
- **Worship of God as Nirankar (formless).**
- They accept the authority of a living guru (spiritual guide)
- **It recognized Dayal Das and his successors as guru.**

AKALI MOVEMENT

- The movement worked **against the misuse of Gurudwaras by priestly class called Mohants.**
- In 1920, Sikh leader **Karthar Singh Jhabbar** started this movement demanding lower caste Sikh's entry into Golden Temple
- He formed a movement named as **Shiromani Gurudwara Prabhandhak Committee**
- The movement ended with **Sikh Gurudwara Act, 1925**

PARSI REFORM MOVEMENTS

RAHNUMAI MAZDAYASNAN SABAH

- **Rahnumai Mazdayasnan Sabha (Religious Reform Association) was founded in 1851.**
- Established by **Dadabai naoroji, Naoroji Furonji and SS Bengali**
- Message of reform was spread by the newspaper **Rast Goftar (Truth-Teller)-Dadabhai Naoroji**

LOWER CASTE MOVEMENTS

SELF-RESPECT MOVEMENT

- By EV Rama Swami Naikar known as Periyar in 1820s
- Founded the journal Kudiarasu
- He was part of Vaikom Satyagraha (1924)
- He is known as Vaikom Veerar (Hero of Vaikom).
- He organized the “Dravida Nadu Conference” for the advocacy of a separate and independent “Dravida Nation”.

JUSTICE PARTY

- It is a political party founded by Dr. C. Natesa Mudaliar in 1916.
- It was co-founded by T. M. Nair, P. Theagaraya chetty, and Alamelu Mangai Thayarammal
- Ramasamy quit Congress party in 1925 accusing it of being dominated by Brahmins and actively led Justice Party.

DR. BR AMBEDKAR

- Born into the Mahar community (considered as untouchables).
- Submitted his thesis on Indian Rupee
- Founded the Journals: Mukhanyak (Dump Man), Bahishkrtha Bharath (Ex-communicated India)
- In 1936, Ambedkar founded the Independent Labor Party which later transformed into the All India Scheduled Castes Federation.
- Organized Mahat satyagraha
- On 25 December 1927, he led thousands of followers to burn copies of Manusmrti as it justified caste discrimination and untouchability.
- 1935- Left Hindhuism and later joined Buddhism.
- Ambedkar came up with his interpretation of Buddhism called Navayana.
- “The Buddha and His Dhamma”, written by Ambedkar, is considered as the holy book of Navayana Buddhism.
- Participated in all 3 round table conferences
- According to his demand for separate communal electorate for Depressed classes, Ramsay Mac Donald announced Communal Award (1932)

APSC PYQ

- 1) The ‘Young Bengal’ was formed by (1998)
 - (a) Louise Vivian Derojio
 - (b) Annie Besant
 - (c) Subhash Chandra Bose
 - (d) Surendranath Banerjee
- 2) Who founded the ‘Servants of India Society’? (1998)
 - (a) M G Ranade
 - (b) G K Gokhale
 - (c) S N Banerjee
 - (d) Dada Bhai Naoroji

CHAPTER 7- EMERGENCE OF NATIONALISM

REPRESSIVE AND REACTIONARY

POLICIES OF LYTTON (1876-1880)

- He held **grand Imperial Durbar in Delhi (1877)** wasting public money when Deccan was under severe famine to declare queen Victoria as the empress of India (first time queen has been declared as the empress of India)
- Introduced **Vernacular Press Act, 1878** and **Arms Act, 1878** curbing the freedom of Indian journalism and the people to carry arms without license respectively
- **Reduced the upper age limit for statutory civil services from 21 to 19**
- **Introduced Statutory Civil Services** reserving 1/6 of the seats for the Indian princely families and landed aristocracy
- He appointed **first Indian Famine (1880) Commission** under Richard Starchy .

PROGRESSIVE POLICIES OF RIPON (1880-1884)

- For the first time **British tried to improve the working conditions of laborers.**
- **Indian Factory Act (1881)** was passed regulating the working hours for women and children
- Statutory Civil Services was abolished
- **He formed Indian Education Commission also known as Hunter Commission**
- **Ripon introduced Illbert Bill** which was aimed to allow senior Indian magistrates to preside over cases involving British subjects in India. It had resulted in stiff opposition from European community, because of which Ripon had to modify the bill.
- Lord Ripon was known as the **Father of Local self-government**. He had introduced **local self-governance in the year 1882.**

ROLE OF JOURNALS AND NEWSPAPERS IN SPREADING THE IDEA OF FREEDOM STRUGGLE

- **Bengal Gazette** published by **James Augustus Hickey** was the **first english journal in modern India**
Started publishing in 1780 form Kolkata and stopped 1782
- **Rast Goftar** (The truth teller) was the first journal in Anglo Gujrati Language
Established by **Dadabai Naoroji**
- **Amrit Bazar Patrika (1868)** was published by **Sisir Kumar Gosh** (It is still being published from Bangladesh)
- **Hindoo Patriot** was founded by **Madhusudahn Ray** and **Gisrish Chandra Gosh**
- **Bangadarshan** was published by **Bankim Chandra Chatterjee**
- **Kesari in Marathi language and Maratha** (In English) were founded by **Bal Gangadar Tilak**
Both were edited by **Narasimha Chintaman Kelkar**
- The Hindu was established by **GS Ayer** and **Veeraraghavachari**
- **Swedeshi Mitran** was also published by **GS Ayer**
- Journals published by Mahatma Gandhi: **Young India, Satyagrahi, Navjivan and Harijan**
- Nation was the journal published by **Gopala Krishna Gokhale**

- Prabudha Bharat and Udbodana were published by Swami Vivekananda
- Punjabi was the journal of Lala Lajpat Rai
- **Al Hilal and Al Balagh** were the journals published by **Abul Kalam Azad**
- **New India and Common Weal** were the journals of **Anne Besant**
- **Motilal Nehru** published a journal named **Independent**
- The **Leader** is the journal published **Madan Mohan Malaviya**
- **Hindustan Times** was founded by **KM Panikkar**
- **National Herald** was the journal of **Jawaharlal Nehru**
- The **Comrade** was a weekly English-language newspaper that was published and edited by **Mohammad Ali Jauhar** between 1911 and 1914.

PRE- CONGRESS POLITICAL ORGANIZATIONS

BANGABHASHA PRAKASIK SABHA (1836)

- By associates of **Raja Rammohun Roy**.
- **Calcutta**
- Administrative association of **Indians with the British**, spread of education.
- **Prasanna kr. Thakur, Kalinath Chowdhury, Dwarakanath Tagore**

THE BENGAL LAND HOLDERS' SOCIETY (1838)

- Founded by **Dwaraknath Tagore (Grandfather of Rabindara Nath Tagore)** and **Raja radhakant dev**
- First Political party in **Modern India**
- It is also known as **The Zamindari Association**

BRITISH INDIAN ASSOCIATION

- 1851-Landholders' Society + Bengal British India Society.
- At **Calcutta**
- **Raja Radhakanta Dev (President)** and **Debendranath Tagore (Secretary)**.

MADRAS NATIVE ASSOCIATION-1852

- First political party in the **Madras Presidency**
- Founded by **Gazulu Lakshminarasu Chetty**

BOMBAY NATIVE ASSOCIATION -1852

- Founded by **Jagannath Shankar Seth**
- First political party in **Bombay Presidency**

THE INDIAN LEAGUE (1875)

- It was started by **Sisir Kumar Ghosh** to stimulate the feeling of nationalism among Indian people

EAST INDIA ASSOCIATION IN LONDON (1866)

- Founded by **Dadabai Naoroji** in 1866.
- First Indian political organization outside India

INDIAN ASSOCIATION OF CALCUTTA (1876)

- Also known as **Indian National Association -1876**
- **Surendranath Banerjee** and **Ananda Mohan Bose**
- Forerunner of INC
- The association sponsored an **All-India Conference** which first took place in Calcutta on **December 28 to 30, 1883.**
- **Later merged with the Indian national congress in 1886**

POONA SARVAJANIK SABHA 1867

- **Bombay**
- **Founded by MG Ranade, and GV Joshi**
- **Bal Gangadhar Tilak** was a prominent leader of the movement

MADRAS MAHAJANASABHA (1884)

- **Founded by GS Iyer, Veeraraghachari and P Anandacharyalu**

BOMBAY PRESIDENCY ASSOCIATION (1884)

- **Founded by Pheroz Shah Mehta, Badrudheen Tayyibji and KT Talang**

FORMATION OF INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (1885)

- In December **1885**, **AO Hume** (A retired British civil servant) met **72 delegates** from different political parties at Sir Tejpal Sanskrit College in Bombay.
- It was founded during the **Vice royalty** of Dufferin.
- This meeting was **presided over by the first Womesh Chandra Bannerjee (the First President of Indian National Congress)**
- After this **Congress Party** met every year in December
- The name **Indian National Congress** for the new party was suggested by **Dadabai Naoroji**
- **AO Hume** was the first **General Secretary**, and he is known as the **founder father of INC**
- **Safety Valve Theory** is a criticism against **Hume**
- It argued that **Congress** was formed as a safe outlet to satisfy the educated Indian who started expressing their opposition to the British government
- It means that Congress was formed as a safety valve for releasing the growing discontent among Indians.
- AO Hume has written two pamphlets
 - A Rising Star in the East**
 - Old Man's Dream**
- In **1890**, **Kadambini Ganguly**, the first woman graduates of Calcutta University addressed the Congress Session
- In **1899**, **Indian National Congress** was established in London

INC FACTS

- **A.O. Hume** has not presided over any INC session.
- In **1888**, INC was presided over (**Allahabad Session**) by **George Yule**, the first Englishman to be the president of INC.

- **First Indian woman to become president- Sarojini Naidu- Kanpur Session -1925**
- **Duffrine criticized INC as a microscopic minority**
- **Badruddin Tyabji was the first Muslim President of the third session of Indian National Congress- Madras -1887**
- **First woman president of the Indian national congress – Annie Besant Calcutta Session- 1917**

APSC PYQ

1) Which one of the following was the first English newspaper in India in the year 1780? (2016)

- (a) The Calcutta Gazette
- (b) The Bengal Gazette**
- (c) The Bengal Journal
- (d) The Bombay Herald

2) When was the Indian National Congress formed? (2015)

- (a) January 1885
- (b) April 1885
- (c) July 1885
- (d) December 1885**

3) The first woman President of the Indian National Congress was (2014)

- (a) Sarojini Naidu
- (b) Annie Besant**
- (c) Aruna Asaf Ali
- (d) Suhasini Mulay

4) Who is known as the 'Father of Local Self Government' in India? (2014)

- (a) Lord Amherst
- (b) Lord Ripon**
- (c) Lord Lytton
- (d) Lord Bentinck

5) The Indian National Congress was founded during the Vice-royalty of (2011)

- (a) Lord Canning
- (b) Lord Dufferin**
- (c) Lord Amherst
- (d) Lord Curzon

7) A. O. Hume was a (2011)

- (a) Scientist
- (b) Social worker
- (c) Civil worker**
- (d) Military commander

8) Sarojini Naidu was the first woman President of (2001)

- (a) Indian Theosophical Society
- (b) Simon Commission
- (c) Cabinet Mission
- (d) Indian National Congress**

9) Who passed the Vernacular Press Act restricting the freedom of the press? (2001)

- (a) Lord Dalhousie
- (b) Lord Lytton**

- (c) Lord Dufferin
- (d) Lord Lansdown

10) The first railway line in India was laid in (2011)

- (a) 1852
- (b) 1853**
- (c) 1857
- (d) 1885

11) Lord Ripon is known as the father of (2006)

- (a) Local self-government in India**
- (b) All India Services
- (c) Hill administration in India
- (d) State Administration in India

12) Who was the first woman President of the Indian national Congress? (1998)

- (a) Vijay Lakshmi Pandit
- (b) Annie Besant**
- (c) Kasturba Gandhi
- (d) Sucheta Kripalani

CHAPTER 8- AGE OF MODERATES AND EXTREMISTS

AGE OF MODERATES (1885-1905)

- Congress dominated by educated middle class, the landed aristocracy and the capitalist classes

IDEOLOGY OF MODERATES

- **British colonialism and Indian nationalism are not contradictory rather complimentary**
- **Development of the England is also the development of India**
- A political cooperation with the English could better secure India's interests
- They wanted to persuade British to introduce reforms in India
- Indians would remain loyal to the English because the **English would set up parliamentary democratic institutions in India**
- Petition, Prayer and Protest are the three methods of struggle
- Moderate Leaders: **Dadabhai Naoroji, Pherozshah Mehta, D.E. Wacha, W.C. Bonnerjea, S.N. Banerjee**
- **Dufferin, the Governor General and Goss the secretary of the State welcomed the formation of INC**

POLITICAL DEMANDS OF THE MODERATES

- **Expansion of Legislative Councils**
- Meaningful representation for Indian members
- Separation of judiciary and executive
- **Increasing the upper age limit for Indian Civil Service aspirants**

- 50 percent reduction in rent, export duties and military expenditure

ACHIEVEMENTS OF THE MODERATES

- **Dufferin appointed Aitchison Committee** to recommend on the reforms needed in Indian Civil Service on the demand of the moderates
- **Calcutta University Act and Calcutta Municipal Act, 1904** were revoked by Curzon on the request of moderates
- Most important achievement of the moderates were the **formation of the theory of drain of wealth by the moderate leader Dadabai Naoroji in his book Poverty and Un British Rule in India in 1871.**
- Drain of wealth means the **migration of the resources of one country to the other.**
- **Home Charges is one of the important components of Drain of wealth.**
- Home Charges refers to the **expenditure incurred in Britain by the Secretary of State on behalf of India.**
- Home charges were consisting of **interest on public debt raised from England, annuities on account of railways and irrigation works and payments to British employees, employed in India as well as pensions to retired employees worked in India.**
- Other economic analysts included **Justice Mahadeo Govind Ranade, Romesh Chandra Dutt (The Economic History of India), Gopal Krishna Gokhale, G. Subramaniya Iyer and Prithwishchandra Ray.**

FAILURE OF MODERATES

- **Restricted the social base of the congress only for elites**
- **Failed to understand the clash of interest between colonialism and nationalism**
- **They failed in stopping the partition of Bengal**
- **Not demanded right to vote for all**

AGE OF EXTREMISTS (1905-1915)

- **Viceroy Curzon** tried to **humiliate Indian nationalists and intelligentsia** in different occasions by describing their activities as “letting off of gas”
- He enacted **Indian University Act and Calcutta Corporation Act** and many other derogatory acts in India
- All these created extremists thought among some political leaders in India who are dissatisfied with moderate leaders
- Following persons were the extremist leaders in different parts of India
 - **Bengal:** Raj Narain Bose, Ashwin Kumar Dutta, Aurobindo Ghosh and Bipin Chandra Pal
 - **Maharashtra:** Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Vishnu Shastri Chiplunkar
 - **Punjab:** Lala Lajpat Rai
- **Aurobindo Ghosh is known as the founder father of extremist thought** in the Indian politics
- **His pamphlet “New Lamps for Old”** is considered as the bible of extremist thought in India
- He wrote series of articles in **Bangadarshan** (Journal of Bankim Chandra Chatterjee) criticizing the moderate method of struggle
- **Vishnu Shastri Chiplunkar wrote Nibandhamala**, a collection of poems with extremist thought

- **Lokmanya Balgangadar Tilak** was the most important extremist inside congress
- He was called as the **Father of Indian unrest** by **Valentine Chirole (British historian)**
- He was sentenced for **18 months' imprisonment for supporting the Chapekar Brothers** who killed British officers Iryst and Rand
- He authored a book **Gita Rahasya with extremist ideas**
- **Lala Lajpat Rai (Punjab Kesari)** wrote the book **Unhappy India**

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN MODERATES AND EXTREMISTS

<u>MODERATES</u>	<u>EXTREMISTS</u>
Constitutional method of protest	Extra Constitutional Method of protest
Solution for the people's problem lies within the constitution	Doing away with constitution
Didn't believe in the capacity of masses	Believed in mass struggle against British
Inspired by western liberal thought & European history	Indian history, cultural heritage & traditional Hindu symbols
Political cooperation with British is in India's interest	Political cooperation with British will exploit the India
Demanded constitutional reforms	Demanded swaraj

APSC PYQ

1) Who is the author of the book, **Poverty and un-British Rule?** (2006)

- (a) M. N. Roy
- (b) **Dadabhai Naoroji**
- (c) C. Rajagopalachari
- (d) G. Gokhale

CHAPTER 9- SWADESHI MOVEMENT AND OTHER DEVELOPMENTS

VANDE MATARAM MOVEMENT/ SWADESHI AND BOYCOTT MOVEMENT

- The **Government's decision to partition Bengal** was made public in December 1903.
- Then **Congress started a protest under the moderate leadership from 1903 to 1905.**
- **Lord Curzon** announced officially the **partition of Bengal on July 4, 1905**

- On August 7, 1905 a resolution to boycott British was declared in a massive meeting held in Calcutta town hall and it was the official beginning of the movement
- Partition came into existence on October 16, 1905.

COURSE OF THE MOVEMENTS

- The movement highlighted Swaraj as a national demand
- During this movement, British authorities banned singing Vande Matram in public.
- The song Vande Mataram is taken from the book “Anandamath” a popular Bengali novel by Bankim Chandra Chatterjee,
- Tagore’s Amar Sonar Bangla written in this occasion later inspired liberation struggle of Bangladesh and was adopted as the national anthem of Bangladesh
- The Swadesh Bandhab Samiti set up by Ashwini Kumar Dutt.
- V.O. Chidambaram Pillai established—Swadeshi Steam Navigation Company (1906)—at Tuticorin (T.N).
- Ravindranath Tagore founded Shanti Niketan and Satish Mukherjee founded Dawn Society for imparting native education
- Viswa – Bharati university was founded by Rabindranath Tagore in 1921.
- Bengal National College was established with Aurobindo Ghosh as principal
- Tagore gave call for Rakhi Bandhan as a token of Hindu - Muslim unity
- He wrote articles under the title Atma Shakti
- In Poona and Bombay, the movement was led by Tilak
- Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajit Singh organized the movement in Punjab
- Syed Haidar Raza was the leader of Swadeshi movement in Delhi.
- T.N- Subramania Bharati wrote Sudesha Geetham.

ALL INDIA MUSLIM LEAGUE (1906)

- December 1906
- Founded by the Agha Khan, Nawab Salimullah Of Dacca, Nawab Mohsin-ul-mulk and Nawab Waqar-ul-mulk
- First Muslim Political Party in India.
- To preach loyalty to the British government.
- To keep the Muslim intelligentsia away from the congress.
- The first Honorary President of the League was Sir Sultan Muhammad Shah (Aga Khan III).

ANNULMENT OF PARTITION (1911)

- In 1911, Lord Hardinge, annulled partition of Bengal
- In 1911, Imperial Capital City was shifted from Calcutta to Delhi

BENARAS SESSION (1905)

- Presided by Gopala Krishna Gokhale.
- Condemn the partition of Bengal and the reactionary policies of Curzon.
- Support the anti-partition and swadeshi movement of Bengal.

CALCUTTA SESSION (1906)

- In 1906 **Calcutta** session of INC, differences started between extremists and moderates on the issues of the area of the movement.
- Extremists wanted to make it a National Movement while moderates wanted to confine it only in Bengal
- Extremists wanted Tilak/ Lala Lajpat Rai to be the president of INC
- **However, Dadabai Naoroji became president as a compromise candidate.**
- A resolution supporting the **programme of swadeshi, boycott and national education was passed.**
- **Word swaraj was mentioned for the first time.**
- Goal of the Indian National Congress was defined as 'Swarajya or self-government' like the United Kingdom or the colonies of Australia and Canada.

SURAT SESSION (1907)

- IN 1907 Surat session of INC, **the first split happened in INC in to extremists and moderates.**
- **Moderates expelled Extremists from INC.**
- Extremist candidate **Tilak was defeated by moderate candidate Rash Bihari Gosh.**
- **Tilak and his followers remained outside the Indian National Congress till 1915**
- Tilak was charged with **sedition** for what he had written in his newspaper Kesari. He was sent to Mandalay (Burma) jail for six years.
- It was happened during the time of Swadeshi Movement.

SHIMLA DEPUTATION (1906)

- A group of Muslim elites called the **Shimla deputation, led by the Agha Khan, met lord Minto 2 (1905-1910)& demanded greater representation for Muslims.**
- In order to please moderates as well as Muslims **Minto (Viceroy) & John Morley (Secretary of State)passed Morley -Minto reforms (Indian Council Act 1909).**

MORLEY- MINTO REFORMS 1909

- **Minto was Viceroy and Morley was Secretary of State for India**
- Increased the **size of Central and Provincial Legislative Councils (Central from 16 to 60 and provincial was not uniform in number)**
- **Official members were majority in Central LA**
- **Non-Official members were majority in Provincial LA**
 - Power to ask supplementary questions were given to the members
 - **For first time, Indians were allowed to be in the executive council of the viceroy**
 - **Satyendra Prasad Sinha** was the first person included as law minister
 - **Separate communal electorate was given to Muslims**
 - Hence, **Minto is called as the father of communal electorate in India**

LUCKNOW SESSION OF INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS -1916

- The session was presided over by **AC Majumdar**.
- Extremists came back to Congress
- At the insistence of **Anne Besant**, Lucknow pact was signed between Muslim League and the Congress
- INC was represented by **Dr. Rajendra Prasad** and League by **Jinnah**
- In 1917, Anne Besant became the first woman President of INC in the Calcutta session

HOME RULE MOVEMENT (1916-1917)

- **Madam Anne Besant** suggested the idea “Home Rule” for first time in 1915 Bombay Session presided over by **SP Sinha**.

TILAK’S LEAGUE

- However, **Tilak** was first to form Home Rule League in April 1916.
- HQ – **Poona**
- Areas of activity -**Maharashtra (Excluding Bombay City), Karnataka, Central Provinces and Berar**.
- During this movement, **Tilak** has given the statement “Swaraj is my birth right”.

BESANT’S LEAGUE

- **Anne Besant** started her Home Rule League in Madras in September 1916
- Anne Besant was supported by **George Arundale, Indulal Yagnik and BP Wadia**
- Anne Besant started 2 journals named “**New India and Common Weal**”
- The area covered the rest of India (**including Bombay city**).
- The movement demanded **self-governance and native education**
- She was instrumental in establishing **Varanasi Sanskrit Vidyapith** in association with **Madan Mohan Malawya**
- **Prominent leaders**-Motilal Nehru, Jawaharlal Nehru, Madan Mohan Malaviya, Mohammad Ali Jinnah, Lala Lajpat Rai + members of Servants of India Society.
- The movement ended with **August declaration of 1917 which promised self-governance after World War I (Chelmsford made the declaration)**.
- In 1921, **All India home rule league** changed its name to **Swarajya Sabha** and later merged with the Congress which elected Mahatma Gandhi as its president.

APSC PYQ

1) Who founded the Home Rule League in September 1916? (2020)

- (a) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
- (b) Bipin Chandra Pal
- (c) Lala Lajpat Rai
- (d) Annie Besant**

2) The first movement launched against the British in India was (2015)

- (a) Swadeshi movement**

- (b) Khilafat movement
 - (c) Quit India movement
 - (d) Non-cooperation movement
- 3) In which of the following, 'Vande Mataram' was adopted as a slogan for agitation? (2015)**
- (a) Quit India Movement, 1942
 - (b) Non-cooperation Movement, 1922
 - (c) Partition of Bengal, 1905**
 - (d) Revolt of 1857
- 4) 'Swaraj' as a national demand was first made by who among the following? (2015)**
- (a) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 - (b) Dadabhai Naoroji**
 - (c) Jawaharlal Nehru
 - (d) Chittaranjan das
- 5) Who was the first President of the Muslim League? (2014)**
- (a) Liaquat Ali Khan
 - (b) Muhammad Ali Jinnah
 - (c) Aga Khan III**
 - (d) None of the above
- 6) The First Session of the Indian National Congress was presided over by (2013)**
- (a) W.C. Banerjee**
 - (b) B.R. Ambedkar
 - (c) J.L. Nehru
 - (d) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
- 7) Who initiated the Home Rule movement in India? (2011)**
- (a) Chittaranjan Das
 - (b) Lajpat Rai
 - (c) Annie Besant**
 - (d) Maulana Azad
- 8) Who wrote 'Vande Mataram'? (2011)**
- (a) Muhammad Iqbal
 - (b) Sarat Chandra Chatterjee
 - (c) Bankim Chandra Chatterjee**
 - (d) Rabindranath Tagore
- 9) The capital of British India was shifted to Delhi in the year (2011)**
- (a) 1908
 - (b) 1911**
 - (c) 1937
 - (d) 1947
- 10) The Swadeshi movement started during (2011)**

(a) **Anti-Bengal Partition movement**

(b) Non-cooperation movement

(c) Civil disobedience movement

(d) None of the above

11)The National Song 'Vande Mataram' is taken from the book (2006)

(a) 'Geetanjali' of R. N. Tagore

(b) **'Ananda Math' of Bankim Ch. Chatterjee**

(c) 'Nildarpan' of Dinabandhu Mitra

(d) 'Debi Chaudhurani' of Bankim

12)The Surat split was the saddest episode in the history of the Congress". Who said this? (1998) - delete this question

(a) B G Tilak

(b) S N Banerjee

(c) Annie Besant

(d) **Lala Lajpat Rai**

13)For whom did Valentine Chirole say, 'He was the father of Indian Unrest'? (1998)

(a) B C Pal

(b) Lala Lajpat Rai

(c) **B G Tilak**

(d) Bhagat Singh

CHAPTER 10- EARLY STRUGGLES OF MAHATMA GANDHI

MAHATMA GANDHI FACTS

- **Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi was born on October 2, 1869, in Porbandar (Gujarat)**
- Gandhi was influenced by some books:
 - **Leo Tolstoy's The Kingdom of God is within you**
 - **John Ruskin's unto this Last**
 - **Edwin Arnold's Song Celestial (Commentary on Bhagavat Gita)**
 - **French philosopher Thoreau's Civil Disobedience**
- Founded the journals **Indian opinion and Hind Swaraj**
- In India he founded **Sabarmati Ashram near Ahmedabad**
- Gandhi was called as **Bapu, Mahatma and Father of Nation** by **Subhash Chandra Bose**
- **C Rajagoplachari** is known as the conscience keeper of Mahatma Gandhi.
- **Gandhi supported British in WW I** and was given the title **Kaiser- I- Hind (Tiger of India)** and nicknamed recruiting Sergeant.
- **Gandhi summarized Unto This Last's teachings in these three points:**
 - That the **good of the individual is contained in the good of all.**
 - That a **lawyer's work has the same value as the barber's**, inasmuch as all have the same right of earning their livelihood from their work.

- That a **life of labour, i.e., the life of the tiller of the soil and the handicraftsman, is the life worth living.**
- Winston Churchill – called Mahatma Gandhi as Half Naked Fakir.
- The doctrines of ‘**non-violence**’ and ‘**civil disobedience**’ associated with Mahatma Gandhi were influenced by **Ruskin, Tolstoy, Thoreau.**
- **Ahmedabad Textile Labour Association was founded by Mahatma Gandhi.**
- **Rabindranath Tagore Conferred the title ‘Mahatma’ upon Gandhi.**
- **Sevagram Ashram situated in Maharashtra which was the place of Gandhi's residence from 1936 to 1948.**

GANDHI IN SOUTH AFRICA

- Gandhi left for South Africa to plead for Abdullah and Company.
- In South Africa, He was thrown out of a train from **Durban to Pretoria**, despite having valid ticket to travel in first class.
- Fought against the racial discrimination against Indian labourers
- He founded **Natal Indian Congress (1894)** which was aimed to fight discrimination against Indians in South Africa.
- He led **Satyagraha against Registration Certificates (1906).**
- **Formed the Passive Resistance Association (1906).**
- He protested **against Transvaal Immigration Act**
- He led **Campaign against Poll Tax and Invalidation of Indian Marriages.**
- **He set up the phoenix farm in 1904 in Natal.**
- Aim- to house the families of the satyagrahis and to give them a way to sustain themselves.
- He also set up Tolstoy Farm (1910-1913).

EARLY STRUGGLES OF GANDHI IN INDIA

CHAMPARAN SATYAGRAHA (1917)-FIRST CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE

- **First Civil Disobedience.**
- Gandhi was invited by **Rajkumar Shukla** to the problems of **Indigo Planters.**
- **Cultivation of Indigo based on Tinkathia System** existed in Champaran earlier.
- **Peasants were forced to grow indigo on 3/20 part of the total land.**
- In the 20th century, synthetic dyes replaced the Indigo which resulted in declining price of Indigo.
- **European planters demanded high rents and illegal dues from the peasants.**
- **1917- Gandhi offered civil disobedience in Champaran.**
- **Other leaders- Rajendra Prasad, Mazharul- Haq, Mahadeo Desai, Narhari Parekh, and J.B. Kripalani.**
- Government appointed a **committee** to go into the matter and **nominated Gandhi as a member.**
- Gandhi was able to convince the authorities that the **tinkathia system should be abolished** and that the peasants should be compensated for the illegal dues extracted from them.

- First experiment of MG succeeded in India with the abolition of Tinkathia System.

AHMEDABAD MILL STRIKE (1918)- FIRST HUNGER STRIKE

- Immediate reason– withdrawal of plague bonus.
- The workers demanded a 50% wage hike in lieu of the plague bonus.
- Anusuya Sarabhai asked Gandhi to help.
- Anusuya Sarabhai – sister of Ambalal Sarabhai.
- Ambalal Sarabhai – president of Ahmedabad Mill Owner's Association -1891
- Gandhi asked the workers to go on a strike and demand a 35 per cent increase in wages instead of 50 per cent.
- Gandhi used the method of hunger **strike** for first time for Ahmedabad mill workers.
- Gandhi ended the strike only when mill owners agreed to **increase the salary of workers by 35 percent.**

KHEDA SATYAGRAHA (1918) FIRST NON- COOPERATION

- Context – Crop failure due to drought.
- According to the Revenue Code, if the yield was less than one-fourth the normal produce, the farmers were entitled to remission.
- Gandhi asked the farmers not to pay the taxes.
- Other Leaders: Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, Narahari Parikh, Mohanlal Pandya and Ravi Shankar Vyas.
- Government agreed to suspend the tax for the year in question, and for the next; reduce the increase in rate; and return all the confiscated property.

1) While Rabindranath Tagore Conferred the title 'Mahatma' upon Gandhi, who conferred the title 'HalfNaked Fakir' on Gandhi? (2021)

- (a) GopalKrishnaGokhale
- (b) SirWinsonChurchill
- (c) PresidentRoosevelt
- (d) NetajiSubhasChandraBose

2) Who among the following founded the Ahmedabad Textile Labour Association? (2016)

- (a) Mahatma Gandhi
- (b) J. B. Kripalani
- (c) N. M. Joshi
- (d) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel

3) The doctrines of 'non-violence' and 'civil disobedience' associated with Mahatma Gandhi were influenced by

- (a) Churchill, Irwin, Tolstoy
- (b) Ruskin, Tolstoy, Thoreau
- (c) Thoreau, Truman, Bernard Shaw
- (d) Cripps, Tolstoy, Howes

4) Which of the following institutions was NOT founded by Mahatma Gandhi? (2015)

- (a) Sabarmati Ashram
- (b) Sevagram Ashram
- (c) Visva-Bharati**
- (d) Phoenix Ashram

5) Mahatma Gandhi was called the 'Father of the Nation' first by (2014)

- (a) Jawaharlal Nehru
- (b) Rabindranath Tagore
- (c) Subhash Chandra Bose**
- (d) Lala Lajpat Ray

6) The title given by the British to M. K. Gandhi which he surrendered was (2013)

- (a) Hind Kesari
- (b) Kaiser-e-Hind**
- (c) Rai Bahadur
- (d) Jewel of India

7) Who edited 'Young India'?

- (a) Lala Lajpat Rai
- (b) Annie Besant
- (c) Mahatma Gandhi**
- (d) S N Banerjee

CHAPTER 11- GANDHIAN PHASE OF INDIA'S FREEDOM STRUGGLE

MONTEGUE CHELMSFORD REFORMS 1919

- **Separate list of Central and Provincial Functions were introduced**
- **Provincial functions were further divided into 2**
 - Transferred Subjects:** Administered by Governor with the aid of ministers responsible to legislative council
 - Reserved Subjects:** Administered by Governor General without being responsible to legislative council
 - The system is known as diarchy
- **Bicameralism started in India**
 - Upper House:** Council of States
 - Lower House:** Legislative Assembly
- **3 out of 6 executive members in Viceroy's council should be Indians**
- **Separate Communal electorate for Sikhs, Indian Christians, Anglo Indians and Europeans was introduced**
- **Granted Franchise to certain classes based on property, tax and education**
- **New office of High Commission of India was started in London**

- Established Central Public Service Commission which was set up in 1926
- Separated between Central budget and Provincial budget
- There would be a statutory commission to inquire into the implementation of this act after 10 years

ROWLATT ACT-1919

- Officially called as the **Anarchical and Revolutionary Crimes Act**.
- It was based on the recommendations by the **Rowlatt Commission (Sedition committee-1917)**
- It was headed by the British judge, Sir Sidney **Rowlatt** to find out the ways to deal with terrorism.
- The act allowed political activists to be tried without juries or even imprisoned without trial.
- All the elected Indian members of the Imperial Legislative Council voted against the bill
- All the elected Indian members—**Mohammed Ali Jinnah, Madan Mohan Malaviya and Mazhar Ul Haq** – resigned in protest.
- Justice Shankaran Nair, the Indian member in the committee and the member of Viceroy's executive council resigned in protest the act
- Gandhi gave a call for national protest day on April 6, 1919

ANTI- ROWLATT SATYAGRAHA -1919

- Gandhi called the Rowlatt Act the “**Black Act**”
- Gandhi organised a Satyagraha Sabha which included the members of Home Rule League Movement.
- It was the first country wide agitation by Gandhi.

JALLIANWALA BAGH MASSACRE -1919

- **April 9-** two nationalist leaders, **Saifuddin Kitchlew and Dr Satyapal**, were arrested by the British officials without any provocation.
- The people gathered to protest the arrest of their leaders **Saifuddin Kitchlew and Satyapal**.
- Lieutenant Governor of Punjab was **Sir Michael O'Dwyer**.
- **Brigadier-General Reginald Edward Harry Dyer** was the senior British, officer with the responsibility to impose martial law and restore order
- General Dyer ordered indiscriminate firing.
- The incident happened on **Baisakhi festival day- April 13, 1919**
- **Rabindranath Tagore** renounced his knighthood in protest.
- **Gandhi** gave up the title of **Kaiser-i-Hind**, bestowed by the British.
- **Gandhi** withdrew the movement on **April 18, 1919**
- **Udham Singh** later assassinated **Michael O'Dwyer**, the Lieutenant-Governor who presided over the brutal British suppression of the 1919 protests in Punjab.
- **October 14, 1919** – **Montague** ordered **Disorders Inquiry Committee- Hunter Committee/Commission** was appointed to investigate the JBM.
- **Three Indian Members in Hunter Committee-** **Chimanlal Harilal Setalvad, Pandit Jagat Narayan, Sardar Sahibzada Sultan Ahmad Khan**

- **Hunter Committee Report (1920) unanimously condemned the actions of Dyer.**
- **Report did not impose any penal or disciplinary action.**
- The Indian National Congress decided to boycott the Hunter Community and appointed the non-official committee.
- **Non- official committee included Motilal Nehru, C.R. Das, Abbas Tyabji, M.R. Jayakar and Gandhi.**
- The committee criticized Dyer's act as inhuman and also said that there was no justification in the introduction of the martial law in Punjab.
- Lord Chelmsford was the Viceroy of India at the time of Jallianwala Bagh Movement

NON- COOPERATION MOVEMENT AND KHILAFAT AANDOLAN (1919-1922)

BACKGROUND REASON

- **Montague - Chelmsford reforms -1919, didn't give self-governance. Instead of that Diarchy was given.**
- **Khilafat Issue-** After World War I, in the **Paris peace conference**, England threatened to abolish the office of Turkish Caliph. In protest, **Maulana Muhammed Ali and Maulana Shoukat Ali founded All India Kkilafat Committee.**
- It held the **first session in Lucknow in 1919 and Seth Chotani of Bombay as its president**
- The **1920 Delhi session of Khilafat committee was addressed by Shankarajarya of Puri** extending the support of Hindus
- **Gandhi was made president of Khilafat Committee in this session**
- **Khilafat Committee aim was to force the British government to change its attitude towards turkey.**
- All India khilafat conference held in Delhi in November 1919, a call was made for the boycott of British goods.
- **Gandhi was appointed as the president of All India Khilafat Committee**
- 3 demands of NCM was **meaningful constitutional reforms, to punish the guilty of Punjab and protecting Khilafat**
- Gandhi's proposal for the movement was **accepted by the Congress working committee met under Lala Lajapat Rai in Calcutta.**
- The **Nagpur session in 1920 presided over by Veeraraghavachari** accepted the resolution for the movement and made **Gandhi the sole leader of the movement.**
- The congress made its objective **asattainment of Swaraj through peaceful and legitimate manner** – Congress committed to extra constitutional method.
- **Muslim league supported the movement.**
- **August 1, 1920 – Tilak Died.**

- **August 31, 1920-Khilafat Committee started a campaign of non-cooperation, and the movement was formally launched**
- **Mohammad Ali Jinnah, Annie Besant, G.S. Kharpade and B.C. Pal left the Congress as they believed in a constitutional and lawful struggle.**
- **Surendranath Banerjee founded the Indian National Liberal Federation in 1919.**

COURSE OF THE MOVEMENT

- **Slogans: Swadeshi, Satyagraha and Total Boycott**
- **Charkas became the symbol of the movement**
- **Establishment of educational Institutions -**
 - **Subhash Bose - principal of National College at Calcutta.**
 - **Jamia Millia at Aligarh, Kashi Vidyapeeth, Gujarat Vidyapeeth and Bihar Vidyapeeth.**
- **Lawyers like Motilal Nehru, Jawaharlal Nehru, C.R. Das, C. Rajagopalachari, Saifuddin Kitchlew, Vallabhbhai Patel gave up the practice.**
- **Foreign cloths were burned & import of foreign cloth fell by half.**
- **Tilak Swaraj Fund was oversubscribed, and one crore rupees collected.**
- **No-tax movement against union board taxes in Midnapore (Bengal) and in Guntur (Andhra).**
- **In Assam, strikes in tea plantations, steamer services and Assam-Bengal Railways had been organized – Prominent Leader - J.M. Sengupta**
- **Prince Wales visited India on behalf of his father King George V, to thank the nation for the essential role it had played during the First World War.**
- **Congress boycotted the visit which invited strikes and demonstrations.**
- **Awadh Kisan Movement (UP), Eka Movement (UP), Mappila Revolt (Malabar) and the Sikh agitation for the removal of mahants in Punjab happened parallelly.**
- **On February 5, 1922, Chauri Chaura incident happened. In Gorakhpur, 22 police constables were burnt alive by protesters and Gandhi called off the movement.**
- **Mahatma Gandhi had called non-Cooperation movement his Himalayan Blunder after the incident of Chauri- Chaura.**
- **C.R. Das, Motilal Nehru, Subhash Bose, Jawaharlal Nehru not happy with the decision.**
- **March 1922, Gandhi was arrested and sentenced to six years in jail.**
- **Massive participation of Muslims such type of participation had neither been seen in the past nor would be seen in the future.**

CONGRESS KHILAFAT SWARAJYA PARTY

- **The Swaraj Party or the Congress-Khilafat Swarajya Party was formed on 1 January 1923.**
- **Gandhi's arrest (March 1922) and withdrawal of Non-Cooperation Movement raised the question what to do during the transition phase.**
- **C.R. Das, Motilal Nehru and Ajmal Khan wanted an end to the boycott of legislative councils.**

- They wanted to enter the councils & use it as a platform for political struggle. **Followers of him were called pro Changers.**
- **Pro- Changers; CR Das, Motilal Nehru and Vittal Bhai Pattel and Subash Chandra Bose**
- Other section of leaders **opposed council entry, advocated concentration on constructive work, and continuation of boycott and non-cooperation**, and quiet preparation for resumption of the suspended civil disobedience programme. They were known as **No-Changers**
- **No- Changers: Gandhi, J. Nehru and Vallabhbhai Pattel and Rajendra Prasad.**
- **In the Gaya session of the Congress (December 1922) C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru resigned from the presidentship and secretaryship respectively of the Congress.**
- They announced the formation of **Congress-Khilafat Swarajya Party or Swarajist Party, with C.R. Das as the president and Motilal Nehru as one of the secretaries.**
- **The party merged with the Congress in 1935.**

OTHER POLITICAL DEVELOPMENTS DURING THIS TIME

- **All India Trade Union Congress (AITUC) founded in 1920.**
- **Lala Lajpat Rai was its first president and Dewan Chaman Lal its general secretary.**
- **In 1924, Gandhi presided** over the Belgaum session of INC (Only one session Gandhi presided over)
- **In 1925, Kanpur Session of the INC was presided over by Sarojini Naidu**, the first Indian woman president of the INC
- **In the same year, CPI officially declared its formation in the Kanpur session. (Actually, formed by MN Roy in 1920 in Tashkant)**
- **In 1926, the Congress session was held in Guwahati.** It was presided over by **Srinivasa Ayenger**
- **In 1927, Harcourt Butler Committee was formed by the British to study the ways to improve the relationship between British government and princely states in India.**

SIMON COMMISSION/ INDIAN STATUTORY COMMISSION

- **In 1927, British government announced Simon Commission to study about the development of 1919 reforms.**
- **Government of India Act 1919 had a provision that in 10 years from 1919, a royal commission will be set up to report on the working of the act.**
- It consists of **seven British members of parliament of United Kingdom** under chairman sir John Simon.
- **The Commission was composed entirely of British members with not a single Indian member being included in it.**
- **Clement Atlee was a member of the Commission. The commission arrived in British India in 1928.**
- **Congress session in Madras (December 1927) under the presidency of M.A. Ansari decided to boycott the commission “at every stage and in every form”.**

- All parties except Justice Party and Depressed Class Federation of Ambedkar opposed Simon Commission.
- Lala Lajpat Rai was lathi- charged during the movement and died of that injury

MOTILAL NEHRU COMMITTEE 1928

- Secretary of State Birkenhead challenged all political parties in India to draft a constitution.
- Then an all-party meeting appointed a committee to draft the constitution.
- This committee was headed by Motilal Nehru with Jawaharlal Nehru as the Secretary.
- Other members were Ali Imam, Tej Bahadur Sapru, Mangal Singh, M S Aney, Subhas Chandra Bose, Shuaib Qureshi and G R Pradhan.
- The draft constitution was prepared which was called “Nehru Committee Report “.
- This report was submitted on August 28, 1928, at the Lucknow conference of all the parties.
- **Recommendations:**
 - Dominion status instead of complete independence.
 - Rejection of separate electorates
 - Demand for joint electorates with reservation of seats for Muslims at the Centre and in provinces where they were in minority.
 - Linguistic provinces.
 - Nineteen fundamental rights including equal rights for women, right to form unions, and universal adult suffrage.
 - Responsible government at the Centre and in provinces.
 - Protection to cultural and religious interests of Muslims
 - Complete dissociation of State from religion.
- Jinnah rejected this report and brought his 14-point formula for the development of minorities.
- Nehru Report was found unsatisfactory for Muslim League, Hindu Mahasabha, Sikh.
- The congress gave an ultimatum to the British Government to accept the recommendation of the report by December 31, 1929. The report was not accepted by the Government.

INDEPENDENCE FOR INDIA LEAGUE (1928)

- In Calcutta Session 1928, the Nehru Report was accepted by a majority vote.
- Nehru and Subash Bose rejected the Nehru Report.
- They formed the Independence for India League.
- "Independence for India League" was formed with Jawahar Lal Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose as Secretaries and S. Srinivasa Iyengar as President.

LAHORE SESSION INC- 1929

- In 1929, Lahore session, INC demanded “Poorna Swaraj” (Complete Independence) (Jawaharlal Nehru Presided over this session)
- The INC decided to boycott Round Table Conference.

- Congress Working Committee authorized to launch **civil disobedience**.
- All members of legislatures were asked to resign their seats.
- **January 26, 1930 was fixed as the first Independence (Swarajya) Day**, to be celebrated everywhere.
- **December 31, 1929-On the banks of River Ravi, the newly adopted tricolour flag of freedom designed by P. Venkaiah, was hoisted by Jawaharlal Nehru amidst slogans of Inquilab Zindabad.**

GANDHI'S 11 DEMANDS

- Gandhi presented eleven demands to the government and gave an ultimatum of January 31, 1930, to accept or reject these demands.

GANDHI'S 11 DEMANDS

1. **Reduce expenditure on Army and civil services**
2. **Introduce total prohibition**
3. **Carry out reforms in Criminal Investigation Department (CID).**
4. **Change Arms Act**
5. **Release political prisoners.**
6. **Accept Postal Reservation Bill.**
7. **Reduce rupee-sterling exchange ratio**
8. **Introduce textile protection.**
9. **Reserve coastal shipping for Indians.**
10. **Reduce land revenue by 50 per cent.**
11. **Abolish salt tax.**

CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

- **11 Demands were rejected by Irwin.**
- **MG decided to launch CDM with Salt as the central formula for the movement.**
- **On March 12, 1930, Gandhi started his Dandi March from Sabarmati Ashram followed by 78 people.**
- **Sarojini Naidu was the leader of women's wing.** Naidu's work as a poet earned her the sobriquet 'the Nightingale of India', or 'Bharat Kokila' by Mahatma Gandhi because of colour, imagery and lyrical quality of her poetry.
- **Gandhi broke the salt law by picking up a lump of salt at Dandi on April 6, 1930.**
- **C. Rajagopalachari organized a march on the Tanjore Coast to break the Salt Law in April, 1930**
- **B. Gopal Reddy organized famous Mypadu salt satyagraha (Andhra Pradesh).**
- **Malabar- K. Kelappan.**
- **Orissa -Gopalbandhu Chaudhuri.**
- **Assam – Students organized strike against the Cunningham Circular which banned students' participation in politics.**

- Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan (Known as Frontier Gandhi and Badshah Khan) organized Khudai Khidmatgar Movement (Servants of the God Society) with his followers called as Red Shirts in the North-West Frontier Province.
- He published first journal in Pushtoo language named as Pukhtoon.
- Gandhi's arrest came on May 4, 1930 when he had announced that he would lead a raid on Dharsana Salt Works on the west coast.
- On May 21, 1930, Sarojini Naidu, Imam Sahib and Manilal (Gandhi's son) took up the unfinished task of leading a raid on the Dharasana Salt Works.

SPREAD OF CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

- No tax movement in Gujarat.
- Defiance of forest laws in Maharashtra, Karnataka, Central Province.
- United Provinces – No Revenue & No-rent Campaign.
- Manipur and Nagaland -Rani Gaidinliu.

FEATURES OF CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

- Large scale participation of the women.
- No large-scale participation of Muslims.

GANDHI-IRWIN PACT/DELHI PACT (5TH MARCH 1931)

- Gandhi and Irwin had signed a pact on February 14, 1931.

Irwin on behalf of the government agreed on—

1. Immediate release of all political prisoners not convicted of violence;
2. Remission of all fines not yet collected.
3. Return of all lands not yet sold to third parties;
4. Lenient treatment to those government servants who had resigned;
5. Right to make salt in coastal villages for personal consumption (not for sale);
6. Right to peaceful and non-aggressive picketing; and
7. Withdrawal of emergency ordinances.

The viceroy, however, turned down two of Gandhi's demands—

1. Public inquiry into police excesses, and
2. Commutation of Bhagat Singh and his comrades' death sentence to life sentence.

Gandhi on behalf of the Congress agreed—

1. To suspend the civil disobedience movement, and
2. To participate in the next round table conference

KARACHI SESSION OF INC 1931

- In March ,1931 Karachi session (Special Session) of the INC, Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel was the president (the only session Patel presided over)
- In this session, Karachi Resolution on Fundamental rights and economic policy was presented.

- The goal of purna swaraj was reiterated
- It endorsed the Gandhi – Irwin Pact & CDM was withdrawn.

ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE

FIRST ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE (NOVEMBER 1930- JANUARY 1931)

- First Round Table Conference was between 1st November 1930 and January 1931
- It was organized to discuss the suggestions proposed by Simon Commission
- All the three round table conferences were held in London
- Congress didn't participate in the First-Round table conference.
- It was opened officially by King George V on November 12, 1930.
- It was for the first time that the Indians and the British were meeting as 'equals'.
- Major Participants: Muslim League, Hindus, Justice Party, Sikhs, liberals, Parsis, Christians, Anglo-Indians.
- Ambedkar, Mohammad Ali Jinnah, Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru, Sir Muhammad Zafrulla Khan, V. S. Srinivasa Sastri, K. T. Paul and Mirabehn are key participants from India.
- B.R. Ambedkar and Tej Bahadur attended all the three round table conferences.

SECOND ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE (SEPTEMBER 1931- DECEMBER 1931)

- Second was held from 2nd September 1931 to December 1931 because of Gandhi- Irwin Pact 1931 (February)
- Lord Irwin had been replaced by Lord Willingdon as viceroy in India.

Key Participants

- Indian princely states represented by Maharajas, princes and divans.
- Indian National Congress (INC) – Mahatma Gandhi, Rangaswami Iyengar, Madan Mohan Malaviya
- Muslims – Md. Ali Jinnah, Aga Khan III, Muhammad Iqbal, etc.
- Hindus – M R Jayakar, etc.
- Depressed classes – Dr B R Ambedkar
- Women – Sarojini Naidu, etc.
- The session got deadlocked on the question of the minorities.
- Gandhi was not in support of separate electorates for depressed classes which was being demanded by B.R. Ambedkar.
- The government refused to concede the basic Indian demand of freedom.
- Gandhi returned to India on December 28, 1931.

THIRD ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE (NOVEMBER 1932- DECEMBER 1932)

- Third was between November and December 1932.
- The INC and the Labour Party decided not to attend it.

Key Participants

- **Indian princely states were represented by princes and divans.**
- **British Indians were represented by the Aga Khan (Muslims),**
- **Depressed classes**
- **Women, Europeans, Anglo-Indians, and Labour Groups.**
- **All were presided over by British PM Ramsey Macdonald**
- **The recommendations were published in a White Paper in March 1933.**
- **It was introduced and passed in the British parliament as the Government of India act of 1935.**

COMMUNAL AWARD -1932

- **In August 1932, PM Ramsay Mac Donald announced communal award providing separate communal electorate for the depressed classes.**
- **It was based on the findings of the Indian Franchise Committee (also called the Lothian Committee).**
- **B.R. Ambedkar strong advocate of separate electorate for backward classes.**
- **The congress decided neither to accept it nor to reject it.**
- **Finally in September 1932, a compromise was reached between Gandhi & Ambedkar through the signing of Poona Pact.**
- **Gandhi protested with fast unto death**
- **In September 1932, Poona pact was signed between caste Hindus and depressed classes**

POONA PACT (1932)

- **It was signed by B.R. Ambedkar & Madan Mohan Malaviya.**
- **Abandoned the idea of separate electorates for the depressed classes.**
- **Seats reserved for the depressed classes were increased from 71 to 147 in provincial legislatures & 18 per cent of the total in the Central Legislature.**
- **It was accepted by the government as an amendment to the Communal Award.**

GANDHI'S HARIJAN CAMPAIGN

- **He set up the All-India Anti-Untouchability League in September 1932.**
- **Started the weekly Harijan.**
- **In 1934 Mahatma Gandhi withdrew from active politics and even resigned his membership of the Congress because he wanted to devote himself fully to constructive programme and Harijan welfare.**

CONGRESS SOCIALIST PARTY

- **It was formed in 1934- Bombay Session of Congress.**
- **They continued to remain within the congress.**
- **It was formed with Acharya Narendra Deva as President and Jay Prakash Narayan as General Secretary**
- **The purpose of CSP was to transform INC gradually into Socialism.**

PROVINCIAL ELECTION OF 1937

- Provincial elections were held in British India in the winter of 1936-37 as mandated by the Government of India Act 1935.
- At the Lucknow Session (1936) congress decided to contest elections. (Presided by Jawaharlal Nehru).
- In February 1937 Elections were held in eleven provinces – Madras, Central Provinces, Bihar, Orissa, United Provinces, Bombay Presidency, Assam, NWFP, Bengal, Punjab and Sindh.
- Congress got absolute majority in 5 Provinces. They are United Provinces, Bihar, Madras, Central Provinces and Orissa and formed the government
- Congress became single largest party in 4 provinces. They are Bengal, Northwest Frontier Provinces, Assam and Bombay.
- Out of these provinces, Congress formed governments Northwest Frontier Provinces and Bombay with the support of regional parties
- In Assam Leader of the Assam Valley Muslim Party Muhammed Sadullah formed the government with Congress support
- The league participated in governments in Punjab and Bengal
- In Punjab Unionist Party leader Sikandar Hayat Khan formed government along with Muslim League
- In Bengal Krishak Party of Fazlul Haque formed the government with Muslim League
- In Sindh, two regional leaders Ghulam Hussain Hidayatullah and Allah Baksh formed governments between 1937-1947
- The All-India Muslim League failed to form the government in any province.
- The Congress ministries resigned in October and November 1939, in protest Viceroy Lord Linlithgow's action of declaring India to be a belligerent in the Second World War without consulting the Indian people.
- The Muslim League celebrated the resignation as 'Day of Deliverance' on 22 December 1939.

PAKISTAN RESOLUTION – LAHORE MARCH 1940

- In the Lahore session of Muslim League in 1940 Jinnah came out with the Two Nation Theory providing ideological basis for the demand of Pakistan.
- The resolution on Pakistan was passed on March 21, 1940
- It is called as Lahore Resolution
- On March 23, 1943, Pakistan Day was observed.

AUGUST OFFER 1940

- Viceroy Linlithgow made some offers if Indians support in WWII

Offers were:

- Dominion Status after war
- Constituent Assembly after war where mainly Indians would decide the constitution.

- Expansion of viceroy's executive council with majority of Indians.
- No future constitution to be adopted without the consent of minorities

Response

- Congress rejected the August Offer.
- "Dominion status concept is dead as a doornail." (Nehru)
- Muslim League repeated its position that partition was the only solution to the deadlock.

Significance of august offer

- First time inherent right of Indians to frame constitution recognized.
- Congress demand for a constituent assembly was conceded.
- Dominion status was explicitly offered.

INDIVIDUAL SATYAGRAHA -1940 OCTOBER

- Individual Satyagrah was the resultant of August offer.
- Vinobha Bhave was first to perform individual Satyagraha on behalf of INC.
- Jawaharlal Nehru was the second and Brahma Dutt was third individual satyagrahis
- The demand of the Satyagrahi was using freedom of Speech against the war through an anti-war declaration.
- If government did not arrest the Satyagrahi, he or she will move repeating it in villages and start march towards Delhi ("Delhi Chalo Movement").

CRIPPS MISSION PLAN (1942) BACKGROUND

- In 1942, British Prime Minister Winston Churchill announced the Cripps Mission Plan
- In March 1942, Cripps came to India and made the proposals just the same as August Offer
- Lord Linlithgow was the viceroy of India

MAIN PROVISIONS OF CRIPPS MISSION

- Setting up of an Indian Union with Dominion Status.
- Indian union wd be free to decide its relationship with commonwealth & free to participate in international bodies.
- A constituent assembly after the war
- Members of constituent assembly partly elected & partly nominated.
- Any province not willing to join the Union can have separate constitution and separate province.
- New constitution making body and the British government would negotiate a treaty to affect the transfer of power and to safeguard racial and religious minorities.
- In the meantime, defense of India would remain in British hands and the governor-general's powers would remain intact.
- Nehru and Maulana Azad were the official negotiators for the Congress.
- Gandhi called it post-dated cheque in a crashing bank

SIGNIFICANCE OF CRIPPS MISSION

- Concrete plan for constitution
- Constitution making now solely in the hands of Indians.
- Blueprint for partition

- Power largely in the hands of Indians.
- Free India can decide upon membership in commonwealth

CRIPPS MISSION OPPOSED BY

- Muslim League
- Congress
- Sikhs
- Hindu Mahasabha
- Depressed Classes
- Liberals

QUIT INDIA MOVEMENT

- Also known as the **India August Movement** or **August Kranti**.
- In the **Congress Working Committee** met in **Bombay** in **August 1942**, **Gandhi** drafted **Quit India Resolution**
- In **Quit India Speech** delivered by **Mahatma Gandhi** in **Bombay**, the slogan of **Quit India movement** **DO OR DIE** was declared
- The **immediate cause** of the **Quit India movement** was the **collapse of Cripps Mission**.
- The movement demanded an **immediate end to British rule in India**
- **August 9, 1942**- all the important leaders of Congress was arrested.
- So, it was a **leaderless movement**.

COURSE OF QUIT INDIA MOVEMENT

- **Aruna Asaf Ali (Grand Old Lady of Independence Movement)** presided over the Congress committee session on **August 9** and hoisted the flag.
- **Usha Mehta** started an **underground radio in Bombay**.
- **Parallel governments** were organised in different parts like in **Ballia (U.P)** under **Chittu Pandey**, **Tamluk (Jatiya Sarkar-WB)**, **Satara** named "**Prati Sarkar**", was organised under leaders like **Y.B. Chavan**, **Nana Patil**.
- **QIM** was not supported by **Communists**, **Hindu Mahasabha**, **Muslim League**.

SUBASH CHANDRA BOSE

- He along with **Jawaharlal Nehru** opposed the **Motilal Nehru Report**.
- Fully active in the **salt satyagraha movement (1930)**.
- Against the suspension of the **civil disobedience movement** and the **signing of the Gandhi-Irwin pact** in **1931**.
- Bose was elected as the **president of 1938 Haripura session of INC** and decided to **contest for second time** in the **1939 Tripuri session**
- **Bose defeated Gandhi's candidate Pattabi Sitaramiah** (The author of the book **The History of Congress**) and became **second time president of INC** in **Tripuri Session 1939**.
- In the wake of **World War II (1939-1945)**, Bose wanted to start a **mass movement** at this time.

- Gandhi objected it based on ethics. According to him, enemy could not be attacked when he is weak.
- **Due to difference of opinion Subash Bose resigned from the president's post in April 1939.**
- This led to the **election of Rajendra Prasad as president of the Congress.**
- **Subash Chandra Bose founded Forward Block Party in 1939 at Makur, Unnao as a new party within the Congress.**
- With the help of Hitler, the **'Freedom Army' (Mukti Sena)** was formed which consisted of **all the prisoners of war of Indian origin captured by Germany and Italy.**
- **Bose came to be called 'Netaji' by the people of Germany.**
- He gave the famous slogan, **'Jai Hind' from the Free India Centre, (European Branch of Azad Hind) Germany.**

INDIAN NATIONAL ARMY

FIRST PHASE

- **INA army was originally formed by Mohan Singh, Indian officer of British Indian Army.**
- **Japan helped the Mohan Singh to form Indian National Army by handing over Prisoners of War.**
- **Because of difference between Mohan Singh & Japan he was taken into custody by Japan.**

SECOND PHASE

- The second phase began with **the arrival of Subhash Bose in Singapore.**
- He came to Singapore in **July 1943 where he was assisted by Rashbehari Bose and others.**
- After Bose has taken over the charge of INA, he changed the name into **Azad Hind Fauj**
- **He divided it to four regiments: Mahatma, Azad, Jawahar and Netaji**
- **A women's regiment called rani Jhansi regiment was formed.**
- The **chief commanders of INA** were captain **Shahnawaz Khan, Prem Sehgal, Captain Dhillon and Captain Laxmi**
- In **October 1943, INA founded first provisional government of free India at Singapore.**
- The government was named as **Azad Hind Government.**
- In the provisional government, **HC Chatterjee was finance minister, MA aiyar was broadcasting minister and captain Lakashmi Sehgal was the women's minister.**
- During this time, he has given the famous quote **"Give me blood, I will give you freedom"**
- **On July 6, 1944, Subhas Bose addressed Mahatma Gandhi as 'Father of Nation'—from the Azad Hind Radio (the first person to call Gandhi, 'Father of Nation').**
- **INA Battallion under Shahnawaz Khan made the notorious Imphal campaign(1944) with the support of Japanese Army but failed due to sudden retreat of Japan .**

- **INA flag for the first time was hoisted on the Indian mainland at Moirang, in Manipur (where the INA Memorial Complex stands today).**
- **On August 15, 1945, the surrender of Japan in the Second World War took place and with this the INA also surrendered.**
- **There is no information about Subash Bose after August 18, 1945**
- **He is suspected to be died mysteriously in an air crash at Taipei (Taiwan)**

INA TRIALS

- INA commanders were brought back to India.
- INA trials were held in the Red Fort
- **First Trial -1945- November @ Red Fort -Colonel Prem Sahgal, Colonel Gurubaksh Singh Dhillon, Major General Shah Nawaz Khan.**
- **Congress constituted a defense council under Bhulabhai Desai, Asaf Ali, Jawaharlal Nehru, Tej Bahadur Sapru and Kailash Nath Katju for INA prisoners.**
- **INA day (November 12, 1945)&INA week (November 5-11) was observed by Congress**
- **Supporters of INA Movement -Muslim League, Communist Party, Unionists, Akalis, Justice Party, Ahrars in Rawalpindi, Rashtriya Swayamsevak Sangh, Hindu Mahasabha and the Sikh League.**

ROYAL INDIAN NAVY MUTINY FEBRUARY 1946

- **On February 18, 1946, some 1100 Royal Indian Navy (RIN) ratings of HMIS Talwar went on a strike to protest British.**
- **Reason: Racial discrimination, inedible food, Abuse by superior officers, INA trials.**
- **The ships hoisted three flags which were tied together those of the Congress, Muslim League, and the Red Flag of the Communist Party of India (CPI).**
- **There were strikes by the royal Indian air force in Bombay, Poona, Calcutta, Jessore and Ambala.**
- **Patel and Jinnah persuaded the ratings to surrender on February 23 with an assurance that national parties would prevent any victimization.**
- **It is considered as the last act of protest in India's freedom struggle.**

1. Aruna Asaf Ali was one of the prominent organisers of the underground activities during the (2021)

- (a) Civil Disobedience Movement
- (b) Quit India Movement**
- (c) Swadeshi Movement
- (d) Temple Entry Movement

2. Which freedom fighter earned the sobriquet 'the Nightingale of India'? (2021)

- (a) Annie Besant
- (b) Pushpalata Das.
- (c) Sarojini Naidu.**
- (d) Vijaya Lakshmi Pandit.

3. Gandhi-Irwin Pact was signed in the year (2020)

- (a) 1931**

- (b) 1925
(c) 1929
(d) 1932
- 4. During the freedom struggle, Aruna Asaf Ali was a major woman organizer of underground activities in (2016)**
(a) Civil disobedience movement
(b) Swadeshi movement
(c) Non-cooperation movement
(d) **Quit India movement**
- 5. After which incident, Mahatma Gandhi had called Non-cooperation Movement as his Himalayan blunder? (2016)**
(a) Kheda Satyagraha
(b) **Chauri-Chaura**
(c) Nagpur Satyagraha
(d) Rajkot Satyagraha
- 6. Who among the following organized a march on the Tanjore Coast to break the Salt Law in April, 1930? (2016)**
(a) V.O.Chidambaram
(b) K.Kamraj
(c) Annie Besant
(d) **C. Rajagopalachari**
- 7. In the 'Individual Satyagraha', Vinoba Bhave was chosen as the first Satyagrahi. Who was the second? (2016)**
(a) Dr Rajendra Prasad
(b) C. Rajagopalachari
(c) **Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru**
(d) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
- 8. Who was the Viceroy of India at the time of Jallianwala Bagh Massacre? (2016)**
(a) Lord Irwin
(b) **Lord Chelmsford**
(c) Lord Hardinge
(d) Lord Curzon
- 9. In 1930, Mahatma Gandhi started Civil Disobedience movement from (2016)**
(a) Sevagram
(b) Dandi
(c) Wardha
(d) **Sabarmati**
- 10. Which one of the following aroused a wave of popular indignation that led to the massacre by the British at Jallianwala Bagh? (2016)**
(a) **The Arms Act**

- (b) The Public Safety Act
- (c) The Vernacular Press Act
- (d) The Rowlatt Act**

11. Which party was founded by Subhas Chandra Bose in the year 1939 after he broke away from the Congress? (2016)

- (a) Azad Hind Fauz
- (b) Indian Freedom Party
- (c) Revolution party
- (d) Forward bloc**

12. The Civil Disobedience movement led to signing of a Pact in 1931. The Pact was signed between Mahatma Gandhi and (2015)

- (a) Lord Curzon
- (b) Lord Wellington
- (c) Lord Irwin**
- (d) Lord Mountbatten

13. Which one of the following began with the Dandi march? (2015)

- (a) Home Rule movement
- (b) Non-cooperation movement
- (c) Quit India movement
- (d) Civil Disobedience movement**

14. Who was the Viceroy of India at the time of Jallianwala Bagh Movement? (2015)

- (a) Lord Irwin
- (b) Lord Chelmsford**
- (c) Lord Hardinge
- (d) Lord Curzon

15. The first-round table conference was held in London in (2014)

- (a) November 1930**
- (b) March 1919
- (c) August 1942
- (d) October 1939

16. Which one of the following statements is NOT correct? (2013)

- (a) Civil Disobedience Movement was started based on the issue of salt
- (b) Dandi March was started from Gandhiji's Ashram at Wardha**
- (c) Gandhi violated the Salt Laws on April 6, 1930
- (d) Salt March was widely covered by the European and American press

17. 'Purna Swaraj' resolution of the congress was adopted on (2011)

- (a) 26th January, 1930**
- (b) 26th January, 1931
- (c) 26th January, 1929
- (d) 26th January, 1932

18) Which of the following events can be ascribed to the year 1919? (2011)

- (a) Jallianwala Bagh Massacre**
- (b) Partition of Bengal
- (c) Permanent settlement of Bengal
- (d) Subsidiary Alliance

19) 'Do or die' was the slogan during (2011)

- (a) The Swadeshi movement
- (b) The Non-cooperation movement
- (c) The Civil disobedience movement
- (d) The Quit India movement**

20) Indian National Army was headed by (2011)

- (a) Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose**
- (b) General Cariappa
- (c) A. G. Khan
- (d) M. N. Roy

21) M. K. Gandhi took the leadership of the National Movement in (2006)

- (a) 1919-20**
- (b) 1920-21
- (c) 1930-31
- (d) 1910-11

22) The 'Quit India' resolution was passed by the Congress in Bombay in (2001)

- (a) 1942**
- (b) 1943
- (c) 1944
- (d) 1945

23) Gandhiji called off the Non-Co-operation Movement because of a violent incident at (2001)

- (a) Bardoli
- (b) Dandi
- (c) Chauri Chaura**
- (d) Ahmedabad

24) The slogan 'Jai Hind' was coined by (2001)

- (a) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
- (b) Subhas Chandra Bose**
- (c) Bipin Chandra Paul
- (d) Lala Lajpat Rai

25) The principle of communal representation in India was first introduced by (1998)

- (a) The Indian councils act, 1861
- (b) The Indian councils act, 1892
- (c) The Indian councils act, 1909**

CHAPTER 12-PARTITION OF INDIA

C R FORMULA /RAJAGOPALACHARI FORMULA -1944

- It was prepared by **C. Rajagopalachari or Rajaji to realize League- Congress cooperation**
- The formula was supported by **Mahatma Gandhi**
- It demanded **Muslim League to cooperate with Congress** in forming a provisional government at center till the end of second World War
- After the end of the war, a **plebiscite by entire population in Muslim majority provinces of India would be conducted for deciding the issue of Pakistan.**
- **If plebiscite favors Pakistan, Pakistan would be granted**
- **If Pakistan becomes reality, there will be joint control of India and Pakistan on commerce, communication, and Defense**
- **Jinnah wanted congress to accept the two-nation theory.**

DESAI LIAQAT PACT 1945

- **Bulabhai Desai**, leader of Congress in central legislative assembly met **Liaqat Ali Khan**, the deputy leader of Muslim League in the central assembly to sort out the deadlock in forming the government
- **They came up with following proposal for forming interim government**
 1. **Equal number of members to be nominated by Congress and League in the central assembly**
 2. **20 percent reserved seats for minorities**
- **No settlement was finalized between Congress and League on this pact.**

WAVELL PLAN 1945

- In **June 1945 (after the end of war in Europe)**, **Wavell (1944-1947)**, Governor General organized a **conference in Shimla** as per the suggestion of **British Government under Churchill**
- As the **election was going to be held in England in this year**, **Churchill** wanted to solve the freedom of India

IMPORTANT PROVISIONS

- **All members in the central executive council except Governor General and Commander in Chief would be Indians.**
- **Caste Hindus and Muslims were to have equal representation.**
- **Governor general can exercise his veto power only on the advice of ministers.**
- **The reconstructed council was to function as an interim government** within the framework of the 1935 Act (i.e., not responsible to the Central Assembly).
- **Representatives of different parties were to submit a joint list to the viceroy for nominations to the executive council.**
- **If a joint list was not possible, then separate lists were to be submitted.**

- In the Shimla conference Congress was represented by Nehru and League was represented by Jinnah.
- The conference was a failure because the League and the Congress could not settle their differences.

ELECTION IN BRITAIN

- In 1945, Elections were held in Britain after World War II
- Conservative party under Churchill lost the election
- Labour party under Clement Attlee came to power
- Pethick Lawrence was the Secretary of State

ELECTION RESULTS 1945

- In India, Congress was victorious in the elections
- Congress formed government in 8 provinces and League in Sindh and Bengal
- In Punjab a Unionist-Congress-Akalis coalition assumed power under Khizer Hayat Khan
- Congress secured 59 out of 102 seats in Central Legislative Assembly.
- Muslim League got 86.6 per cent of the Muslim votes.
- Muslim League got 30 reserved seats in Central Assembly.
- Unlike in 1937, now the League clearly established itself as the dominant party among Muslims.

CABINET MISSION PLAN- MARCH 1946

- PM Attlee sent a mission to solve the problems in India
- Attlee had made the statement “Minority will not be allowed to place a veto on the progress of the majority.”
- AV Alexander, Pethick Lawrence and Sir Stafford Cripps were the members of the mission.
- British wanted a united India as it will bring an active partner in commonwealth defense
- It conducted prolonged discussion with Indian leaders on interim government and new constitution of India

CABINET MISSION PLAN- SUGGESTIONS

- Union Government of India to be constituted
- It rejected the idea of Pakistan as a separate State for Muslims
- Centre with limited subjects of power: Defense, currency, and communication
- Provinces with Complete Autonomy
- Made all the states into 3 Groups
 - **Group A:** Madras, Bombay, Central Provinces, United Provinces, Bihar and Orissa (Hindu Majority Regions)
 - **Group B:** Punjab, Sindh and NWFP (Muslim Majority)
 - **Group C:** Bengal and Assam (Muslim Majority Provinces)
- Three tier executive and legislature at provincial and Union levels
- A Constituent Assembly to be elected by provincial assemblies by proportional representation (Voting in three groups: General, Muslims and Sikhs).
- This constituent assembly had 389 members

- In the constituent assembly, members from groups A, B and C were to sit separately to decide constitution for provinces
- They will sit together to discuss Union Constitution
- A common center would control defense, communication, and external affairs
- Communal questions in the central legislature were to be decided by a simple majority of both communities present and voting
- Provinces were to have full autonomy and residual powers
- After the first general elections, a province was to be free to come out of a group and after 10 years a province was to be free to call for reconsideration of the group or union constitution
- Princely states were no longer to be under paramountcy of the British government.
- They would be free to enter into an arrangement with successor governments or the British government.
- Meanwhile, an interim government was to be formed from the constituent assembly.

CABINET MISSION PLAN- RESPONSE

- Both Congress and Muslim League accepted these recommendations initially
- Congress was against making groups compulsory and League was in favour of that.
- The Mission later clarified that the grouping was compulsory.
- In July 1946, elections were held to constituent assembly (Congress; 205 and **League: 73**) as per the guidelines of the cabinet mission plan
- On July 29, 1946, Muslim League rejected the cabinet mission plan
- August 16, 1946, was observed as Direct-Action Day for Pakistan by ML.

INTERIM GOVERNMENT 1946

- In September 1946 Wavell formed interim government with himself as president, and Nehru as vice President and Patel was home minister.
- Wavell quietly brought the Muslim League into the Interim Government on October 26, 1946.
- Interim Government was little more than a continuation of the old executive of the viceroy.
- When League joined ministry in October 1946, Liaqat Ali was given finance ministry.
- Later, Liaqat Ali started creating troubles for other ministries
- On December 9, 1946, constituent assembly met for first time under the chairmanship of Dr. **Sachidananda** Sinha.
- Elected Rajendra Prasad as president of constituent assembly and **Ambedkar** as the chairman of drafting committee.
- Muslim League boycotted this meeting

ATTLEE'S STATEMENT 1947

- The Prime Minister of Britain Clement Atlee declared on February 20, 1947, in the House of Commons that the British would quit India after transferring power into the responsible hand not later than June 1948.

- Mountbatten will replace Wavell.

PLAN BALKAN 1947

- In March 1947, Mountbatten became viceroy of India with a mandate to oversee the British withdrawal.
- Mountbatten decided that the Cabinet Mission Plan had become untenable and formulated an alternative plan.
- This plan envisaged the transfer of power to separate provinces with Punjab and Bengal given the option to vote for partition of their provinces.
- The partitioned units thus formed will have the choice to join India or Pakistan or remaining independent. This plan was called the 'Dickie Bird Plan'.
- Nehru opposed it saying it would lead to Balkanisation of the country. Hence, this plan was also called Plan Balkan.
- Then Mountbatten came with last plan for Independence on June 3 which is also called as Mountbatten Plan.

MOUNT BATTEN PLAN -1947- JUNE 3

- Punjab and Bengal Legislative Assemblies would meet in two groups, Hindus and Muslims, to vote for partition.
- If a simple majority of either group voted for partition, then these provinces would be partitioned.
- In case of partition, two dominions and two constituent assemblies would be created.
- Sindh would take its own decision.
- Referendums in NWFP and Sylhet district of Bengal would decide the fate of these areas
- Boundary Commission was headed Radcliffe. Hence, the boundary between India and Pakistan is known as Radcliffe line
- In July, British parliament passed Indian independence Act, 1947 fixing the deadline for transfer of power as August 15.
- Indian Independence Act was approved by the British parliament on July 18.
- It also provided 2 governor generals for India and Pakistan
- Mountbatten continued as the Governor General of free India till March 1948
- The princely states were given the choice to accede to India or Pakistan.
- Rajaji was first Indian governor general of free India and Jinnah became that of Pakistan
- Liaqat Ali became first PM of Pakistan
- The Man Who Divided India is a book written by Congress leader Rafiq Zakaria on Jinnah.
- The immediate transfer of power based on grant of dominion status (with a right of secession) was based on the suggestion of V.P. Menon.

1. The boundary demarcation between India and Pakistan came into force on 17th August 1947. Which line divides these two countries? (2021)

(a) Durand line

- (b) **Radcliffeline**
 (c) McMahonline
 (d) Gilbertline
- 2) **The Radcliffe committee was appointed to (2016)**
 (a) Solve the problem of minorities in India
 (b) Give effect to the independence Bill
 (c) **Delimit the boundaries between India and Pakistan**
 (d) Enquire into the riots in East Bengal
- 3) **The Balkan Plan for fragmentation of India was mooted by (2013)**
 (a) W. Churchill
 (b) M.A. Jinnah
 (c) **Lord Mountbatten**
 (d) V.P. Menon
- 4) **Who was NOT a member of the Cabinet Mission? (1998)**
 (a) Lord Pettick Lawrence
 (b) Sir Stafford Cripps
 (c) A V Alexander
 (d) **Lord Wavell**
- 5) **Who said, 'minority cannot be allowed to veto the political progress of the majority'? (1998)**
 (a) **Attlee**
 (b) A V Alexander
 (c) Cripps
 (d) President Wilson

CHAPTER 13- REVOLUTIONARY ACTIVITIES

REVOLUTIONARY ACTIVITIES FIRST PHASE

BENGAL PRESIDENCY

- **Anushilan Samiti was the first revolutionary organization in Bengal**
- Leaders were **Barindra Kumar Ghosh, Bhupendranath Dutta, Prafulla Chaki, Kudiram Bose and Pramotarak Mitra**
- **Barindra Kumar Ghosh and Bhupendranath Dutta** started the weekly newspaper "**Yugantar**" (1906)
- **Alipore Conspiracy Case (1908)**-It is called as **Manicktolla bomb conspiracy** or **Muraripukur conspiracy**. The member of Samiti **Prafulla Chaki and Kudiram Bose** were arrested as they attempted on the life of **Kingsford (District Magistrate of Muzaffarpur)**.

- **Barrah Dacoity :** In 1908, Barrah dacoity was organised by Dacca Anushilan under Pulin Das to raise funds for revolutionary activities.

BOMBAY PRESIDENCY

RAMOSI PEASANT FORCE

- First of all, revolutionary activity in Maharashtra.
- Organised by **Vasudev Balwant Phadke** in 1879.
- To rid the country of the British by instigating an armed revolt by disrupting communication lines.

CHAPEAKAR BROTHERS (1897)

- First revolutionary activity in India was assassination of 2 British officers Ayerst and WC Rand (The British plague commissioner) by Chapeakar Brothers (Balakrishna Hari Chapeakar, Damodar Hari Chapeakar and Vasudeo Hari Chapeakar)
- The reason was their indifference during the Plague operations

ABHINAV BHARAT SOCIETY

- In 1899, Savarkar Brothers (Vinayak and Ganesh Savarkar) founded Abhinav Bharat Society (1st Revolutionary Organization in India).
- Original name was Mitra Mela, and the name was changed in 1904.
- A. M. T. Jackson, the district magistrate of Nasik, was assassinated in India by Anant Laxman Kanhare in 1909 in the historic "Nasik Conspiracy Case."
- Vinayak Savarkar was charged in the Jackson murder.

UNITED PROVINCES

- In 1912, Rashbehari Bose attempted on the life of Viceroy Hardinge II when he was entering the new capital city Delhi.
- The Viceroy, upon whom a bomb was thrown but he did not change his attitude towards the Indian was Lord Hardinge.

REVOLUTIONARY ACTIVITIES ABROAD ‘

INDIAN HOME RULE SOCIETY/ INDIA HOUSE

- Started by **Shyamji Krishnavarma** in London in 1915.
- Started the journal **The Indian Sociologist**.

MADAM BHIKAJI CAMA

- **BR Cama (Mother of Indian Revolution)** started Vande Mataram movement in Paris
- She also founded the journal **Vande Mataram**
- She was first to hoist national flag outside India (In Germany) in August 21, 1907, at an International Socialist Conference at Stuttgart, a city in Germany.
- She is called as the “Mother of the Indian Revolution”

BERLIN COMMITTEE FOR INDEPENDENCE

- Established in 1915 by **Virendra Nath Chattopadhyay, Bhupendra Nath Dutta, Lala Hardayal** and others.

GADHAR PARTY

- In 1913, Sohan Singh Bhakna, Kartar Singh Sarabha, Abdul Hafiz Mohamed Barakatullah, Rashbehari Bose and Gulab Kaur, and Lala Hansraj, founded **Gadhar party** at San Francisco in the US
- However, **Lal Hardyal** was the main ‘brain’ behind the organisation
- The party also published the weekly paper “**The Ghadar**”.
- The first issue of **The Ghadar**, was published from San Francisco on **November 1, 1913**
- **Rashbehari Bose** of **Gadhar party** founded **Indian Independence League** in Tokyo and mobilized resources for **INA**
- **Famous Komagatamaru Incident** was associated **Gadhar Party**.

KOMAGATAMARU INCIDENT 1914

- **Komagata Maru** was the name of a ship which was carrying **370 passengers**, mainly **Sikh and Punjabi Muslim** to **Vancouver**.
- They were turned back by **Canadian authorities**.
- The ship finally anchored at **Calcutta** in **September 1914**.
- The inmates refused to board the **Punjab bound train**.
- In the ensuing conflict with the police at **Budge Budge near Calcutta**, **22 persons died**.
- Inflamed by **Komagata Incident** and with the outbreak of the **First World War** **Ghadr** leaders decided to **launch a violent attack to oust British rule in India**.
- **Ghadrites** fixed **February 21, 1915**, as the date for an armed revolt in **Ferozepur, Lahore and Rawalpindi garrisons**.
- **But the plan was failed, and the authorities took immediate action, aided by the Defence of India Rules, 1915.**
- **1915 Lahore Conspiracy Case trial** or **First Lahore Conspiracy Case** was a series of trials held in **Lahore** and in the **United States**, in the aftermath of the failed **Ghadar conspiracy** from **26 April to 13 September 1915**.
- **Vishnu Ganesh Pingle** was an **Indian revolutionary** and a member of the **Ghadar Party** who was one of those executed in 1915 following the **Lahore conspiracy trial** for his role in the **Ghadar conspiracy**.

REVOULIONARY PHASE SECOND PHASE

HINDUSTAN REPUBLICAN ASSOCIATION

- It was founded in **October 1924** in **Kanpur**.
- By **Ramprasad Bismil, Jogesh Chandra Chatterjee and Sachin Sanyal**.
- On **9th August 1925**, **Ram Prasad Bismal** and **Ashwaquallah Khan** of the party conducted **Kakori Train Robbery (In the train from Saharanpur to Lucknow)**

HINDUSTAN REPUBLICAN ASSOCIATION 1928

- Inspired by **socialist ideas** **HRA** was reorganized at a meeting held in **Ferozshah Kotla** in **Delhi (September 1928)**.

- Under the leadership of Chandra Shekhar Azad, the name of HRA was changed to Hindustan Socialist Republican Association.
- Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev, Bhagwaticharan Vohra from Punjab and Bejoy Kumar Sinha, Shiv Verma and Jaidev Kapur from the United Provinces.
- In 1927, Bhagat Singh and Rajguru killed Saunders (Who lathi charged Lala Lajpat Rai to death)
- However, their original target was not Saunders but superintendent of police James Scott who ordered to lathi-charge Lala Lajpat Rai.
- In 1929, Bhagat Singh, Rajguru, Bathukeshwar Dutt and Vijay Kumar hurled Bombs at Central Legislative Assembly in protest against Public Safety Bill and Indian Trade Disputes Bill.
- The trade dispute debated in the Central Legislative Assembly when Bhagat Singh threw a bomb in Central Legislative Assembly in 1929
- Bhagat Singh, Rajguru and Sukhdev were executed on 23rd March 1931 in the Lahore jail.

BHAGAT SINGH

- Punjab Naujawan Bharat Sabha (1926)- open wing of revolutionaries to carry out political work among the youth, peasants and workers, and it was to open branches in villages.
- Bhagat and Sukhdev also organised the Lahore Students' Union for open, legal work among students.
- Bhagat Singh wrote: Why I am an atheist?
- The slogan 'Inquilab Zindabad' was first raised by Bhagat Singh.

CHITTAGONG ARMOURY RAID (APRIL 1930)

- Surya Sen led the Chittagong armoury attack on April 18, 1930.

REVOLUTIONARY WOMEN IN SECOND PHASE

- Pritilata Waddadar – Joined with Surya Sen.
- Kalpana Dutt who was arrested and tried along with Surya Sen.
- Bina Das who fired point blank at the governor while receiving her degree at the convocation (February 1932)

NEWSPAPER AND JOURNALS ASSOCIATED

- Sandhya (1906) by Brahmabandhab Upadhyay in Bengal.
- Kal (1906) in Maharashtra- Shivram Mahadev Paranjape
- Bharat Mata – Journal Published by Ajit Singh
- Philosophy of Bomb- Bhagwaticharan Vohra
- Free Hindustan by Taraknath Das from Vancouver.
- Bandi Jivan by Sachindranath Sanyal in Bengal.

1) The slogan 'Inquilab Zindabad' was first raised by (2016)

- (a) Lokmanya Bal Gangadhar Tilak
- (b) Chandra Shekhar Azad
- (c) Veer Savarkar
- (d) Bhagat Singh

2) Who was called the 'Mother of the Indian Revolution'? (2016)

- (a) Kasturba Gandhi
- (b) Kamala Nehru
- (c) Sarojini Naidu
- (d) **Bhikaji Cama**

3) A woman revolutionary who while receiving her degree at the convocation at the University of Calcutta from the Governor of Bengal shot him was (2016)

- (a) Kalpana Dutta
- (b) **Bina das**
- (c) Pritilata Waddadar
- (d) Leela Nag

4) The Viceroy, upon whom a bomb was thrown but he did not change his attitude towards the Indian was (2016)

- (a) **Lord Hardinge**
- (b) Warren Hastings
- (c) Lord Curzon
- (d) Lord Chelmsford

5) Against whom of the following was the Lahore Conspiracy Case registered during the Indian freedom struggle? (2016)

- (a) Lala Har Dayal
- (b) Lala Lajpat Rai
- (c) Vinayak Damodar Savarkar
- (d) **Vishnu Ganesh Pingle**

6) The slogan 'Inquilab Zindabad' was given by (2011)

- (a) Chandrasekhar Azad
- (b) Muhammad Iqbal
- (c) **Bhagat Singh**
- (d) Mahatma Gandhi

7) Who first expressed the slogan 'Inquilab Zindabad'? (2001)

- (a) **Shaheed Bhagat Singh**
- (b) Udham Singh
- (c) Zail Singh
- (d) Karan Singh

8) Which bill was being debated in the Central Legislative Assembly when Bhagat Singh threw a bomb in Central Legislative Assembly in 1929? (1998)

- (a) **Trade Disputes Bill**
- (b) Public Safety Bill
- (c) Ilbert Bill
- (d) None of the above

CHAPTER 14-EDUCATION UNDER THE BRITISH

UNDER COMPANY RULE

- **Calcutta Madrasah** was established by **Warren Hastings** in **1781** for the **study of Muslim law and related subjects**.
- **Sanskrit College** was established by **Jonathan Duncan**, the resident, at **Benaras** in **1791** for study of **Hindu law and philosophy**. (Cornwallis)
- **Fort William College** was set up by **Wellesley** in **1800** for **training of civil servants of the Company** in languages and customs of Indians.

CHARTER ACT OF 1813

- **Act directed the Company to sanction one lakh rupees annually** for promoting education.
- **First instance that the BEIC company acknowledged for the education.**
- **With the efforts of RRMV Calcutta College set up in 1817 for imparting Education in Western humanities and sciences.**

GENERAL COMMITTEE OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION 1823

- **It was formed to guide the company on the matter of education.**
- **The general committee of public instruction had two groups viz. Orientalists and Anglicists on the issue of the development of education of India.**
- **1834 became the Macaulay President of the General Committee of Public Instruction (GCPI).**

MACAULAY'S MINUTE (1835)

- **Teaching of western sciences and literature through the medium of English language alone.**
- **Opened a few English schools and colleges instead of many elementary schools, thus neglecting mass education.**
- **Creating a class "Indian in blood and color but English in tastes, in opinions, in morals and in intellect"**
- **The policy was to create education system that benefits only upper strata of the society.**
- **In the course of time education would trickle down to masses. This was called the Infiltration theory.**
- **Accepted by Lord William Bentinck.**
- **Macaulay's proposals were officially sanctioned in March 1835.**
- **English Education act was passed in 1835 which made English language the medium of instruction in India as per decision of William Bentinck, and funds were allocated to the British East India Company to spend on Education and Literature in India**

WOOD'S DESPATCH (1854)

- **Prepared by Charles Wood during the Governship of Dalhousie**
- **First comprehensive plan for the spread of education in India.**
- **"Magna Carta of English Education in India".**
- **It states that spreading of education to masses is the responsibility of Government of India.**
- **Repudiated Downward Filtration Theory.**
- **Every district should have at least one government school.**

- English as the medium of instruction for higher studies and vernaculars at school level.
- **Stress on female and vocational education, and on teachers' training.**
- Laid down that the education imparted in government institutions should be secular
- **Recommended a system of grants-in-aid to encourage private enterprise.**
- It recommended hierarchy of education levels -vernacular primary schools in villages at bottom, followed by Anglo-Vernacular High Schools and an affiliated college at the district level, and affiliating universities in the presidency towns of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras.

EDUCATION DEVELOPMENTS

- 1857, universities at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras were set up.
- Bethune School founded by J.E.D. Bethune at Calcutta (1849).
- Agriculture Institute at Pusa (Bihar) in 1905
- Engineering Institute at Roorkee (Uttarakhand) in 1847

INDIAN UNIVERSITIES ACT 1904

- 1902, Raleigh Commission was set up to go into conditions and prospects of universities in India and to suggest measures for improvement in their constitution and working.
- Indian Universities Act was passed in 1904 during the reign of Curzon.
- Universities were to give more attention to study and research.
- The number of fellows of a university and their period in office were reduced and most fellows were to be nominated by the government;
- Five lakh rupees were to be sanctioned per annum for five years for improvement of higher education and universities.
- Government will have more control over universities for ensuring quality and efficiency.
- Gokhale called it a “retrograde measure”.

WARDHA SCHEME OF BASIC EDUCATION (1937)

- The Congress had organised a National Conference on Education in October 1937 in Wardha.
- Zakir Hussain committee formulated a detailed national scheme for basic education.
- The main principle behind this scheme was ‘learning through activity’.
- It was based on Gandhi's ideas published in a series of articles in the weekly Harijan.

OTHER COMMITTEES ON EDUCATION

- Hunter Education Commission (1882-83)
- Saddler University Commission (1917-19)
- Hartog Committee (1925)
- Sergeant Plan of Education (1944)

1)The ‘English Education Act’ made English language the medium of instruction in India as per decision of William Bentinck, and funds were allocated to the British East India Company to spend on Education and Literature in India. When was this Act passed? (2021)

(a) 1835

(b) 1838

(c) 1840

(d) 1842

2) English medium education would create 'a class of persons Indian in blood and colour, but English in taste, in opinions, in morals and intellect, "This was opined in 1835, by (2006)

(a) William Bentinck

(b) Davis Hare

(c) Raja Rammohan Roy

(d) Thomas Babington Macaulay

15-PEASANT MOVEMENTS 1857-1947

PEASANT REVOLT CAUSE	LEADER OR NATURE	IMPACT/ ASSOCIATED FACTS
<u>INDIGO REVOLT (1859-60)</u> <u>BENGAL</u> -Peasants were forced to cultivate indigo on their land instead of the more paying crops like rice.	Digambar Biswas and Bishnu Biswas of Nadia district Neel Darpan was a Bengali play written by Dinabandhu Mitra in 1858–1859.	Government appointed an indigo commission Notification in November 1860 that the riots could not be compelled to grow indigo
<u>PABNA AGARIAN LEAGUE (BENGAL)</u> 1870s and 1880s agrarian unrest caused by oppressive practices of the zamindars . Peasants of yusuf shahi pargana in pabna district formed an agrarian league	Bankim Chandra Chatterjee, R.C. Dutt and the Indian Association under Surendranath Banerjee supported the movement.	1885- The Bengal Tenancy Act was passed. The act clearly identified the rights of zamindar lords and the peasants or the tenants who were working on the land.
<u>DECCAN RIOTS (1875)</u> -Heavy taxation under the Ryotwari system.	Modern Intelligentsia of Maharashtra supported the Movement. (Poona Sarvajanik Sabha)	Deccan Agriculturists Relief Act was passed in 1879. The Act provided that farmers cd not be arrested & imprisoned if they are unable to pay debts .
<u>United Provinces Kisan Sabha</u>	Set up in February 1918 by Gauri Shankar Mishra and Indra Narayan Dwivedi .	Madan Mohan Malaviya supported their efforts Prominent Leaders: Jhinguri Singh, Durgapal

		Singh and Baba Ramchandra
<u>Eka Movement (1921)- United Provinces</u>	Leader: Madari Pasi	A symbolic unity meeting was held called as Eka or the Unity Movement. March 1922- suppressed.
<u>Mappila Revolt (1921)-Kerala -</u> The Mappilas were the Muslim tenants inhabiting the Malabar region where most of the landlords were Hindus. Mappilas had expressed their resentment against the oppression of the landlords.	The leaders of the Khilafat-Non-Cooperation Movement like Gandhi, Shaukat Ali and Maulana Azad addressed Mappila meetings. Main Leaders Variyamkunnath Kunjahammed Haji & Ali Musaliar.	By the end of the year, 1921 the rebellion was crushed by the British who had raised a special battalion, the Malabar Special Force for the riot. Wagon Tragedy- In November 1921, 67 Moplah prisoners were killed when they were being transported in a closed freight wagon from Tirur(Kerala) to the Central Prison in Podanur (Tamil Nadu). They died of suffocation.
<u>BARDOLI SATYAGRAHA (SURAT)-January 1926</u> Reason:authorities' decision to increase the land revenue by 30 per cent.	Vallabhbhai Patel led the movement. The women of Bardoli gave him the title of "Sardar".	K.M. Munshi and Lalji Naranji resigned from the Bombay Legislative Council in support of the movement. Gandhi supported the movement. A committee went into the whole affair and found the revenue hike to be unjustified and recommended a rise of 6.03 per cent only.
<u>All India Kisan Congress/Sabha</u>	It was founded in Lucknow in April 1936 with Swami Sahjanand Saraswati as the president and N.G. Ranga as the general secretary.	
<u>Tebhaga Movement (1946)- Bengal</u>	Bengal Provincial Kisan Sabha demanded	January 1947, the Bengal bargadars temporary

	to implement, Flood Commission recommendations of tebhaga—two-thirds’ share—to the bargardars, the sharecroppers instead of the one-half share.	regulation bill incorporated the demand of the sharecroppers. At the request of the Jotedars, the police suppressed the sharecroppers.
--	--	---

APPENDICES

1. Sessions of The Indian National Congress

Year	Name of The President	Important Events
1st 1885 Bombay	W.C Banerjee	72 delegates from different political parties gathered together for the formation of Congress under AO Hume to form a civil and political dialogue of educated Indian with the British raj
2nd Session 1886 Calcutta	Dadabhai Naoroji	First Parsi President
3rd Session 1887 Madras	Badruddin Tayyibji	First Muslim President Lord Dufferin, the viceroy criticized INC as microscopic entity
1888 Allahabad	George Yule	First English President
1889 Bombay	Sir William Wedderburn	
1890 Calcutta	Sir Feroze Mehta	

1895 Patna	S.N. Banerjee	
1896 Calcutta	Rahimtulla M. Sayani	
1905 Banaras	G.K. Gokhale (First Person to Tour India Before Gandhi)	Partition of Bengal for administrative efficiency but the real motive was to divide the Hindus and Muslims and extremists and moderates inside the INC . As a result, Muslim League came into existence at Dhaka under nawab of Dhaka Aga Khan in 1906.
1907. Surat	Rasbehari Ghosh	The INC split into two , one consisting of moderates led by Gokhale and the other the extremists led by Bal Gangadhar Tilak (The father of Indian unrest). The imminent split in congress had their seeds in Vande Matram movement in which the moderates wanted to restrict the movement to Bengal only but the extremists wanted it to engulf the whole nation.
1909 Lahore	Madan Mohan Malviya Vande Matram Movement Ended	Morley Minto Act, 1909 Communal electorate for Muslims was introduced.
1911 Calcutta	Pandit Bishan Narayan Das	The National Anthem 'Jana Gana Mana' was sung for the first time. Partition of Bengal was annulled by Harding II Imperial City Was Shifted from Calcutta to Delhi.
1915 Bombay	SP Sinha	Annie Besant gave the concept of 'Home Rule Movement.

1916 Lucknow	A.C. Majumdar	<p>Joint session with Muslim League in which the historic Lucknow pact was signed at the insistence of Annie Besant</p> <p>INC was represented by Rajendra Prasad and League was represented by Jinnah</p> <p>Tilak started the Home Rule Movement in April.</p> <p>Annie Besant started the Home Rule Movement in October from Madras.</p> <p>Re-Union of The Congress between extremists and moderates.</p> <p>Tilak gave his famous statement “Swaraj is my birth right and I shall have it”</p>
1917 Calcutta	Annie Besant	First woman president of INC
1919 Amritsar	Motilal Nehru (Prominent Lawyer) Provincial Status for Assam	<p>Montague Chelmsford Reforms.</p> <p>Jallianwala Bagh Massacre</p> <p>Khilafat Issue</p> <p>Non- Cooperation Movement started.</p>
1920. Nagpur Special Session Calcutta	Veerarghavacharya Lala Lajpat Rai.	Made Gandhi the sole leader of Non- Cooperation Movement
1921 Ahmedabad	Cr. Das	<p>Gandhi visited Assam</p> <p>Assam Association merged into INC</p>
1922 Gaya Special Session Delhi	Cr. Das Abul Kalam Azad.	<p>Non-Cooperation Movement ended with Chauri Chaura incident.</p> <p>Khilafat Movement was abolished</p> <p>Congress split into two groups:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Pro-Changers: They demanded to participate in the election of 1923

		<p>(CR Das, Motilal Nehru and Vittalbhai Patel)</p> <p>2. No Changers: Those who opposed the empty into council. (Gandhi, Jawaharlal Nehru, Vallabh Bhai Patel)</p> <p>Split happened in Congress with Pro-Changers forming the Swaraj Party.</p>
1924 Belgaum	Mk Gandhi, Only Session He Presided Over.	Alexander Muddymann Committee was appointed to review diarchy INC became a common man's party with reduction in membership fee 4 annas which is equal to 25 paise
1925 Kanpur	Sarojini Naidu The First Indian Woman to Preside Over an INC Session.	CPI declared its formation All Indian Hindu Mahasabha officially declared its formation.
1926 Guwahati	Srinivas Ayengar	First INC Session in Assam. It was an eye opener for the people of Assam as it served as a medium for helping the voice of freedom reach every nook and corner of Assam.
1928 Calcutta	Motilal Nehru	First All Indian Youth National Congress was formed
1929 Lahore Session	Jawaharlal Nehru Civil Disobedience Movement Was Beginning to Take Shape	Poorna Swaraj (Complete Independence was demanded for the first time. The National Flag was hoisted for the first time. January 26 was decided to be celebrated as 'Independence Day'.
1931 Karachi Session	Sardar Vallabh Bahai Patel	Resolutions on Fundamental Rights and National Economic Programme were launched. Socialism was declared as the highest goals of the Indian National Congress. Gandhi Irwin Pact was signed

		As A Result of it, Gandhi agreed to participate in 2nd Round Table Conference in London.
1932 Delhi (Session Banned)	M.M. Malviya was Elected as President	British PM Ramsay Mc Donald announced the communal awards for the depressed class. Gandhi protested by fast unto death. Poona Pact was signed between Congress (Rajendra Prasad) and depressed class (Ambedkar)
1933. Calcutta (Session Banned)	M.M. Malviya Was Elected as President	British Parliament published ' White Paper 'disclosing the discussions of the Three Round Table Conferences.
1934 Bombay	Dr Rajendra Prasad	Congress Socialist Partly was formed within the Congress
1937 Faizpur (First Session to Be Held In A Village)	Jawaharlal Nehru	Elections were held under Government of India Act, 1937 Congress formed government in 8 Provinces
1938 Haripura Session	S.C. Bose	A National Planning Committee was set up under Jawaharlal Nehru Clash between Gandhi and Bose started.
1939 Tripuri Session	S.C. Bose And Rajendra Prasad Lahore Session of Muslims League Proposed the Idea of Pakistan	S.C. Bose was re-elected after defecting Dr. Pattabi Sitaramayah (Candidate of Gandhi) However, owing to differences with Gandhi, S.C. Bose resigned and formed a new a party named Forward Block In 1940.

1940 Ramagarh Session	Abul Kalam Azad	August Offer was declared by Viceroy Linlithgow Congress called for individual satyagraha against August Offer.
1946 Meerut Session	JB Kripalani	Last pre-independence session of INC
1948 Jaipur	Dr Pattabi Sitaramaya	First session of Congress after independence.

1) Which one of the following is NOT correctly matched? (2006)

- a) **1887 Indian National Congress Session - Calcutta**
- b) 1916 Indian National Congress Session - Lucknow
- c) 1922 Indian National Congress Session – Gaya
- d) 1939 Indian National Congress Session – Tripuri

2. Governor Generals of Bengal

	Name	Period	Important Event
1.	Warren Hastings He was dismissed for allegation of corruption	20 th October 1773- 1 st February, 1785	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Regulating act of 1773 ➤ Supreme court at Calcutta ➤ First Governor General of Bengal ➤ Asiatic society in Bengal in 1784 ➤ English translation of Bhagwat Gita
2	Cornwallis	12 th September, 1786 to 28 th October 1793	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Establish lower courts and appellate courts ➤ Sanskrit college established by Jonathan Duncan

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Permanent settlement in Bengal and Bihar in 1793 ➤ Introduction of Cornwallis code ➤ Introduction of civil service in India. ➤ Cornwallis prohibited private trade also undertook commercial reforms.
3.	John Shore	28 th October 1793 to 18 th March 1798	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Policy of non-intervention ➤ Charter act of 1793
4.	Wellesley	18 th March 1798 to 30 th July 1805	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Introduction of subsidiary alliance ➤ Fourth Anglo Mysore war (1799) ➤ Fort William college at Calcutta ➤ Formation of madras presidency 1801.
5.	Minto I	31 st July 1807 to 4 th October 1813	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Charter act, 1813 ➤ Treaty of Amritsar with maharaja Ranjit Singh (1809)
6.	Hasting	4 th October 1813 to 9 th January 1823	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Ended the policy of non-intervention ➤ Third Anglo Maratha war (1816-1818) ➤ Creation of Bombay presidency in 1818 ➤ Establishment of ryotwari system in Madras
7.	William Bentinck	4 th July 1828 to 1833	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Prohibition of sati (1829) ➤ Charter act, 1833.

3. Governor Generals of India (1833-1858)

1	William Bentick	1833 to 20 th March 1835	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Suppressed female infanticide ➤ On Macaulay's recommendations English was made the medium of higher education
2	Charles Metcalfe	20 th March 1835 to 4 th March 1836	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Liberalized press in India
3	Henry Hardinge	23 rd July 1844 to 12 th January 1848	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Treaty of Lahore (1846)
4	Dalhousie	12 th January 1848 to 28 th February 1856	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Doctrine of lapse and annexation of satara, Jaipur, Udaipur, Jhansi, Nagpur and Awadh ➤ 1st railway line between Bombay and Thane (1853) ➤ Telegraph line between Calcutta and Agra ➤ Introduction postal stamp ➤ Widow Remarriage Act 1856 ➤ Charter Act 1853 selection of Indians to civil service ➤ Started engineering college at Roorkee ➤ Established public work department.
5.	Canning	28 th February 1856 to 1 st November 1858	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ University of Bombay Calcutta and Madras were set up in 1857 ➤ The revolt of 1857 ➤ Government of India Act 1858 ➤ Withdrew doctrine of lapse

4. Governor General and Viceroys of India (1858-1947)

1	Canning	1 st November 1858 to 21 st March 1862	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Indian Penal Code 1859 was passed ➤ Indian Council Act 1861 was passed
2	Elgin I	21 st March 1862 to 20 th November 1863	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Wahhabi movement was started
3	John Lawrence	12 th January 1864 to 12 th January 1869	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Telegraph communication was opened with Europe ➤ High courts were established at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1865 ➤ Created the Indian forest department
4	Mayo	12 th January 1869 to 8 th February 1872	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Started the process of financial decentralization in India ➤ For the first time in Indian history census was held in 1871. ➤ Organised the statistical survey of India ➤ Was the only viceroy to be murdered office by a Pathan convict named as Sher Ali Afridi in the Andamans in 1872
5	Lytton	12 th April, 1876 to 8 th June 1880	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Known as viceroy of reverse character ➤ Royal titles act of 1876 and the assumption of the title of 'empress of India' ➤ The Delhi durbar in January 1877 ➤ Vernacular press act and the arms act of 1878
6	Ripon	8 th June 1880 to 13 th December 1884	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Liberal person who sympathized with Indians ➤ Repealed the vernacular press act 1882 ➤ Passed the local self-government act, 1882 ➤ Took steps to improve primary and secondary education (on William

			<p>Hunter commission recommendations)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ First factory act was passed 1881 ➤ Passed Ilbert Bill (1883) which enabled Indian district magistrate to trial European criminals but, this was withdraw later
7.	Dufferin	13 th December 1884 to 10 th December 1888	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Third Burmese war (1885-86) ➤ Establishment of the Indian National Congress
8.	Lansdowne	10 th December 1888 to 11 th October 1894	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Factory Act 1891 granted weekly holiday and stipulated working hours for women and children ➤ Civil service was divided into imperial provincial and subordinate service ➤ Indians council act, 1892 ➤ Appointment of Durand commission to define the line between British India and Afghanistan
9	Elgin II	11 th October 1894 to 6 th January 1899	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Great famine of (1896-1897) and commission on famine was constituted
10	Curzon	6 th January 1899 to 18 th Nov 1905	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Passed the Indian universities act 1904 in which official control over the universities was increased ➤ Partition of Bengal (oct 16 ,1905) ➤ The rising of northwest frontier tribes in 1897-98 led him to create the North-West Frontier Provinces (NWFP) ➤ Passed the Indian coinage and paper currency act 1899 and put Indian currency on a gold standard
11	Minto II	18 th November 1905 to 23 rd November 1910	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Swadeshi movement (1905-1908) ➤ Foundation of Muslims league (1906) Surat session and split in the congress (1907)

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Extremists like Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajith Singh (in May 1907) and Bal Gangadhar Tilak (in July 1908) were sent to Mandalay jail in Burma ➤ Morley Minto reforms 1909
12	Harding	23 rd November 1910 to 4 th April 1916	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Partition of Bengal was cancelled in 1911 ➤ Capital shifted from Calcutta to Delhi ➤ A bomb was thrown at him but he escaped unhurt (1912) ➤ Gandhi came back to India from South Africa (1915) ➤ Annie Besant announced the home rule movement
13	Chelmsford	4 th April 1916 to 2 nd April 1921	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ August declaration 1917 whereby control over the Indian government would be gradually transferred to the Indian people ➤ Gandhi founded Sabarmati ashram (1916) ➤ The government of India act 1919 Rowlatt Act (March 1919) ➤ Jallianwala Bagh massacre (13th April 1919) ➤ Non-cooperation movement ➤ A women's university was founded at Poona in 1916
14	Reading	2 nd April 1921 to 3 rd April 1926	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Repeal of the Rowlatt act ➤ Suppressed non-cooperation movement ➤ Formation of swaraj party ➤ Moplah rebellion (1921) took place in Kerala ➤ Kakori train robbery in 1925 ➤ Prince of Wales visited India in November 1921 ➤ Communists party was formed in 1921 by MN Roy ➤ Communal riots of 1923-25 in Multan, Amritsar Delhi etc

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Swami Shraddhanad, a great nationalist and a leader of the Arya Samaj was murdered
15	Irwin	3 rd April 1926 to 18 th April 1931	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Simon commission visited India in 1927 ➤ Congress passed the Indian resolution in 1929 ➤ Lahore session of congress and Poorna Swaraj declaration (1929) ➤ Dandi march (March 12, 1930) ➤ Civil disobedience movement (1930) ➤ First round table conference held in England in 1930. ➤ Gandhi Irwin pact (March 5, 1931) was signed, and civil disobedience movement was withdrawn
16.	Willingdon	18 th April, 1931 to 18 th April 1936	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Second round table conference in London in 1931 and third in 1932 ➤ Communal award (August 16, 1932) assigned seats to the lower caste people ➤ Gandhi went on fast unto death in protest to this division ➤ Poona pact was signed ➤ Government of India act 1935
17	Linlithgow	18 th April 1936 to 1 st October 1943	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Government of India act enforced in the provinces ➤ Congress ministries formed in 8 out of 11 provinces, they remained in power for about 2 years till October 1939 when they gave up offices on the issue of India having been dragged into the World War ii ➤ The Muslim League observed the days as “deliverance day” ➤ Cripps mission in 1942 ➤ Quit India movement (August 8, 1942)

18	Wavell	1 st October, 1943 to 21 st February, 1947	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Arranged the Shimla conference on June 25, 1945 with Indian national congress and Muslim League failed. ➤ Cabinet mission plan (May 16, 1946) ➤ Election to the constituent assembly were held and interim government was appointment under Nehru. ➤ First meeting of the constituent assembly was held on December 9, 1946.
19	Mountbatten	21 st February 1947 to 15 th August 1947	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Last viceroy of British India and the first governor of free India ➤ Partition of India decided by the June plan ➤ Indian independence act passed by British parliament on July 4, 1947 by which India became independent on August 15, 1947.

5. Governor General of The Dominion of India (1947-1950)

1	Mountbatten	15 th August 1947 to 21 st June, 1948	Retired in June 1948 and was succeeded by C. Rajagopalachari (the first and the last Indian governor general of free India)
2	C. Rajagopalachari	21 st June 1948 to 26 th January, 1950	

APSC PYQ

1) Who succeeded Robert Clive to lead the East India Company? (2016)

- (a) Lord Bentinck
- (b) Lord Cornwallis
- (c) Lord Hastings**
- (d) Lord Wellesley

2) The first Governor General of British India was (2006)

- (a) Robert Clive
- (b) Warren Hastings**
- (c) Wellesley
- (d) Dalhousie

3) Which is NOT one of the Cornwallis's reforms? (2006)

- (a) Judicial
- (b) Revenue
- (c) Commercial
- (d) **Educational**

4) **Who introduced the Civil Services for the first time in India? (2006)**

- (a) Warren Hastings
- (b) Lord Wellesley
- (c) **Lord Cornwallis**
- (d) Lord Dalhousie

ART AND CULTURE

CHAPTER 1-INDIAN CLASSICAL DANCE

BHARATANATYAM (TAMILNADU)

- **Oldest among all classical dance forms.**
- The origins of this dance form can be traced back to **‘Sadir’** – the solo dance performance of the temple dancers or **devadasis in Tamil Nadu**, hence it was also referred to as **‘Dashiattam’**
- Bharatnatyam is often referred to as the **‘fire dance’**, as it is the manifestation of fire in the human body.
- Performed on **Carnatic music.**
- **Famous proponents:** Yamini Krishnamurthy, Lakshmi Viswanathan, Padma Subramaniam, Mrinalini Sarabhai, Mallika Sarabhai, **Rukmini Devi Arundale**, etc.

KUCHIPUDI (ANDHRA PRADESH)

- This dance **originated in Kuchipudi village, Krishna district of modern Andhra Pradesh.**
- It involves **difficult foot movements**, and is **generally a team performance.**
- Most of the Kuchipudi recitals are based on **stories of Bhagwata purana** but have a **secular theme.**
- **Solo and group performance.**
- Apart from group performances, there are some popular solo elements in Kuchipudi as well. Some of them are:
 - **Tarangam** – The dancer performs with his/her **feet on the edges of a brass plate** and balancing a pot of water on the head or a set of diyas.
 - **Manduk Shabdham**– Tells the **story of a frog.**
 - **Jala Chitra Nrityam**– In this item, the dancer **draws pictures** on the floor with his or her toes while dancing.
- **Famous proponents:** Radha Reddy and Raja Reddy, Yamini Krishnamurthy, Indrani Rahman, etc.

BHARATNATYAM VS. KUCHIPUDI

<u>BHARATNATYAM</u>	<u>KUCHIPUDI</u>
Tamilnadu	Andhra Pradesh.
Sculptured Poses	Rounded Poses.
No Vachikaabhinaya	Vachikaabinaya- Performer sings while dancing.
The attire of Bharatanatyam is comprised of three fans in various heights. These three fans give the looks of scattered pleated saree in certain poses.	The attire of Kuchipudi consists of just one fan but it will be lengthier than the longest fan in Bharatanatyam's costume.

KATHAKALI (KERALA)

- Source of kathakali – Ramanattam and Krishnanattam (Temple art in kerala representing the life of Rama and Krishna) in Temples.
- Close resemblance to Koodiyattam (Sanskrit drama tradition).
- ‘Katha’ meaning story and ‘Kali’ meaning drama.
- Minimal use of props but elaborate facial makeup with head gear for different characters.
 - **Green indicates** nobility, divinity and virtue.
 - **Red** patches beside the nose indicate royalty
 - **Black** colour is used to indicate **evil and wickedness.**
 - **Yellow** colour is for **saints and women.**
 - **Completely Red painted face** indicates evil
 - **White beard** indicates beings with **higher consciousness and divinity.**
- It is also called as the ‘**ballad of the east**’.
- The language used for Kathakali songs is **Manipravalam**, i.e., a mixture of Malayalam and Sanskrit.
- **Famous proponents:** Guru Kunchu Kurup, Gopi Nath, Kottakal Sivaraman, Rita Ganguly, etc

MOHINIYATTAM (KERALA)

- A **feminine classical dance form; literally meaning the Dance of the Enchantress**
- It is deeply rooted in **femininity, Grace (Lasya) and Beauty (Sringara)** forming the quintessence of this dance form.
- **Mohini’ meaning beautiful woman and ‘attam’ means dance-** solo dance performed by women.
- Mohiniattam generally narrates the story of the **feminine** dance of Vishnu.
- The **element of air** is symbolised through a Mohiniattam performance.
- The **foot work** is not terse and is rendered softly.

- **Distinguishing feature** → **Characteristic body movements**, marked by the graceful sway of the torso.
- What is **unique** is the **easy going rise and fall of the body**, with emphasis mainly on the torso.
- The movements are **never abrupt, but dignified, easy, natural, restrained and yet subtle**.
- The traditional costume worn in **Mohiniyattam** is **white with a gold border**, along with the gold ornaments
- The unique **coiffure with hair gathered on the left side of the head** reflect its **aesthetic appeal**
- Accompanying **music** → **Sopana style**, which in its lyricism, is evocative of the **spiritual element**.
- **Famous proponents: Sunanda Nair, Kalamandalam Kshemavathy, Madhuri Amma, Jayaprabha Menon, etc**

ODISSI (ODISHA)

- The caves of **Udayagiri-Khandagiri** provide some of the earliest examples of Odissi dance.
- It was primarily practised by the '**maharis**' (Temple Dancers) and patronised by the **Jain King Kheravela**.
- It is **similar to Bharatnatyam** in the use of Mudras and postures to express emotions.
- The **tribhanga** posture, i.e. the three-bended form of the body is innate to Odissi dance form.
- Also the '**Chowk**' posture with hands spread out depicts masculinity.
- **Odissi dance is accompanied by Hindustani classical music.**
- **The woman dancer wears an elaborate hair-style, silver jewellery, long necklace, etc.**
- **Famous proponents: Guru Pankaj Charan Das, Guru Kelu Charan Mohapatra, Sonal Mansingh, Sharon Lowen (USA), Anandini Dasi (Argentina), Sanjukta Panigrahi**

MANIPURI (MANIPUR)

- The dance gained prominence with the advent of **Vaishnavism** in 15th century.
- Krishna became the central theme of this dance form. It is performed **generally by females**.
- Manipuri dance is unique in its emphasis on **devotion** and **not sensuality**.
- The faces are covered with a thin veil and facial expression is of lesser importance, Hand gestures and gentle movement of feet are important.
- While the dance incorporates **both Tandava and Lasya**, emphasis is laid on the **latter**.
- The females wear unique long skirts. The focus is mainly on slow and gracious movements of hand and knee positions.
- **Nagabandha mudra**, in which the body is connected through curves in the shape of '8' is an important posture in Manipuri dance form.
- **Ras Leela** (Radha-Krishna love story) is a recurring theme of the Manipuri dance recital.
- The drum – **pung** – is an intricate element of the recital.

- **Music** -The Manipuri classical style of singing is called Nat - very different from both north and south Indian music, this style is immediately recognizable with its high pitched open throated rendering with particular type of trills and modulations.
- **Thang-Ta** and **Sankirtana** are also influenced by Manipuri dance.
- **Famous proponents: Jhaveri sisters**- Nayana, Suverna, Ranjana and Darshana, Guru Bipin Singha, N Madhabi Devi, etc.

KATHAK (UTTAR PRADESH)

- **Kathak derived its name from the ‘Kathika’ or the story-tellers** who recited verses from the epics, with gestures and music.
- An important feature of Kathak is the development of **different gharanas** as it is based on Hindustani style of music:
Lucknow: Reached its peak under the reign of Nawab Wajid Ali Shah. It puts more importance on **expression and grace**.
Jaipur: Initiated by Bhanuji, it emphasised fluency, speed and long rhythmic patterns.
Raigarh: It developed under the **patronage of Raja Chakradhar Singh**. It is unique in its emphasis on **percussion music**.
Banaras: It developed under **Janakiprasad**. It sees a greater use of **floor** and lays special emphasis on **symmetry**.
- Kathak dance form is characterised using intricate **footworks** and pirouettes (twirls and whirls)
- **Jugalbandi** is the main attraction of kathak recital which shows a competitive play between the dancer and the tabla player.
- Kathak is generally accompanied with **dhrupad music**. Taranas, thumris and ghazals were also introduced during the Mughal period.
- **Famous proponents:** Birju Maharaj, Lacchu Maharaj, Sitara Devi, Damayanti Joshi, etc.
- **Being the only classical dance of India having links with Muslim culture, it represents a unique synthesis of Hindu and Muslim genius in art.**

SATTRIYA (ASSAM)

- Sattriya dance in modern-form was introduced by the **Vaishnava Saint Sankaradeva** in the 15th century AD in Assam.
- The art form derives its name from the Vaishnava monasteries known as ‘**Sattras**’, where it was primarily practised. It is inspired from Bhakti Movement.
- The focus of the Sattriya recitals is to own the **devotional** aspect of dance and narrates **mythological stories of Vishnu**.
- The dance is generally performed in **group** by **male monks** known as ‘**Bhokots**’ as part of their daily rituals or even on festivals.
- **Khol** (drum), **Cymbals** (Manjira) and **Flute** form the major accompanying instruments of this dance form. The songs are composition of Shankaradeva known as ‘**Borgeets**’.
- There is great emphasis on **rhythmic syllables** and dance postures along with footwork. It combines both Lasya and Tandava elements.
- The Sattriya dance tradition has strictly laid down rules in respect of hand gestures and footwork, and it plays a very important role.
- Costumes worn by male dancers are **Dhoti**, and ‘**Paguri**’ (turban).

- **Ankia Naat:** a type of Sattriya, it involves play or musical-drama. It was originally written in Assamese-Maithili mix language called Brajavali.
- Another similar form is '**Bhaona**', which is based on stories of Lord Krishna.

APSC PYQ

1) Sanjukta Panigrahi was the popular exponent of which Indian classical dance form? (2011)

- (a) Kathak
- (b) Kathakali
- (c) Bharat Natyam
- (d) **Odissi**

2) Name of the instrument which is used in Manipuri dance is (2006)

- (a) Tabla
- (b) Sarangi
- (c) **Pung**
- (d) Sitar

3) With which dance is Birju Maharaj associated (2006)

- (a) Bharat Natyam
- (b) Ojapali
- (c) **Kathak**
- (d) Odissa

APPENDICES- FOLK DANCES/ ART FORMS & STATE

FOLK DANCE / THEATRE	STATE
Garba	Gujarat
Saraikella Chhau	Jharkhand
Mayurbhanj Chhau	Odisha
Purulia Chhau	West Bengal
Cheraw dance	Mizoram
Therukoothu Theatre	Tamil Nadu
Yakshagana Theatre	Karnataka
Bagarumba Dance	Assam Bodo Tribe
Tarangamel	Goa
Ghoomar	Bhil Tribe, Rajasthan
Kalbelia	Rajasthan
Bhangra	Punjab

Paika	Odisha
Thangta	Manipur
Rangma	Nagas
Singhi Chham	Sikkim
Butta Bommalu	Andhra Pradesh
Jhoomar	Punjab
Dhumhal	Wattal Tribe, Jammu & Kashmir

APSC PYQ

1) **The Cheraw dance is a dance form of (2020)**

(a) Meghalaya
(b) Sikkim
(c) Puducherry
(d) Mizoram

2) **Therukoothu is an art form of (2020)**

(a) Telangana
(b) Kerala
(c) Tamil Nadu
(d) Maharashtra

3) **Bagarumba is a folk dance performed by (2013)**

A. Garos
B. Bodos
C. Mishings
D. Rabhas

IMPORTANT FESTIVALS AND STATES/COMMUNITIES

<u>FESTIVAL / DANCE</u>	<u>STATE/ COMMUNITY/ OTHER FEATURES</u>
Judima Festival	Assam Dimasa tribals
Hornbill Festival	Nagaland
Lai Haroba	Manipur
Agalmaka festival	Garos Tribes Meghalaya

Saga Dawa	Sikkim Buddhist/ Tibetan Community
Losoong Festival	Sikkim Bhutia/ Lepchas
Moatsu Mong	Nagaland Ao Tribe
Yemshe	Nagaland Pochuri Tribe
Kharchi Puja	Tripura Meitei Tribe
Cheiraoba Festival	Manipur
Wangala Festival	Meghalaya Garo Tribe
Kang Chingba (Rathyatra of Manipur)	Manipur
Ambubachi Mela	Kamakhya Temple, Assam
Sekrenyi Festival	Nagaland Angami Tribe
Lui- Ngai- Ni Festival	Nagaland Naga Tribe
Dree Festival	Arunachal Pradesh Apatani Tribe
Losar Festival	Arunachal Pradesh Monpa Tribe
Khan Festival	Arunachal Pradesh Miji Tribe
Chapchar Kut Festival	Mizoram
Chaliho Sahib & Cheti Chandh	Sindhi Community
Pongal	Tamil Nādu
Onam	Kerala
Ugadi Festival	Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, and Telangana
Vishu	Kerala
Puthandu	Tamil Nadu
Naba Barsha	West Bengal

APSC PYQ

1. Which tribe of Assam organized the Judima festival in the middle of December 2020 to promote its art and culture, performing arts and ethnic practices? (2021)

- (a) The Bodo Tribe
- (b) The Dimasa Tribe
- (c) The Karbi Tribe
- (d) The Missing Tribe

2. Lai Haroba is an important festival of (2020)

- (a) Mizoram

(b) Meghalaya

(c) Manipur

(d) Tripura

3) Which tribe of Northeast celebrates the Agalmaka festival? (2014)

(a) Dimasa

(b) Garo

(c) Mishing

(d) Sonowal Kochari

4) Ugadi is a popular festival of (2014)

(a) Karnataka

(b) Bihar

(c) Himachal Pradesh

(d) Nepal

FAMOUS PAINTINGS & ARTIST (INDIA & WORLD)

<u>ARTIST</u>	<u>PAINTING</u>
Pablo Picasso	Guernica
Leonardo da Vinci	Mona Lisa The Last Supper
Vincent van Gogh	The Starry Night
Salvador Dalí	The Persistence of Memory
Raja Ravi Verma	Shakuntala
Nandlal Bose	Bapuji
Abanindranath Tagore.	Bharat Mata
M F Husain	Horses

1) Which artist made the famous painting 'Guernica' in 1937? (2020)

(a) Michelangelo

(b) Pablo Picasso

(c) Pablo Neruda

(d) Salvador Dali

4. IKEBANA

- The classical art of Japanese flower arranging
- It encompasses all the various styles of Japanese floral art.
- It was introduced in Japan in the 6th century by Chinese Buddhist missionaries as part of ritual of offering flowers to the Buddha.

1) 'Ikebana' is the Japanese art of which one of the following? (2015)

(a) Paper craft

(b) Flower decoration

(c) Miniature tree farming

(d) Dress designing

2)'Ikebana' is the Japanese art of (2014)

(a) Paper Craft

(b) Dress Designing

(c) Miniature Tree Farming

(d) Flower Arrangement

ASSAM HISTORY

CHAPTER 1: ANCIENT HISTORY OF ASSAM

Mythological Period to 12th century AD

1. Pre- historic and mythologies (Puran, Mahabharata, Ramayana etc.)
2. Varman Dynasty (Real beginning of political history)
3. Salasthambha Dynasty or Asura Dynasty
4. Pala Dynasty and others

Sources or Origin of the name Assam

- Ancient Assam has 2 names: **Pragjyotisha** and later **Kamarupa**
- According to Historian Edward Gait: “Prag” means ‘former’ or ‘eastern’ and Jyotisha ‘a star’. Pragjyotishpur may therefore be taken to mean the ‘**city of eastern Astrology**’.
- Ancient Assam has been mentioned as ‘Pragjyotisha’ in Mahabharata and as ‘Kamarupa’ in the Puranas and Tantras.
- Apart from Mahabharata, Vishnu Purana and Kalika Purana, an important source, can be the **Jogini Tantra (Yogini tantra)**.
- The term Kamarupa was first mentioned in **Samudragupta’s famous Allahabad Pillar Inscription** and also in the famous composition of **Kalidasa’s Raghuvamsham**.
- Dr. Banikanta Kakati believes that the term ‘Kamarupa’ originated from the word ‘Kamru’ or ‘Kamrut’ which means magic or the **art of invitation of evil spirits**.
- Kamrupa: Place where Kamadeva(God of love) regains his rupa(original self/form)
- Sati’s organs of generation fell on Kamagiri i.e. the **Nilachal Hills** near Guwahati and the place thenceforth held sacred to **Kamakhya, the Goddess of sexual desire**.

Traditional Rulers of Kamrup

- The **Danava Dynasty was the first legendary line** of rulers in Pragjyotisha, established by **Mahiranga Danava**, who **was subsequently succeeded** by Hatakasur, Sambarasur, Ratnasur and Ghatak.
- The Mairang Hill named after Mahiranga Danava is situated in present day Guwahati (South).

- The last ruler Ghatakasura was killed and replaced by Narakasura.
- The Bhauma or Varaha Dynasty- founder **Narakasura**
- He is associated with the Hindu belief of the ‘Shakti’ Goddess.
- Narakasura initially was a worshipper of Kamakhya Devi but later on he tried to marry her and as a result of that process he built the KAMAKHYA TEMPLE in NILACHAL HILLS.
- Narakasura also made Pragjyotishpur and his capital and helped Brahmins settle down at Kamakhya.
- He was succeeded by Bhagadatta—Vajradutta—Vajrapani.

Traditional Rulers of Sonitpur (Asura Kingdom)

- Established by – Marichi (first kings of ruling dynasty in the Vedic period)
- In Sonitpur (modern Tezpur), King Bana or Banasur ruled till he was defeated by Sri Krishna in the famous **Hori- HorJudho** (after the secret marriage of Aniruddha with Bana’s daughter Usha)(written in assamese in the book- **Kumar Haran**)
- At Kundila Nagar (modern Sadiya) the legendary king Bhismaka ruled and his daughter Rukmini was the consort/ wife of Sri Krishna.
- **Mahapurusha Sri SriSankardev**, composed two prominent works e.g. the **Rukmini- harana- Kavya** (a poetical work) and the **Rukmini- harana- Nat** (a dramatic work) on the basis of the original Rukmini- Harana legend in medieval period.

Other Remarkable kings

- Dharmapala, a Kshatriya, is believed to have come from the west and founded a kingdom whose capital was located in west of Guwahati.
- His rule was remarkable as he attracted a number of Brahmans and other high-caste Hindus from Upper India to settle. The sage **KenduKulai** is believed to have lived in his reign.
- Dharmapala succeeded by Padma Narayan, Chandra Narayan and Ramachandra(last) whose capital was at Ratnapur in Majuli.
- **Arimatta, Ramachandra’s son** is often attributed the sin of patricide in various stories as he killed his own father Ramachandra.

Previous Years’ Question- APSC

- 1) One of the following books is the most important literary source for the study of early history of Assam. Which is the book? (2001)
 - a) The Mahabharata
 - b) The Harshacharita
 - c) **The Kalika Purana**
 - d) The Arthashastra
- 2) The earliest king of Assam was (2001)
 - a) **Mahiranga Danava**
 - b) Narakasura

- c) Bhaskaravarman
- d) Naranarayan
- 3) **The earliest historical dynasty of Assam was that of the (2011)**
 - a) Palas
 - b) **Varmans**
 - c) Narakas
 - d) Salastambhas
- 4) **The Buranjis are (2013)**
 - a) Autobiographical writings of the Ahom rulers
 - b) Diaries written by the monarchs
 - c) **Chronicles**
 - d) None of the above

CHAPTER 2 PERIOD FROM 4TH-12TH CENTURIES AD

Varman/ Bhauma Dynasty

- The **first real political history** of ancient Assam begins with the **Varmans** and the first ruler of Kamarupa is **Pushya Varman** (355-380 AD).

Evidences -

- Umachal rock inscriptions
- Nidhanpur Copper Plates Grant
- The Doobi Plates
- Bana's Harshacharita
- Si-yu-ki of Hiuen Tsang
- Nalanda seals

Important rulers

1. Pushyavarman
 2. Samudravarman
 3. Balavarman
 4. Kalyanavarman
 5. Ganapativarman
 6. Mahendravarman
 7. Narayanvarman
 8. Mahabhutivarman
 9. Chandramukhavarman
 10. Sthitavarman
 11. Susthithavarman
 12. Supratisthitavarman
 13. Bhaskaravarman
- Pushya Varman assumed the title **Maharajadhiraja** which indicates his independent status and said to be **contemporary of Samudragupta**.
 - Mahendravarman first successfully waged a war against Gupta army and also the first Varman ruler to perform **Ashwamedha Yajna**.

- The performance of the Horse sacrifice (Ashwamedha Yajna) was done by **Mahendravarman, Mahabhutivarman and Sthitavarman**)
- Mahabhutivarman donated land to Brahmanas (as per both the Doobi and Nidhanpur grants of Bhaskaravarman)
- Supratisthitavarman and Bhaskaravarman both were the sons of Susthitavarman. Supratisthitavarman introduced many reforms during his rule. However, he was not able to reign for long and died during the lifetime of his father. He was succeeded by his younger brother **Bhaskaravarman** (powerful and most successful king).
- Bhaskaravarman made alliance with famous king **Harshavardhana**. He recovered Pundravardhana and also brought Gauda with its capital Karnasuvarna under his control. Also brought Sylhet and Tripura including South- east Bengal under his control. (he expanded the Varman dynasty to a great extent)

Bhaskaravarman- Harshavardhana-Shashanka

- On ascending the throne, Bhaskaravarman found **two strong powers** growing in Northern India, viz. One in Central and Northern Bengal under **Shashanka** and the other in mid- India under **Prabhakaravardhana**, father of Harshavardhana.
- Mahasena Gupta, one of the later Gupta ruler of the Magadha, tried to check the growing aggressions of the Kamarupa kings. Shashanka gave powerful aid to Mahasena Gupta who inflicted a defeat on Susthitavarman, the king of Kamarupa. The Magadhan king thus recovered northern and central Bengal over which Shashanka was appointed as Mahasamanta (Governor). Subsequently, taking advantage of the death of Mahasena Gupta and the weakness of his minor son Madhava Gupta, Shashanka proclaimed himself as independent king of the central and northern Bengal and also struck coins. He soon attained to such power that he not only challenged the feeble Magadhan ruler Madhava Gupta on the west and the Kamarupa power on the east but also subjugated the whole of lower Bengal, Chota Nagpur and Orissa on the south.
- Towards the West of Kamarupa, Shashanka appears to have held possession of that portion of territory which included the lands granted by Mahabhutivarman to a large number of Brahmins. He was, therefore, the natural enemy of Bhaskaravarman who must have been waiting for a favourable opportunity to regain the lost dominions and to retaliate the defeat inflicted on his father. Shashanka was, however, a too powerful ruler to be dealt with and Bhaskaravarman, therefore, wisely refrained from precipitating matters by himself launching an attack on Karnasuvarna, the capital of Gauda, founded by Shashanka.
- The long looked for opportunity came when Shashanka treacherously murdered Rajyavardhana who had succeeded Prabhakaravardhana as the king at Thaneshwar. This incident is mentioned not only by Bana but also by Hiuen Tsang. On getting this information, Harsha, Rajyavardhana's brother and successor, resolved to take revenge on the murderer. He had just started on his march to subdue Shashanka when he met by **Hangsavega**, an ambassador from Bhaskaravarman, with valuable presents.
- **Hiuen Tsang** speaks highly about the noble qualities of **Bhaskara**. He honoured Bhaskara as the "king of eastern India".
- He remained a celibate (unmarried) and with his death in **650 AD**, Varman Dynasty came to an end.

Salasthamba Dynasty (655-675 AD)

- Salasthamba Dynasty, began with the reign of a chieftain called Salasthamba, a great chief of the **Mlechchhas** (a wide term used in traditional Brahminical texts to denote all non- Aryans).
- During the rule of this dynasty, the capital city was located at **Haruppeswara(Tezpur)**
- The 6th king of the dynasty, Sri Harsha/ Harshadeva was the most famous.
- Pralambha the great grandson of Harshadeva and Pralambha's son Harjaravarman was another famous ruler.
- Harjaravarman also built a lofty Siva temple and rows of stately buildings in the capital city at Haruppeswara alongwith the existence of a big tank called – **Hajrapukhuri**.

Sources highlighting its origin

- Hayunthal plates of Harjaravarman
- Tezpur Rock Inscription of Harjaravarman
- Bargaon plates of Ratnapala
- Tyagasimha was the last ruler

Pala Dynasty and later Kings of Kamarupa

- After Tyagsingha, the officers choose **Brahmapala** to the throne, thus establishing the **Pala dynasty**.
- The title 'Pala' is an abbreviation of the Sanskrit term **Palaka**, which means **protector**, I.e. a ruler or administrator.
- Succeeded by Ratnapala – his son and a powerful king. He shifted the capital city of his kingdom of Pragjyotishpur, strongly fortified it and named it as Durjaya or Sri Durjaya.
- Ratnapala's son died at an early age and succeeded by his grandson Indrapala.
- Indrapala(1040-1065) defeated Kalyanachandra(in North Bengal)
The copper plates of Bargaon and Sualkuchi confirms the reign of Ratnapala. In the land grant of his grandson Indrapala, he is described as the mighty crusher of his enemies. He took up **the imperial title Parameswara Parambhattaraka Maharajadhiraja**.
- **Jayapala was the last ruler** of this dynasty.
- The three copper plate grants of Dharmapala (**Khonamukhi, Subhankarapataka and Pushpadhara**) confirms that the boundary of his kingdom was pushed to the west of Karatoya.
- During Jayapala's reign, Kamrupa was attacked by the Palas of Bengal.
- The Bengal king victorious placed Tishyadeva as his feudal king in the part and Pala dynasty came to an end. The feudal king **Tingyadeva rebelled**, the Pala king Kumar Pal sent **Vaidyadeva**.
- Vaidyadeva conquered Kamarupa and declared his independence in 1138 AD. He assumed the title Maharajadhiraja Parameswara Paramabhattaraka.
- Later Vaidyadeva was killed in the hands of Rayarideva who established himself as an independent king of Kamrupa. He was succeeded by Udayakarna and Vallabhadeva.
- Vallabhadeva was defeated by Lakshmanasena from Bengal.

- Vallabhadeva succeeded by his son Viswasundardeva. He recovered his kingdom and established his independent status. Viswasundardeva was also popularly known as **Prithu** or Barthu.
- During his reign, **Muhammad-bin- Bakhtiyar** attacked Kamrupa but was defeated.
- Prithu also resisted the attack by **Sultan Ghiyasuddin- Iwas Khilji**.
- Prithu was finally defeated in the hands of **Nasiruddin**.

Previous Years' Questions - APSC

1. Hiuen Tsang visited Assam (Kamarupa) in 640 CE. He was received by the king (2017)
 - a) Bhagadatta
 - b) **Kumar Bhaskara Barman**
 - c) Swargadeo Rudra Singha
 - d) Kumar Rudra Barman
2. Hayungthal Copper Plate was issued by (2018)
 - a) Bhaskar Varman
 - b) Susthita Varman
 - c) Banamala Varman
 - d) **Hajara Varman**
3. Who was the founder of Pala Dynasty?(2018)
 - a) **Brahmapala**
 - b) Viradutta
 - c) Indrapala
 - d) Dharmapala

CHAPTER 2

MEDIEVAL HISTORY OF ASSAM (13TH- 15TH CENTURIES)

- **Muhammad Bakhtiyar Khilji** was a military general of the Delhi Sultanate founder **Qutb-ud-din Aibak**.
- In 1205 AD, he attacked Kamrupa during the **reign of Prithu**. Prithu defeated the entire army. This is recorded in **Kanai Barasi Bowa inscription**. (1st invasion)
- Minhajuddin also provided a brief account of this invasion in his book **Tabaqat-I- Nasiri**.
- In 1227 AD Sultan Ghiyasuddin- Iwas Khilji invaded Kamrupa. Defeated by Prithu. (2nd invasion)
- Prithu was defeated in the hands of **Nasiruddin, the son of Iltutmish** in 1228 AD.

- The third invasion was led by Ikhtiyaruddin Yuzbeg Tughril Khan in 1256-57 AD. He was successful and erected a mosque.
- Later Sandhya defeated Tughril Khan taking advantage of Monsoon period of Assam.
- Thereafter, **Sandhya** shifted his capital to Kamalpur in Koch Bihar and assumed the title **Kamateswara**. After that Assam came to be known as Kamata or Kamrup- Kamata.
- Sighadhwaaja was the last king and after him his minister Pratapdhvaja or Manik Chandra occupied the throne.
- After Pratapdhvaja, Dharmanarayan occupied the throne, shifted his capital to Dimla in Rangpur and took the title Gaudeswara.
- Later he was challenged by Durlabhnarayan and Kamata Kingdom got divided. Durlabhnarayan took North and East part including Kamatapur.
- Durlabhnarayan was a great patron of learning. His court was adorned by **Harihar Bipra, Kaviratna Saraswati and Hem Saraswati**.
- Succeeded by his son **Indranarayan** (1350-1365 AD) who assumed the title '**Pancha Gaudeswara**'.
- Ahom king Sudangpha invaded the Kamata Kingdom, **Mriganka was the last king** of the **Kamrup Kamata kingdom**.

Khen Dynasty

- After Mriganka, the throne was occupied by **Niladhvaj Khan** (1440-1460 AD). He assumed the title Kamateswar and rebuilt the city of Kamatapur. This came to be known as Khan or Khen dynasty.
- It had 3 kings namely, Niladhvaj, Chakradhwaj and Nilambar.
- Nilambar the most powerful was overthrown by Hussain Shah in 1498 AD who took away the capital Kamatapur from him.

Previous Years' Questions -APSC

1. Ibn Battuta, the celebrated traveller visited Assam in the (2000)
 - a) 13th century
 - b) **14th century**
 - c) 15th century
 - d) 10th century

CHAPTER 4

MAJOR DYNASTIES [EXCLUDING THE AHOMS]

Bhuyans of Medieval Assam

- Bhuyans were pretty chiefs held a vast territory towards the west of the Kacharis on the South bank and West of the Chutiyas on the north bank of Brahmaputra.
- The term "Bhuyan" has nothing to do with caste. It meant the lord of the **land/zamindars**. It is believed that the word Bhuyan thus originated from the term "Bhauma"(land).

- According to Guru Charita and Sankar Charita after the war between Kamateswara Durlavnarayan and Gaudeswara Dharmanarayan has executed a treaty.
- According to the treaty, Dharmanarayan sent 7 families of Brahmins and 7 families of Kayasthas to Durlavnarayan, who settled them on the frontier as wardens. **Chandibar**, the forefather of **Srimanta Sankardeva blater became their leader(Siromani)**.
- **Chandibar** finally settled at Bardowa in Nagoan where his great grandson Sankardev was born.
- These Bhuyans are remembered in legends as **Baro- Bhuyans(12)** as they stood together **united against any common enemy**.

Chutiya Kingdom

- The Chutiya Kingdom was the largest kingdom in Assam after the fall of Kamrupa and before the rise of Ahom Kingdom.
- **Founder- Birpal** (1187 AD). He claimed himself to be a descent from the legendary Bhishmaka.
- Birpal's son **Gaurinarayan (Ratnadhvajpal)** was the most powerful king. He defeated many other Chutiya groups and attached the territories into the kingdom.
- He built his capital at **Ratnapur (Majuli)**.
- Ratnadhvajpal made alliance with Gaudaraj Biswarup Sen and sent his son to Gauda for education who ultimately met with death.
- The place where the dead body (Sa/So) of his son is received and cremated later came to be known as **"Sa Diya"**.
- According to mythology, this place was known as **Bidarva and the capital was Kundil Nagar**.
- After Ratnadhvajpal, 9 Chutiya Kings ruled according to **Deodhai Assam Buranji**.

Ahom-Chutiya Conflicts

- During the reign of Ahom king Sutupha, the conflict between Chutiya and Ahom started.
- In 1376, Sutupha was killed by the Chutiya king during a friendly encounter.
- To take revenge later, Ahom King Tao-Khamti invaded and occupied the Chutiya Kingdom.
- However, Tao- Khamti abandoned the mission in between and Chutiyas re-occupied the territory.
- In 1513, Dhirnarayan or Dharmadhajpal attacked Ahom kingdom during the reign of Suhungmung but got defeated.
- In 1520, the Chutiyas invaded Ahom territory twice. They were successful in defeating the Ahom in the battle at Dihing.
- **Dhirnarayan's daughter Sadhani is married by Nitai** who did not belong to the royal family.
- After Dhirnarayan, Nitai occupied the throne and took the name **Nitipal**.
- Due to incapable rulership of Nitipal, a number of internal disturbances gradually weakened the kingdom.
- Taking advantage of the weakening Chutiya kingdom, **Suhungmung** conquered Sadiya in 1524 and Nitipal was killed. His wife **Sati Sadhani** preferred death to dishonour and committed suicide from the top of Chandragiri Hills near Sadiya.
- In respect of her sacrifice, every year **21st April** is commemorated as Sati Sadhani Divas.

- Suhungmung appointed a frontier called **Sadiyakhowa Gohain** to look after the annexed territory.
- The Ahom Chutiya conflicts continued till 1673 when the Chutiyas were finally absorbed into the Ahom Kingdom.

Kachari Kingdom

- Kacharis were ancient inhabitants of Assam.
- Kacharis belong to be broadly constituted Bodo group of Tibeto- Burman races. They were also called Kirat in ancient texts like Ramayana, Mahabharata and others.
- **Mythological Source:** The Kacharis belonged to the Dimasa Bodo group and called themselves descendants of **Ghatotkacha** the son of Pandava Prince Bhima.
- They ruled from their capital at **Hidimbapur(Dimapur)**
- Maha Manikya was a famous king of the Barahi Kacharis and they ruled about the middle of the 14th century at Dimapur.
- During the reign of Maha- Manikya- a Barahi king, **Sri Madhab Kandali** composed the Assamese version of the Ramayana.

Kachari-Ahom Conflicts

- In 13th century, before the rise of Ahom kingdom the Kachari kingdom was extended from Dikhou River in the east upto the Kolong river in the West.
- Suteupha, son of Syu Ka Pha occupied same territory of Kachari kingdom to the East of Dikhou river.
- In 1490 AD, Ahom king Suhanpha attacked Kachari kingdom but got defeated and Kacharis re-occupied their lost territory.
- Following that, Ahom king Suhungmung attacked Kachari kingdom to take revenge.
- Ahom army was led by Konseng Barpatra Gohain who occupied a large territory under Kacharis and pushed the boundary upto Dhansiri river.

Dihing (in Sibsagar) ----- Dhansiri river(Golaghat)

- In 1526, Kacharis attacked Ahom kingdom but that attempt failed.
- Ahoms occupied Kachari capital Dimapur and placed one 'Detsung' as a feudal king.
- Later Detsung revolted and in 1536 AD, Ahoms again invaded Kachari kingdom and Detsung was slain or killed.
- Ahom King Suhungmung choose Madan Konwar, son of Detsung to the throne. He took the name Nirbhayanarayan.
- Suhungmung annexed the entire territory into Ahom kingdom and appointed an administrator "**Morongikhowa Gohain**".
- The Kacharis were driven out and they established a new capital in **Maibong**(present day Dimahasu)
- Nirbhayanarayan was succeeded by Durlabhnarayan and Meghnarayan.
- In 1562 AD, Koch Army commander Chilarai invaded Ahom kingdom and subsequently Kachari kingdom.

- Durlabhnarayan was defeated and became a feudal king of Koch Kingdom.
- In 1568 AD, following the defeat of Chilarai at the hands of Sultan Sulaiman, Durlabhnarayan declared Independence.
- After Durlabhnarayan's reign upto the beginning of 17th century no reliable information has been found regarding Kacharis.

Kacharis after 17th Century

- In the beginning of 17th century, Kachari king Jasnarayan became powerful.
- He defeated Jayantia king Dhanmanik and annexed his territory and also married 2 Jayantia princesses.
- In 1606 AD during the reign of Ahom king Pratap Singha, again a battle was fought between Ahom and Kacharis. Although in the initial phase, Kacharis got defeated later they won.
- During the battle, Ahom king (Pratap Singha) established several new villages in the Ahom Kachari border, which later came to be known as "**Na- Goan**".
- Following the victory, Jashnarayan took the name Pratapnarayan.
- He was succeeded by his son Naranarayan and brother Bhimbalnarayan.
- Bhimbalnarayan was a powerful king and he later made alliance with Pratap Singha.
- Till his death in 1637AD, there were no major conflicts between Kacharis and Ahoms.
- In the middle of the 18th century, the last king Gobinda Chandra died without any heir and therefore the British annexed the Kachari Kingdom under the **Doctrine of Lapse**.
- At the time of British annexation, the kingdom consisted of parts of Nagoan and karbi Anglong, North Cachar, Cachar and some frontier of Manipur.

Koch Kingdom

- In 1498 AD, Allauddin Hussain Shah invaded Kamrup- Kamrup kingdom. At this time Nilambar last Khen was the ruler. He fled and escaped his territory following the attack and then Allauddin Hussain Shah placed his son Daniel as its ruler of Kamrup Kamata.
- The Bhuyan chiefs combined against the common foe, attacked Daniel's garrison at Hajo and destroyed it. Thereafter, for about a decade or more, there was not a common king for Kamatapur.
- In 1515 AD, **Bisu the son of Haria Mandal** through his courage took the advantage of strifes amongst small Bhuyan principalities and became king under the name **Viswa Singha**.
- **Viswa Singha defeated the Bhuyans, and the entire state from Karotaya in the West to Barnadi in the East had become the boundary of the Koch kingdom.**
- This is how Viswa Singha established his capital in Koch- Bihar (present day West Bengal)
- He embraced and patronised Hinduism. He brought numerous Brahmins to Koch kingdom from Kanauj, Benaras and other places.
- He took a census of his subjects.
- His sons include **Malla Deb, Shukladhaj, Nar Singha and Gohain Kamal**.
- **Viswa Singha** died in 1540 after a reign of 25 years. At that time Malla Dev and Shukladhaj were at Banaras for learning and the throne was occupied by Nar Singha.
- But he soon defeated him, Malla Deb ascended the throne and assumed the name of Nara Narayan.

- His brother Shukladhaj became the chief commander of Koch army and met with almost unvarying success. He displayed such promptness of action that he was nick name “**Chirai**” [kite-king].
- Chilarai and Naranarayan engaged in war with Ahoms during the reign of Suklengmung where the later was defeated.
- In course of these invasions the Koch king constructed an embankment road from Koch capital at Koch Bihar to Narayanpur under the supervision of **Gohain Kamal**, the kings brother and was known as “**Gohain Kamal Ali**”.(350 miles)
- During the reign of Naranarayan, Koch Kingdom was at its zenith.

Gauda Attack

- In 1565 AD, Chilarai made an attack on Gauda. But Gauda army commander **Kala Pahar** defeated him and ascended upto Tezpur and demolished several Hindu temples. Chilarai was held captive.
- Naranarayan however did not accept this defeat as final.
- Few years later in 1583 AD, he joined with the Emperor Akbar in second attack upon the Badshah of Gaud and Gauda was divided between the Emperor of Delhi and the Koch king. During this attack Chilarai died of **pox**.
- Numerous manuscripts contain accounts of Koch kingdom. Most detailed account was found in the **Darrang Raj Banasabali**.
- During the reign of Naranarayan, British traveler **Ralph Fitch** visited Kochbihar in 1536 AD. He has written a brief account of Kochbihar.
- Naranarayan patronized **Eksarna Dharma** of Srimanta Sankardev and also wanted to be a disciple but the later denied.
- Naranarayan was a great patron of learning and patronized several scholars and authors. During his rule, **Ram Saraswati** translated **Mahabharata** into Assamese.
- **Purusottama Vidyavagish** authored a **grammar Ratnamala** in Sanskrit, **Ananta Kandali** translated Bhagavata(Purana) and some other noble ancient text into assamese.
- Naranarayan has restored the famous temple at **Kamakhya** which had been damaged by the Muhammeden invader **KalaPahar** in 1565 AD.
- He introduced gold and silver coins called **Narayani Mudra**.
- Naranarayan made Kochbihar a center of excellence of Art and culture.

Decline of Koch Kingdom

- For a long time, Naranarayan had no male child and hence Chilarai’s son **Raghudev** was regarded as his heir.
- But in his later age he begot a son named **Lakshmi Narayan**.
- After losing hope of succeeding to the throne, Raghudev withdrew from the capital to Barnagar and rebelled.
- Naranarayan tried to compel Raghudev but failed.
- He resolved to divide the kingdom. The possession of Koch territory from Sankosh River to Barnadi was given to Raghudev as a tributary king which came to be known as **Koch Hajo**.

- Naranarayan kept the western part of the Koch kingdom for himself.(later ascended by his son)

Jayantia Kingdom

- Jayantia were ancient and original inhabitants of North East India.
- Matrimonial race who had founded their kingdom in and around Jaintia Hills.
- As per Chronicles, **Parbat Ray** was said to be the first king of Jaintia.
- Koch commander Chilarai invaded Jaintia kingdom in 1653.
- **Rajendra Singha** was the last Jaintia King and in 1835 AD, British annexed the territory of Jaintias.

Previous Years' Questions-APSC

1. The illustration work of the medieval Assamese text Hastividyarnava was done by (2000)
 - a) Suryakhan Daikegya
 - b) Dilbar and Dosai
 - c) **Sukumar Barkaith**
 - d) Ram Saraswati
2. Gohain Kamal Ali constructed by Gohain Kamal from Koch Bihar to Natayanpur was constructed during the reign of (2000)
 - a) **Nara Narayan**
 - b) Parkshit Narayan
 - c) Biswa Singha.
 - d) Raghu Dev
3. Rang Ghar was constructed during the period of (2000)
 - a) Rudra Singha
 - b) Siva Singha
 - c) Rajeswar Singha
 - d) **Pramatta Singha**
4. The Kachari king to assume the title Pratap Narayan after defeating the Ahom was(2001)
 - a) Indra Narayan
 - b) Jash Narayan
 - c) **Nirbhya Narayan**
 - d) Durlabh Narayan
5. Who among the following did not receive the patronage of Koch King Naranarayan?(2001)
 - a) Ram Saraswati
 - b) Ananta Kandali
 - c) Sankardev
 - d) **Madhav Kandali**
6. Fatiyah-i-Ibryah was written by(2001)
 - a) Alberuni

- b) Azan Fakir
- c) Mir Jhumla
- d) Shihabuddin Talish**

7. Who among the following is the first Assamese translator of *Ramayana*? (2015)

- a) Sankardeva
- b) Madhab Kandali**
- c) Ananta Kandali
- d) Ram Saraswati

The Ahoms

The Ahoms belong to the Tai Mao section of the Tai-race which is native to South-East Asia.

- As per Ahom Chronicles or Buranji, the Ahoms were led by Prince (Chao- lung) Sukapha. He left Mao-Lung (native place of Sukapha) in **1215 AD** with his followers including several nobles, officers of various ranks, thousands of men, women and children.
- Ahoms led by Sukapha **crossed the Patkai in 1228 AD** and set up their first territory unit at **Khamjang Valley (Nagaland)**. Some Nagas attempted to resist Sukapha. But he defeated them and perpetuated atrocities to Nagas.
- Following this, all other Nagas in the neighbourhood made submission to Sukapha.
- After reaching the Brahmaputra valley, Sukapha and his followers moved from one place to another in search of a better place particularly suitable for rice cultivation. They stayed in several places like Namrup, Dihing, Tipam, Habung and Ligorigoan and Simaluguri.
- On the way Sukapha has organised several other territorial units along the bank of rivers Dihing and Dikhow.
- Sukapha finally established the capital at **Charaideo in 1253 AD**.
- This is how Sukapha founded a small Ahom **kingdom** in 1228 AD bounded by
Patkai Hills and Naga Hills(South),
Burhi- Dihing (East),
Brahmaputra(North) and
Dikhow(West).
- Sukapha was an enterprising and brave Prince. With judicious treatment he won over the chiefs of Morans and the Borahis and encouraged **intermarriage** with them and appointed some of them in various capacities.
- However Sukapha was criticised for his atrocities on the Nagas.
- **Sukapha appointed 2 great officers of the state- the Bor Gohain and the Burha Gohain.**
- They exercised power next to the king.
- After a rule of 40 years, Sukapha died on 1268 AD.

Early Ahom Kingdom

- Sukapha was succeeded by his son Suteupha—Subinpha—Sukhangpha etc.
- During the reign of the 4th king Sukhangpha, the Ahoms engaged in a war with the ruler of Kamata Kingdom. Eventually the Kamata ruler made a peace treaty by offering a prince named **Rajani**.

- Sukhrangpha died in 1364 AD. As he did not have a child or heir to his throne, after his death the nobles ruled for few years upto 1369 AD.
- In 1369AD, the nobles chose Sutupha(king's brother) to the throne. Sutupha got killed in a friendly encounter with the Chutia King.
- Succeeded by Tao- Khamti. He led a successful expedition against the Chutiya King to take revenge of the murder of his brother Sutupha.
- He was succeeded by Sudangpha. He was known as **Bamuni Konwar** for his birth in the house of a Brahmin at Habung.
- Sudangpha's reign is important in several aspects. The Ahom capital was shifted to Charagua.
- In his reign Brahmanical influence had its entry into the Ahom Royal Palace. Some nobles were dissatisfied at his subordination to Hindu influence and they reported it to the Tai ruler of Mong Kwang.
- Following this, the Tai ruler sent an expedition to annex the Ahom Kingdom.
- But Sudangpha successfully resisted the attack and made a treaty. By this treaty **the Patkai was fixed as the boundary between Assam and Mong.**
- The reigns of successive kings Sujinpha (1407-22) Suphakpha(1439-1488) and Susenpha (1493-1497) covering a period of 90 years were comparatively peaceful.
- However, a brief war with the Dimasa Kacharis was fought in 1490 AD. The bordering Nagas who made some raids were also kept in check.
- So from 13th- 15th century, Ahoms were busy in **consolidating their newly acquired territory and protecting it from neighbouring powers.**

Expansion of Ahom Kingdom

- The real expansion of Ahom Kingdom began with the reign of **Suhungmung.**
- He ascended to the throne in 1497 AD. He was better known as **Dihingiya Raja** as he belongs to the Dihingya phoid(clan) of the royal family.
- During his reign the Brahmanical influence grew considerably in the Ahom court. He has adopted the Hindu title **Swarganarayan.**
- He transferred his capital to Charga on the bank of Dihing river.
- During his reign a census of population was done.
- In 1524 AD, taking the advantage of weakening Chutiya kingdom, Suhungmung conquered Sadiya. The Chutiya king **Nitipal** was killed. Suhungmung annexed Chutiya territory to the Ahom kingdom and placed frontier officer titled **Sadiya Khowa Gohain** to administer it.
- In 1527 AD, Muslim army led by Bar Ujir and Bit Manik attacked Ahom Kingdom. But they were defeated and Bit Manik was killed. It was the first Muslim invasion to **Ahom kingdom.**
- Later another commander Turbuk ascended upto Singri with a huge force. In that battle, the Ahom side got defeated and lost several of their general including Frachengmung Burhagohain and huge number of soldiers, Prince Suklengmung was also got severely wounded.
- However in 1533 AD in a renewed war the Ahoms defeated them in Duimunisila and Turbuk was killed.

- To take revenge of the death of Frachengmung , his wife **Mulagabhoru** bravely fought against Turbuk with exemplary bravery and perseverance and caused major damage to the enemy side and finally laid her life. Her death inspired the Ahom soldiers.
- A large number of arms, cannons, horses and soldiers were captured by the Ahoms. The captured soldier later settled in Ahom kingdom and came to be known as **Moriyas**. They were engaged in **brass metal works**.
- Suhungmung also defeated the kacharis of the Dayang- Dhansiri valley and Kachari royal family moved to Maibong leaving Dimapur. He brought the Kachari territory under the Ahoms at a province called Marangi and placed an officer titled **Marangi khowa Gohain** to administer it.
- He also brought under control the Bhuyans on the North Bank.
- The Ahom army marched westward as far as the Karatoya and thus by 1534 AD the Ahom army liberated Kamrup and kamata King.
- **Thus Suhungmung extended the Ahom dominion from Sadiya in the east to the Karatoya river in the West.**
- Suhungmung established relation with Gauda and Gauda king offered 2 of his daughters to Ahom king. Koch king Viswa Singha have also offered presents to Suhungmung.
- After an eventful reign of 42 years, Suhungmung died in 1539AD.
- He was succeeded by his son Suklengmung. He was commonly known as **Garhgayan Raja** as he shifted his capital to Garhgoan.
- During his reign there was a series of conflicts between Ahoms and Koch. Initially the Koch army led by Chilarai defeated the Ahoms.
- But later Suklengmung defeated the Koch army.
- During his reign Garhgoan tank was excavated and Naga Ali was built. He was the first Ahom king to strike coins.
- He died in 1552 AD.
- Suklengmung was succeeded by Sukhampha. He was known as **Khora or Lame**. He injured his foot while going out for hunting.
- A plot was formed against him soon after his accession to the throne. They were caught but pardoned. But they rebelled again and this time they were put to death.
- In 1662AD Chilarai attacked Ahom kingdom and occupied Garhgoan(the capital) and the king fled. That is why Sukhampha was also known as **Bhogoniya Raja**. However, the Koch army soon returned after a peace treaty.
- Several earthquakes and epidemics occurred in his reign.

The Period of Ahom-Mughal Conflict

- The history of the Ahoms during the 17th century was mainly about the Ahom- Mughal conflict. The conflicts occurred between the Governor of Bengal under Mughal Empire and Ahom king.
- The Mughal emperors at that period were Jahangir(1605-1627), Shah Jahan(1627-1658) and Aurangzeb (1658-1707) [NOTE: **During Aurangzeb's period the famous Battle of Saraighat**]

- The imperial ambition of the Mughal emperors to extend their dominions to further EAST beyond Bengal and to seek routes to CHINA and TIBET stimulated the series of Mughal invasions to Ahom Kingdom.
- **Susengpha** succeeded his father Sukhampha. He had been known by various names: **Bura Raja (aged)**, **Budhhi Swarga Narayana (wise)**, **Pratap Singha** (because of his great deeds during his reign).
- In 1608 AD, Pratap Singha married **Magaladahi**- daughter of Koch ruler Parikshit(son of Raghu Dev).
- In 1615 AD, Balinarayan was defeated by Mughals and he fled to Ahom kingdom and Pratap Singha cordially received him.
- The Mughal claim on the Koch territory to the east of Barnadi and the trading adventures of Mughal merchants has initiated the Ahom-Mughal conflicts.
- In 1616 AD, during Pratap Singha's reign, a Muslim trader was killed in Kaliabor on suspicion of being a spy.
- Following this, to take revenge Sheikh Kasim—the governor of Bengal sent an expedition to Ahom Kingdom led by Sayed Hakim and Syed Abu Bakkar and Chatrajit.
- The Ahom army resisted the Mughal army in Bharali but got defeated.
- Later Ahom army made a surprise night attack on the Mughal army both on land and water and defeated them and many commanders and soldiers were captured and put to death.
- A vivid description of the plight of the Mughal soldiers is given in the Baharistan-i-Ghayil by Mirza Nathan- a Mughal general.
- At this victory, Pratap Singha performed the Rikkhvan ceremony.
- It was followed by a series of campaigns against the Mughals. In 1618 AD, there was another serious battle at Hajo in which the Ahoms lost nearly 4000 boats and an equal number of men were killed. The Ahom soldiers retreated.
- During his reign, war between Ahoms and Mughals reached his zenith. As a result of the decline and division of the Koch Kingdom in the 17th century, the Ahom kingdom was brought in direct line of confrontation with the Mughals.
- During his reign, the Ahom- Mughal conflict continued for over three decades at a stretch without any conflict.
- At that time **Langi Panisiya**, has been able to restore order among fugitive Ahom soldiers and Pratap Singha rewarded him by offering the newly created post of Barphukan.
- Barphukan was placed in charge of lower Assam west of Kaliabor and also head of diplomatic relations with the West.
- Pratap Singha also created another important post Barbarua. He was placed as the head of the secretariat and Judiciary immediately under the king. Mumai Tamuli was the first Barbarua of Ahom kingdom. He was the father of Lachit Barphukan.
- Frequent wars were happening- ultimately peace **was** restored by a treaty concluded by Momai Tamuli Barbarua and Allah Yar Khan in 1639 AD. By that treaty, the Barnadi on the North and the Asurar ali on the South were fixed as the boundary between the Ahoms and Mughal territories.
- **Pratap Singha introduced the Paik system in Ahom kingdom.**

Previous Years' Questions - APSC

1. The 1st Ahom King to assume the Hindu title Swarganarayan was (2000)
 - a) Siva Singha
 - b) Pratap Singha
 - c) Jayadhvaj Singha
 - d) Suhungmung**
2. The title of overall administration head of lower Assam Region during the Ahom rule was (2000, 2013)
 - a) Barphukan
 - b) Rajkhowa
 - c) Barpatra Gohain
 - d) Khongea Barua
3. Sadiya Khowa Gohain was a (2000, 2013)
 - a) Zamindar
 - b) King
 - c) Frontier Officer
4. The office of the Barbarua and Barphukan is created by (2001)
 - a) Sudangpha
 - b) Suhungmung Dihingiya Raja
 - c) Pratap Singha
 - d) Jayadhavaj Singha

MAINS QUESTION:

1. Who was known as Bamuni Konwar? (2016)
2. Discuss the Paik and Khel system of Ahom administration. Can this be considered as the foundation ground for the modern Panchayat System? (2014)

Momai Tamuli Barbarua

- He was the **first Barbarua** under Pratap Singha's reign.
- His sons- Lachit Barphukan, Laluksola Borphukan, Baduli Phukan and daughter Pakhori Gabhoru.
- Momai Tamuli was Susengpha's uncle and therefore his **daughter Pakhori Gabhoru** was married to King Jayadhvaj Singha.
- Jayadhvaj Singha and Pakhori Gabhoru's daughter **Ramani Gabhoru** was married to Muhammad Azam Shah (son of Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb)
- **Momai Tamuli Barbarua was responsible for designing the Paik system.**

Rulers after Pratap Singha

- The rulers after Pratap Singha did not have any significant events associated to their years of rule. Successors were **Surampha- Sutingpha- Sutamla** etc.
- **Sutingpha** suffered from poor health conditions from a very initial years of his birth and therefore he was nicknamed as **Nariya Raja** (Nariya in Assamese means sick). He too had a curved spine and got the name "Kekora" or crab.
- Due to ill health he was succeeded by **Sutamla**.

Sutamla

- Like his forefathers he assumed the HINDU(Brahminical) name **Jayadhwaj Singha**.
- Soon after his accession, several conspiracies were made against Jayadhwaj Singha. But all were repressed and conspirators were put to death.
- In 1650 AD, he sent an expedition to control the Nagas. This followed a series of conflicts and eventually after few years the Naga chief made submission to Jayadhwaj Singha.
- In 1655AD, Miris killed 2 Ahom subjects. After that an expedition was sent against the Miris and they were defeated. The Miris agreed to pay tribute to Jayadhwaj Singha.
- During this time, Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan fell sick and following this, Koch ruler Pran Narayan threw off the Mughal allegiance.
- After few years as a retaliatory action, **Mir Jhumla**- the newly appointed Nawab of Bengal led a huge force to invade Ahom kingdom in 1662 AD.
- Mir Jhumla was accompanied by **Rashid Khan**.
- With a huge force, Mir Jhumla and his army overran the defences put up at **Hatichala-Baritala** and **Jagighopa** fort and occupied Guwahati.
- After the occupation of the fort at Simalugurh and Samdhara, the Mughal army had a **naval victory** near Kaliabor on the river Brahmaputra.
- The Mughal army advanced towards the Ahom capital **Garhgoan** and Jayadhwaj Singha with his family and close associates evacuated the capital and fled to **Namrup**. Hence **Jayadhwaj Singha was nicknamed as “Bhaganiya Raja”**.
- Then Mir Jhumla occupied Garhgoan on March 17, 1662 and established outpost at several places in Upper Assam.(Sibsagar)
- However when the rainy season started, these outposts had been cut off by flood and became isolated. The Ahom army also started harassing by guerrilla method of warfare. Jayadhwaj Singha also returned from Namrup.
- The Mughal army was placed under great hardship and finally they agreed to peace treaty proposed by the Ahom side.
- Thus on January 9, **1663 AD** the **Treaty of Ghiladharighat** was drawn up between Mir Jhumla and Jayadhwaj Singha.
- Large territories captured during Pratap Singha’s time were lost to the Mughal empire.

Terms and Conditions of the Treaty

- Jayadhwaj became a tributary of the Mughal Emperor and he agreed to pay a huge compensation—several thousand tolas of Gold and silver and large number of elephants.
- The boundary between Mughal and the Ahoms were fixed between the Bharali River in the North Bank of Brahmaputra River and Kolong on the South bank of the Brahmaputra.
- Jayadhwaj Singha’s daughter **Ramani Gabhoru was sent to Delhi**.
- The sons of ministers were sent as hostage with the Mughals till full payment was made.
- Lastly, all prisoners must be released.
- Soon after the treaty, Mir Jhumla and his army initiated return journey and he passed away on 30th March 1663 AD during the return journey.

- **Mir Jhumla was the first Mughal commander to occupy Ahom capital.**
- Mir Jhumla was accompanied by a reporter named **Shiyabuddin Talish** who wrote **Fatiyah-i-Ibriyah** where a valuable account of Assam –its climate, population, products etc was mentioned.

Reign of Jayadhwaj Singha

- After Mir Jhumla's return, Jayadhwaj Singha returned to Bokota as Garhgoan was ravished by the Mughals.
- He was the first Ahom king to embrace Hinduism by receiving initiation from a Vaishnava priest. He made large revenue free land grants with paiks to several Satras.
- One of the notable achievements of Jayadhwaj Singha's reign was the planned settlement of villages in certain tracts of the country.
- **Jayadhwaj Singha passed away in 1663 AD.**

Reign of Chakradhwaj Singha

- Jayadhwaj Singha was succeeded by **Chakradhwaj Singha**. His Ahom name was **Supangmung**.
- Soon after he ascended the throne 2 Mughals officials visited with the reminder that the balance of war compensation(**Treaty of Ghiladharighat**) was overdue and presented him a gown(siropa) sent by Mughal court to him as a tributary king.
- Chakradhwaj Singha was a person of indomitable courage and he refused to wear the gown. He said **"Death is preferable to a state of subordination to Bengal he uttered."**
- In 1667 AD, Mughal administrator of Guwahati Said Firos Khan sent a strong worded letter to Chakradhwaj Singha demanding the outstanding indemnity.
- However, Chakradhwaj decided to fight against the Mughals and he entrusted the Command to the great warrior **Lachit Barphukan**.
- Next to Lachit Barphukan the Ahom army took charge with other generals including **Rajmantri Aton Burhagohain Dangoriya**.
- They first occupied the Mughals outpost at Kajali and Bansari and captured prisoners, horses, cannons were sent back to Garhgoan.
- Soon Guwahati and Pandu was captured by Ahom army, Guwahati was made the head quarters of BarPhukan and both the places were strongly fortified.
- An inscription in Assamese was recorded regarding this victory in **Kanai Barasi Bowa**.
- The Mughal Emperor **Aurangzeb** despatched a Rajput general named **Ram Singha** with a huge force to invade Ahom kingdom.
- Following this, Ahom erected some more fortifications. Due to the negligence in erecting a fort on the bank of Brahmaputra Lachit Barphukan beheaded his uncle. [**"Dekhote koi mumai danger nhoi"**]

The remains of this fortification is called **"Momai-Kota Garh"**.

In the engagement in Tezpur Ahoms got defeated.

However later in a naval war Ahoms defeated Mughals and Mughal army retreated to Hajo.

At this juncture, Ram Singha invited Chakradhwaj Singha for a single combat but he declined and ordered Lachit Barphukan for a renewed attack.

The war dragged on for years with loss on both sides,so Ram Singha offered a peace treaty.

- In 1670AD Chakradhwaj Singha passed away and he was succeeded by his brother (**Maju Gohain**)- **Udayaditya Singha**. [Ahom name- **Sunyatpha**]
- However the Ahoms defeated the Mughals in the famous **Battle of Saraighat [April 1671]**.
- This defeat initiated the boundary between Ahoms and the Mughals which remained till the British occupation into Assam in the year 1826.

Goalpara in the South

Manas on the North

- Lachit Barphukan died after the victory in the Battle of Saraighat.
- His remains lie in rest at Lachit Maidam constructed in 1672AD by Udayaditya Singha at **Holongapar, Jorhat**.
- On **24th November** each year Lachit Divas is celebrated in Assam as a state holiday to commemorate the heroism of Lachit Barphukan.

Previous Years' Questions -APSC

1. In the Battle of Saraighat next to Lachit Barphukan who was in leadership(2000)
 - a) Koliabhumura Barphukan
 - b) Miri Sandiloi
 - c) **Rajmantri Atan Burhagohain**
 - d) Manthir Bharali Barua
2. The king nicknamed as Bhagoniya raja was (2000)
 - a) **Sutamla**
 - b) Sunyatpha
 - c) Surampha
 - d) Sutyampha
3. Maidams are(2000)
 - a) **Elaborate burial tanks of Ahom nobility and kings**
 - b) Large fields
 - c) Temples
 - d) Enclosure for sporting activities
4. The founder of the Ahom kingdom, Chaolung Sukapha ruled Assam from 1228 to 1268. After his death, who succeeded him? (2020)
 - a) **Suteupha**
 - b) Subinpha
 - c) Sukhaangpha
 - d) Sutupha
5. **Chao** Suhungmung was the first Ahom king to adopt a Hindu title, indicating a move towards an inclusive polity. Which Hindu name did he take?(2020)
 - a) **Swarganarayan**
 - b) Durlavnarayana
 - c) Udayaditya Singha
 - d) Jayadhwaj Singha

6. The brave Assamese lady warrior Mula Gabharu died fighting against (2020)
 - a) Mir Jhumla
 - b) Detchung
 - c) **Turbak Khan**
 - d) Mirza Nathan
7. The best passing out cadet of the National Defence Academy, Khadakwasla (Pune) is conferred the(2020)
 - a) Chatrapati Shivaji Gold Medal
 - b) **Lachit Barphukan Gold Medal**
 - c) Rani Laxmibai Gold Medal
 - d) President's Gold Medal

Period of Unstable Ahom Kingdom

- After Udayaditya Singha, who was poisoned to death in August 1673 AD, the nobles choose Ramdhawaj Singha(Suklampha)to the throne. He was Udayaditya's brother.
- His reign was full of power clashes between high officials in his kingdom. For instance, the Barbarua during his reign was Debera who caused the king to be poisoned and killed him in March 1675. (Infact Debera was responsible for the death of 3 kings viz; Suklampha, Suhung and Gobar Raja)
- **No doubt** Ramdhawaj Singha was followed by Suhung, Gobar Roja, Sujinpha and Sudaipha but it was a period of weak and unstable Ahom kingdom. Thus, several weak and young kings were placed on the throne and then quickly removed by ministers and high officials for their own **selfish** gains.
- Debera was ultimately killed by **Aton Burhagohain**. It was under his leadership that many revolts were subsumed. Infact **Aton Burhagohain** got the opportunity to nominate kings to the throne.
- **For instance, he nominated Sudaipha** who took the Hindu title "**Parvatia Raja**" as he resided at Charaideo Hills(parvat).
- These events provided immense power to Aton Burhagohain. He was almost virtually controlling the state and this aspect was not liked by his officials.
- Uniting the officials who were not happy with Sudaipha's reign, Laluksola Barphukan killed the king.
- By taking advantage of the situation, **Laluksola Barphukan** handed Guwahati to the Mughals. Many Ahom high officials were dissatisfied with **Sudaipha** and therefore allied with Laluksola Barphukan.
- In 1679 AD, Sudaipha was killed and **Sulikpha** was choosen to the throne.

Sulikpha/Lora Raja/Ratnadhvaj Singha

- In 1679 AD, Sulikpha was choosed at a very early age to the throne.
- Soon Laluksola Barphukan became **greedy** and **ambitious** and started misusing his power in every affairs of the state.He instigated Sulikpha to provide death penalty to several Ahom Kuwors(princes).
- He maimed or killed any possible contender to the throne. However he couldnot kill **Godapani**.

Godapani/Gadadhar Singha's Reign (Supatpha)

- **Godapani** was from the **Tungkhungiya Phoid**(clan) who was the most capable prince to take over as a king.
- Due to Sulikpha's atrocities, he fled from Ahom Kingdom and sought shelter at **Sattras** (Vaishnava Monastries) and the adjoining hills outside the Ahom Kingdom.
- Failing to trace Prince Godapani, Sulikpha's soldiers brought his wife **Joymoti** to **Jerenga Pathar**. Despite horrific torture she refused to tell his whereabouts. After continuous torture over 14 days she died on **27 March, 1680 AD**.
- She was accorded the **honorific Mohiyokhi (Sati) due to her supreme sacrifice** for the safe of her husband and the Ahom Kingdom.
- Soon after the death of Joymoti, **Laluksola Barphukan** was assassinated by his bodyguards **Bhutai Deka, Madhav Tamuli and Aghuna Kachari** and Sulikpha too was killed.
- Nobels chose Gadadhar Singha to the throne and he restored the authority of the king and brought stability.
- He sent a huge Ahom force to reoccupy Guwahati and engaged with a full front war with Mughals at Itakhuli near Guwahati.
- Defeated Mughal **Faujdar Mansoor Khan** fled and Ahoms occupied Guwahati.
- This **Battle of Itakuli in 1682 AD** was the **last battle between Ahoms and Mughals**.
- Gadadhar Singha repressed several conspiracies against him. He also sent expeditions against Miris and Nagas.
- By that time, **Eksaran Naam Dharma(Neo Vaishnavite)** and the Vaishnava Satras have attained remarkable influence in Ahom Kingdom and the country become full of Vaishnava followers. Many people became followers of Neo- Vaishnavism to get **exemption from the Paik System**.
- Moreover Gadhadhar Singha had developed personal grudge against some Gossains or Satradhikars as they refused to give him shelter during his exile.
- So, Gadadhar Singha decided to break the power of Sattras and Gossains. At the order, many Gossains were captured and killed. Their properties were also confiscated.
- The disciples or followers of Satras were captured and robbed of their property and forcefully engaged them in various works.
- By engaging the idle (Dhud) followers a long road on the south bank of Brahmaputra and hence it came to be known as **Dhudor Ali**.
- **Dhudor Ali**- 212km long road starting from Kamargoan in Golaghat to Joypur in Dibrugarh touching Mariani, Jorhat and now it is a **State Highway**.
- He also initiated a **detailed** land survey of Ahom Kingdom for the first time.
- Gadadhar Singha built the Shiva Temple at **Ummananda Island(Peacock island)**
- He was a Shakta follower. Died in 1696 AD and was succeeded by his son **Lai**.

Reign of Rudra Singha

- After the death of Gadadhar Singha his elder son Lai assumed the name **Sukhrungpha** and Hindu name **Rudra singha**.

- He inherited a strong monarchy and a peaceful kingdom from his father.
- He reversed the policy of Gadadhar Singha towards Vaishnava Satras and Gossains were allowed to resume their old position. However they were asked to make **Majuli** their headquarters. Since then Majuli became the chief seat of the Vaishnava Satras.
- From this decision, Rudra Singha can be seen as a Diplomatic King who in order to keep his kingdom at peace reversed the policy of his father. However this step can also be understood as a policy to keep this strong power at check (before his eyes) rather than letting them free to retaliate back to the Ahom kingdom all of a sudden with a great force.
- Although he was illiterate, Rudra Singha had a dynamic personality. Apart from maintaining balance in his empire he too took step to send expeditions for trade expansions. Instead of **isolationist policy** he had an international vision. He established extensive trade with **Tibet** and also sent his ambassadors to various parts of India.
- Rudra Singha imported an artisan named **Ghanashyam** from Bengal and under his supervision a capital city was constructed in **Rangpur** and several brick palaces were built.
- He built the **Joy Daul** and **Joy Sagar Tank** in memory of his mother Joymoti.
- He built the **Ranganath Daul, Fakua Daul**. A **RANG GHAR** was built using **BAMBOO** and **CANE** during his reign. **Later Pramatta Singha had erected the masonry Rang Ghar.**
- During his reign, masonry bridges over Namdang and Demow River. Metaka Ali, Kharikatia Ali are some roads constructed during his reign.
- The detailed land survey initiated during the reign of Gadadhar Singha was completed by Rudra Singha.
- He created the post of **Bezbaruah** for practising traditional medicine.
- Earlier alongwith the dead king servants were also buried in the maidams and Rudra Singha put an end to this inhumane custom. Rudra Singha also patronised games and sports, culture and literature.
- He created the post of **Gyan Baruah and Kukura Suwa Baruah** to look after music, dance and sports respectively.
- Rudra Singha celebrated the **BIHU** festival in his palace with pomp and grandeur. He too was fond of watching animal fights and therefore constructed the **Royal Sports pavilion- Rang Garh with Bamboo.**
- Rudra Singha patronised several scholars and authors. **Kaviraj Chakraborty** was the royal poet of his court.
- Rudra Singha decided to formally embrace Hinduism and invited **Krishnaram Bhattacharya** but later he asked his sons to follow it.
- He had 5 sons- **Siva Singha, Pramatta Singha, Rajeswar Singha, Lakshmi Singha and Barjana Gohain.**

Sutanpha's Reign

- After ascending the throne he assumed the Hindu name **Siva Singha** and as per his father's wish he became a disciple of Krishnaram Bhattacharya.
- He gave the management of Kamakhya Temple situated in Nilachal Hills to Krishnaram Bhattacharya. And his successors came to be known as **Parbatiya Gosains.**

- During the reign of Siva Singha, there was unprecedented growth of Hindu religious proclivities. The King was completely under the influence of Brahminical priest and astrologers.
- In 1722 AD, Siva Singha was alarmed by their astrologers that his rule will soon come to an end(will die) and to avert that he declared chief **Queen Phuleswari as Bar Raja** and handed over the royal power to her.
- She too was under the influence of Brahmans and therefore wanted to make **Shaktism** the state religion. She ordered the Vaishnava Mahantas and their followers to worship Goddess Durga.
- When refused she forced some Gosains to be brought to a Shakta shrine where sacrifices were being offered and their forehead was smeared with blood of the sacrificed animals.
- The Moamorias never forgave this insult and these incidents will slowly gear up the Moamoriya rebellion.
- Queen Phuleswari died in 1731AD and Siva Singha married her sister **Draupadi** and made her Bar Raja with the name **Queen Ambika**.
- **It was during her reign that the tallest Daul SHIVA DAUL** was constructed at Sibsarga.
- Queen Ambika died in 1741 AD and she was followed by **Enadari** who took the name **Sarbeswari**.
- **Dhai Ali** was built during Siva Singha's reign. Bar Raja Phuleswari built **Gauri Sagar Tank and a survey** was initiated in Kamrup and Bakota and recorded in **Pera Kagoz. (Register)**
- Bar Raja Phuleswari patronised **education** and learning to a great extent. She established several **"Toll"** for learning.
- During the reign of Shiva Singha, Kabiraj Chakravarty authored **Sakuntala Kabya**. Ananta Acharya authored **Ananta Lahari** and **Kabichandra Dwij** authored **Ram Kumar Harana and Dharma Puran**.
- In 1734 AD at **Phuleswari's** order, **Sukumar Barkaith** authored the famous book on medical treatment and training of elephants—"Hasti Bidiyarnava".
- In 1739AD four Europeans paid a visit to Siba Singha namely- **Bill, Godwin, Lister and Mill**.

Reign of Pramatta Singha

- After the death of Siva Singha, his brother Pramatta Singha ascended the throne in 1744 AD.
- He assumed the Ahom name **Sunenpha**. He constructed the **masonry Rang Ghar-** the Royal Sports pavilion to watch animal fights and other sports.
- New Masonry buildings and gateways were constructed at Garhgoan. The **Rudreswar** and **Sukreswar** temples were constructed at Guwahati.
- His reign was almost peaceful without any major conflict and expedition and after an uneventful reign of 7 years he died in 1751AD.
- After his death, his brother **Rajeswar Singha ascended the throne in 1751AD**.

Reign of Rajeswar Singha (Surampha)

- In 1758 AD, Dafalas **committed** several raids in Ghiladharighat.
- As a punishment Rajeswar Singha erected forts and prohibited the Dafalas to enter the plains.
- Finally they made submission to Ahom Kings and an agreement was made to allow Dafalas to levy taxes from frontier areas.
- In 1765 AD two huge expeditions were sent against the Mikirs as they have stopped paying tributes to Ahom King.
- Following that Mikirs came in **with tribute** and begged forgiveness.

- In November 1765 AD Kachari King **Sandhikari** was summoned but he refused and then Rajeswar Singha sent a force under **Kirtichandra Barbaruah**.
- Following this, Kachari king came and paid tribute to Rajeswar Singha. He was accompanied by Raja of **Manipur Jai Singh**.
- Jai Singh was taking shelter in Kachari Kingdom because his country was invaded by the **Burmese**.
- Manipuri King Jai Singh sought help from the Ahom king to fight against the Burmese.
- Rajeswar Singha agreed to help him and dispatched **Harnath Phukan** to Manipur with a huge Ahom force.
- To reach Manipur at earliest, the force marched through hills to the South of Charaideo. But on their way through deep and dense jungle, the Ahom soldiers lost their way and they had to find ways by **clearing creepings (Lota)**. Hence it was named as **Lota Kota Ron**.
- The soldiers faced great hardships many got killed, some were killed by Nagas and finally they had to return.
- After that in 1768AD another force with ten thousand troops was sent to Manipur under Kirtichandra Barbaruah.
- With the help of this force, Jai Singh has driven out the Burmese and re-occupied the throne of Manipur.
- Jai Singh sent valuables and also gave his daughter **Kuranganayani** in marriage to Rajeswar Singha.
- A number of Manipuri people accompanied Kuranganayani and they settled in Desoi river. It came to be known as Managala Hat as Ahoms called Manipuris as Mangalu.
- Soon after Rajeswar Singha fell ill and dies in 1769 AD at Dergoan.
- Rajeswar Singha was a able king but he preferred **pleasure** to state affairs and hence he left the government in the hands of Kirtichandra barbaruah.
- Barbaruah however became greedy **and ambitious** and therefore caused resentment among the nobles.
- **Numali Bar Gohain** wrote a Buranji named **Chakaripheti** where it was mentioned that Kirtichandra was from a lower descent.
- Following that Kirtichandra Barbaruah obtained the ascent from the king to examine all Buranji's in existence at that time and which contained any objectionable content were burnt.
- Soon after, several assassinations were plotted against Kirtichandra but failed.

Note

- Rajeswar Singha was a strict Hindu. Soon after his accession he paid a long visit to Guwahati to worship in various temples.
- He erected several temples and Dauls. He erected dauls in Bashistha ashram, Manikarneswar and Nabagrah Dewalaya.
- He also erected a new dual in Negheriting.
- Construction of **Kareng Ghar** and **Talatal Ghar** were the best notable works of Rajeswar Singha.

Reign of **Lakshmi Singha** and the Moamoriya rebellion

- After the death of Rajeswar Singha, there was a difference of opinion amongst the nobles regarding the successor of the throne.
- One side headed by Kirtichandra was in favour of Lakshmi Singha and the other side was in favour of Namrup Raja- the eldest son of Rajeswar Singha.
- Finally Lakshmi Singha ascended the throne in 1769AD and he assumed the name **Sunyeopha**. He was already old (55 years) when he became king and hence he left the state affairs in the hands of Kirtichandra barbaruah.
- Lakshmi Singha's reign was disrupted by the **Revolt of Moamoriyas**. Several causes can be attributed to the rise of that revolt.

NOTE: After the death of Srimanta sankardev(**Mahaprayan**), the Vaishnava sattras were divided into four Songhotis due to disagreements and fights among the disciples. They are:-

1. **Kaal**
2. **Brahma**
3. **Purush**
4. **Nika**

The Moamoriya Rebellion (1769-1805)

- The Moamoriyas were the followers of the Mayamara Sattras which belonged to the Kaal Songhoti.
- The word Moamoriya has originated from the word '**Mayamara**'. 'Mayamara' was the name of a Vaishnava Sattras.
- Although it included people of various caste the primary tribe was that of Moran (tribe).
- The religious preceptor (**Satradhikar**) of this sattras belonged to the Sudra caste. He was referred to as the **Mahanta**. Since these low caste people found special dignity and preference they felt empowered and this led to the increasing number of followers and devotees of the guru.
- This growing power led the Mahantas an equal power to that of the Ahom royalty and this feeling of equal status and power created a dislike between the two.
- There were various reasons be it political, religious or social economic behind this clash of power.
- However the relation between the Moamoriyas and the Ahom Kings have started degrading since the time of Pratap Singha.
- After that, Surampha and Gadadhar Singha provided death penalties to Moamoriya Mahanta **Nityanandadev and Baikunthadev** respectively. Bar Raja Phuleswari forced the Moamoriyas to follow Shakta rituals and smear their forehead with the blood of sacrificed animals.
- Kirtichandra Barbaruah provided physical punishment to **NAHAR**- the chief of the Morans who came to make annual offer of elephants. Nahar was offended at this and was looking for support to take revenge on the Barbarua.
- One day Lakshmi Singha was travelling **along with** Kirtichandra and they met Moamoriya Gossain. He showed respect to the king but did not offer any respect to the latter. So Kirtichandra got offended and abused Moamoriya Gossain.
- Soon the Moamoriyas decided to fight and appointed his son **Bagan** to lead the rebels.

- In 1769 AD, the revolt took place. The first engagement they were defeated but soon another Moran named **Raghab Sakia** led the force and defeated Ahom soldiers in several engagement.
- The Moamriya rebels then occupied the capital Rangpur.
- Lakshmi Singha was captured and held captive in Jay Sagar Daul and Kirtichandra Barbaruah was put to death.
- Raghab assumed the post of Barbaruah and **Ramakanta**- son of Moran Chief Nahar was chosen to the throne.
- Coins were minted in Ramakanta's name in 1769AD.
- The **Moamoriyas preserved the entire structure of the Ahoms** government and for several years the new regime didn't face any opposition from the Ahoms.
- But soon Ahom officials **along with Queen Kuranganayani** planned to overthrow Moamoriya regime.
- Finally in 1770AD taking advantage of Bihu festival **Raghab Barbaruah** was killed.
- Ramakanta escaped but many other Moamoriya officers were put to death.
- Lakshmi Singha was released from captivity and was reinstalled in the throne.
- After that a vigorous persecution of Moamoriyas took place. A large number of Moamoriyas were captured and killed at Lakshmi Singha's order.
- In 1780AD lakshmi Singha died at an age of 68years.

Reign of Gaurinath Singha

- Lakshmi Singha was succeeded by his son Gaurinath Singha in 1780AD.
- The Ahom kingdom began to decline from the time of Gaurinath Singha.
- In 1782, the Moamoriyas insurrection rose again with renewed vigour and increased hostilities.
- They advanced to garhgoan but the rebels were treated with severity and many were executed.
- In the same year 1782AD, **Purnanada Burhagohain** got appointed. He was a brave farsighted and efficient Ahom officer. He advised Gaurinath Singha to adopt liberal policy towards Moamoriyas.
- In 1785AD Gaurinath Singha allowed Moamoriyas to have a Guru and Pitambardev was appointed as Moamoriya Mahanta.
- After a brief pause, the distributary caused by the Moamoriyas swept down across the north bank.
- This time **Harihar Tanti** led the Moamorias the defeated Ahom soldiers in several engagements and advanced towards the capital Rangpur.
- Gaurinath Singha sought assistance from Manipur, Kachari, Jayantia and the chiefs of Rani, Beltola, Luki. Before the help arrived the rebels occupied Rangpur.
- Gaurinath Singha with his family escaped to Guwahati.
- At Rangpur, the Moamoriyas set up Bharat Singha as king and the Hatisungi Morans set up Sarbananda as their king of the territory to the east of Dihing and both minted coins in their names.
- Then Ahom administration was shifted to **Dichoi** and from there Purnananda Burhagohain continued fight against Moamoriyas.
- Krishnanarayan of Darrang rebelled and occupied North Guwahati.

- At that time several petty chiefs declared independence and finally Gaurinath Singha sought British assistance.

Reign of Gaurinath Singha & Burmese Invasion

- Gaurinath Singha appealed for help of men and materials to the British East India Company.
- He appealed through a salt merchant named **Raush and commissioner of Koch Bihar—Mr. Douglas.**
- In response to this the Governor General Lord Cornwallis dispatched Captain Thomas Welsh with sepoy and he arrived at Goalpara in November 1792.
- The meeting between Gaurinath Singha and Captain Welsh took place at Nagarberra on the Brahmaputra.

Operation of Captain Thomas Welsh

- Captain Welsh suppressed the rebellious elements in Guwahati and on the North Bank.
- He also pacified Darrang Raja Krishnanarayan and expelled many of the Burkundazes (hired North Indian soldiers) who assisted him.
- Then Captain Welsh advanced to Jorhat. Then he defeated the Moamorias in Rangpur and restored the authority of Gaurinath Singha at Rangpur in 1794 AD.
- Soon after this success, **Captain Welsh was recalled** by Governor General Sir John Shore and he left Assam.
- During his stay in the kingdom, Captain Welsh concluded a commercial treaty in 1793 by which commerce between Assam and Bengal was sought to be put on “reciprocal basis.”
- The Report of Captain Welsh which he submitted to his government gives some important information in regard to the administration of Ahoms, trade and commerce, products etc.
- Gaurinath Singha was very cruel and vindictive. But he did some good work like abolition of human sacrifice at the Kechaikhati temple at Sadiya.
- In 1794 AD, he **permanently shifted the Ahom Capital to Dichoi(Jorhat).**

Reign of Kamaleswar Singha

- Gaurinath Singha died in 1795 and he was succeeded by Kamaleswar Singha.
- He left the administration to the most efficient officer—Purnananda Burha Gohain.
- His reign witnessed localised revolts at several places in Kamrup, at Sadiya by the Khamtis, Pani Noras, Miris, fresh Moamaria insurrection in league with the Daflas but all those were successfully suppressed.
- The revolt at Kamrup was led by Haradutta and his brother Birdutta. They organised some Barkundez soldiers. The local people called them Dumduniya and hence the revolt was known as Dumduniya or Donduwa Droh.
- The Donduwa Droh was soon repressed and Haradutta and Birdutta was killed by Kalia Bhomora Barphukan and he was offered the title Pratap Ballav by Kamaleswar Singha.
- Kalia Bhomora Barphukan also decided to build a bridge over Brahmaputra near Silghat. The second bridge over Brahmaputra “Kolia Bhomora Setu”(1987) connecting Kaliabor and Tezpur has been named after Kalia Bhomora.
- In 1805, there was a fresh rising of Momariyas under Sarbanada Singha.

- Moamoriyas also brought Burmese twice to the country for assistance but Purnananda bribed the Burmese and sent them back.
- Finally Purnanda Burhagohain concluded a treaty with Moamoriyas and they settled in between Brahmaputra and Burhidihing which came to known as **“Matak” state**. Their chief was given the title **“Bar Senapati”**.
- Kamaleswar Singha connected the new capital Jorhat by constructing several new roads like the Na-Ali, Rajabahar Ali, Mohobandha Ali, Kamarbandha Ali etc.
- He also built a copper- house at Kamakhya
- Kamaleswar Sigha died in 1810 AD.

Reign of Chandrakanta Singha

- Kamaleswar Singha was succeeded by Chandra Kanta Singha.
- He assumed the Ahom name Sudenpha. As he was very young at in age, the control of Ahom Kingdom remained at the hands of Purnananda.
- The reign of Chandra Kanta Singha saw the Burmese invasion.
- Chandra Kanta Singha developed a great friendship with Satram who soon became greedy and insolent and plotted assassination of Burhagohain. He was captured and banished to Namrup.
- Consequently at the death of Kalia Bomora, Badanchandra was appointed as the Barphukan.
- The appointment of Badanchandra Barphukan was the most disastrous decision for Ahom kingdom.
- Badanchandra Barphukan was very corrupt and soon friction was developed between Purnananda Buragohain and Badan Chandra Barphukan.
- Finally Burhagohain sent man to arrest Badan Chandra but he fled and went to Calcutta and sought British assistance . But the British refused to intervene.
- Following that Badan Chandra went to Burmese capital Amarapura and pleaded for assistance against the Burhagohain. The Burmese Monarch Bodoupaya already had his eye on Assam.

First Burmese Invasion

- Bodoupaya took the opportunity and in 1817AD he dispatched a huge Burmese army of about 16000 men with Badan Chandra to Assam. It was the first Burmese invasion to Assam.
- Purnananda Singha sent Ahom army to resist Burmese. At that juncture, unfortunately he died of heart attack.
- Purnananda’s death was a big blow to Ahom Kingdom. He was succeeded by his son Ruchinath Burhagohain.
- In this **first Battle at Ghiladharighat**, Burmese defeated the Ahom army. Then the Burmese army marched forward and arrived at Jorhat.
- On their line of March, Burmese army burnt thousands of villages.
- The Burmese army arrived at Jorhat.
- Badanchandra was reinstated as Barphukan and he became all powerful.
- Chandrakanta Singha was retained as a nominal king and all relatives and adherents of Burha Gohain was killed.

- In April 1817 AD the Burmese returned to their country and took with them an Ahom girl named **Hemo Aideo** and a very huge amount of presents.

Fall of the Ahom Kingdom

- In April 1817 AD, Burmese army returned and soon after their departure, Barbarua quarrelled with Badan Barphukan.
- The king's mother Numali Rajmao, Nirbhay Narayan Bargohain took side with Barbarua.
- Finally Badanchandra was assassinated in 1818AD.
- Ruchinath Burghagohain decided to place Brajnath Singha in Ahom throne. But he was ineligible and his son Purandar Singha was chosen to the throne.
- Chandrakanta Singha was captured and mutilated and made ineligible for further accession to the throne.

Second Burmese Invasion 1819

- Soon Burmese king came to know about the assassination of Barphukan, a huge force was sent under Alu Mirgi and they reached Assam in February, 1819AD.
- It was the **second Burmese** invasion to Assam.
- In the Battle near Nazira, initially Ahom army successfully resisted the Burmese. But later the Ahom army successfully resisted the Burmese. But later the Ahom army retreated and Burmese army advanced to Jorhat.
- Purandar Singha and Ruchinath fled to Guwahati, Purandar Singha reached Calcutta and appealed the British East India Company to assist him but they refused to intervene.
- Chandra Kanta Singha was once again restored to the throne by the Burmese. He was only nominal ruler and the real authority was vested on Burmese commander.
- In 1819AD, Alu Mingri returned by retaining few Burmese army in Ahom Kingdom under **Mingimaha Tiluwa**.
- After the departure of the Burmese, Chandra K. Singha sought to raise a fort at Jaipur against further Burmese invasion. It was supervised by Patal Barbaruah.
- In 1821 **Burmese Monarch Bagyidew** sent a Burmese force with presents of ornaments and dress to Chandrakanta Singha.

Third Burmese Invasion

- The Burmese force soon reached near Jaipur and seeing such preparations for the fort they killed Patal Bararuah.
- Chandrakanta got afraid of this hostile move and in February 1821AD he fled to Guwahati. The Burmese tried to convince him to return but failed.
- In 1821 AD, the Burmese placed Jogeswar Singha as a nominal king and the real authority was vested on Burmese commander Mingimaha Tiluwa.
- Chandrakanta Singha crossed the border and entered Bengal where he collected arms and men to fight the Burmese.

Fall of the Ahom Kingdom

- In 1882 AD, Mingimaha Bendula arrived in Assam, with a large reinforcement.

- In April 1822 AD the Battle of Mahgarh took place between Chandra Kanta Singha and Burmese but Chandrakanta was defeated.
- In June 1822 AD Chandrakanta fought the last Battle of Hadirachaki and there also he got defeated.
- Chandrakanta fought with exemplary bravery but he was badly defeated due to shortage of ammunition.
- After the battle of Hadirachaki, the Burmese formally took over Ahom kingdom.

Manor Din

Period of Burmese rule

- The period from 1821-1824 is called period of Burmese rule.
- During this period, the Burmese devastated the country and committed atrocities by plunder and killing of innocent people.
- People were burnt alive, some portions of their bodies were cut off alive.
- Their apprehension were so horrific that it cannot be described.
- In addition to that, the Singphos allied with Burmese and made constant raids and carried off helpless Assamese people as their slaves.
- Even after so many years Burmese left, people of Assam remember Manor Din or Manor Upodrob with horror.

Friction Between Burmese & British

- The Burmese started demanding the surrender of refugees including Chandrakanta Singha and their supporters.
- In that time, the border conflict in the East India Company's Chittagong Frontier with the Burmese empire also took serious turn.
- Bengal was the most prized possession of British and anticipating a Burmese invasion on Bengal, British Governor. General Lord Amherest decided to fight.
- Governor General Lord Amherest declared war on the 5th of March 1824 against Burma(Myanmar) under the command of General Archibald Campbell.

Anglo-Burmese War

- The British army entered Goalpara frontier of Assam, defeated the small Burmese garrisons in Lower Assam and advanced to upper Assam.
- The British army in Brahmaputra Valley was led by a civilian(agent of Governor General) David Scott, Colonel Richards and Captain Neufuille.
- At first British troops occupied Moramukh- main establishment of Burmese.
- On 21st January 1825 British army occupied Rangpur and martial law was declared. David Scott was appointed as civil officer incharge of civil matters and Col. Richards incharge of the army.
- The Burmese and their ally Singphos were driven out of Assam.
- In 1824 Colonel Innes with the help of Gambhir Singh driven out the Burmese from Manipur.
- In June 1825 Captain Neufuille defeated the allies of Burmese and Singphos. The Burmese were expelled and Singphos submitted. In that mission, Captain Neufuille rescued around 6000 Assamese captives.

- The British army invaded Burma and in the Battle of Yangon and Battle of Prome, the Burmese were badly defeated.
- Narratives of Burmese War by Wilson provides a detailed account of Anglo Burmese War.

Treaty of Yandaboo, 1826

- Finally on 24th **February 1826** a treaty of peace and friendship was concluded between the British and the Burmese at Yandaboo.
- By this treaty of Yandaboo, the Burmese monarch renounced all claims upon and promised to refrain from all interference with Assam, Manipur and Arakan and also recognised Gambhir Singh as the Raja of Manipur.
- British kept Assam under its occupation. It was constituted as province of Assam and British administration was introduced.

The Moamoriya Rebellion (1769-1805)

Reasons for the rebellion

1. Change in Religious Policy of Ahom

- **In equal** royal patronages to various sattras
- The policy of oppression and domination of Vaishnava and the suppression of the Sattra institution by the Ahom king Gadadhar Singha. He took steps to curtail the power of the Sattras which were gaining momentum as a parallel kingdom.
- King Rudra Singha used the policy of divide and rule. He gave special privileges to Brahmanical Sattras by which he created a rift between them and the Sudra Sattras.
- Queen Phuleswari insulted the Sudra mahantas by forcing them and their disciples to smear the blood of sacrificed animals on their forehead as “tilak”.
- The difference between Hindu Brahminism and Mahapurishiya Vaishnavism was another major cause for the rebellion.
- Swargadeo Rudra Singha invited a Shakta Brahman Pandit named Krishnaram Bhattacharya from Bengal . Almost all kings after Rudra Singha became his disciple. At times these rulers acted in a biased manner increasing the social isolation.
- Paik **system** responsible for Moamoriya rebellion.
- Decrease in the number of Paiks in a GOT: Earlier 4 Paiks made up a Got and they rendered services for 3 months in rotation. However during the reign of Rajeswar Singha, each Got was to comprise 3 Paiks which were to provide service for 3months to the state in rotation.
- Exploited the hardworking common people, they were not ready for change.
- Division of Paiks into Chamua and Kanri Paiks
- The idea that since the economy of the Ahom state depended completely on the Paiks, the Ahoms will understand their troubles were falsified.
- Socio-Economic cause(imbalance)
- To end the long saga of exploitation, individual leaders like ‘Gagini’ the son of Moamoriya Mahanta Ashtabhuj took up the responsibility for the future rebellion.

The events of the Moamoriya Rebellion

AIM : To end the Ahom rule

- Towards the end of 1769 Moamoriyas collected 7000 soldiers and step forward for the revolt.
- First instance they neglected the Ahom kings authority and attacked a group that had gone into the forests in the Moran inhabited area to collect timber on behalf of the king.
- The king responded immediately by sending a force of 2000 soldiers against them.
- Ahoms defeated in this encounter.
- Then Swargadeo Lakshmi Singha dispatched a huge army of 14000 soldiers to quell the rebellion.
- The Commander of this force was **Harnam Bhitoruwal Phukan**.
- Ahoms defeated again and Phukan was captivated. Then the Moamoriyas marched towards the Charaideo Hills and proceeded towards the capital. They captured the king and imprisoned him in the JOYDOUL. Kritichandra too was imprisoned.
- The Moamoriyas captured the Ahom capital and established Nahor Khora's son Ramakanta or Ramananda on the throne.
- **Ragha Moran** became the **Borbarua**.

The Second Phase of the Rebellion

- After Lakshmi Singha was reinstated inhuman activities too started in a huge scale.
- In the second phase the Burhagohain was **Ghanashyam**.
- He tried to bring normalcy in the kingdom but almost half of the entire Ahom kingdom was de-populated.

The Third Phase of the Rebellion

- The desire for revenge made the Moamoriyas join hands with the Daflas and Bahatiyas and once again the revolt started against the Ahoms.
- As a result on 19th January 1788, Swargadeo Gaurinath Singha left his capital for Guwahati.
- The Moamoriyas captured the capital and established a relative of the Mahanta, **Bharat Singha** on the throne.
- After the death of **Ghanashyam Burhagohain**, his son, **Lari Gohain** became the Burhagohain. This person is famous as **Purnananda Burhagohain**.
- After the 3rd Phase of the rebellion the British entered but they returned back.
- The **British** first came to Assam on the invitation of the Ahom **Swargadeo Gaurinath Singha in 1792**.
- A **Trade** treaty was concluded between Gaurinath Singha and Captain Welsh on 8th February 1793 according to which:
 1. Tax of 10% was levied on **any** commodity **imported** into Assam from any English dominated region.
 2. Tax of 10% was levied on **any** commodity **exported** from Assam to any English dominated region.
 3. **No tax was to be collected on grain and rice.**
 4. Two custom offices were set up in Guwahati and Kandahar for collection of import and export duties.
 5. No other European traders were to trade in Assam without the permission of the English or the Ahom government.

- The Assamese soldiers alongwith the British compelled the Moamoriyas to flee Rangpur. A large number of Moamoriyas were killed.
- Raja Bharat Singha was badly injured and he escaped. On 21st March 1794 Gaurinath Singha entered the capital.

The Fourth Phase of the Rebellion

- **Sir John Shore the new Governor General after Lord Cornwallis** adopted a new policy of **non-intervention**. Therefore he called back Captain Welsh from Assam.
- As soon as he returned the political turmoil **once again** raised its head in the state.
- The Moamoriyas took over Rangpur again. Gaurinath singha too died in 1795 leaving the state in a chaotic condition.
- During this time, Purnananda Burhagohain was looking after the state affairs and therefore he nominated the son of **Kadamdighala Gohain- KINARAM** as the successor of Gaurinath Singha.
- Kinaram took the Hindu name **Kamaleswar Singha** and the Ahom name **Suklengpha**.

NOTE:

- After the death of Bharat Singha, the Moamoriyas revolted again in **Bengmara**(present day Tinsukia).
- They were led by **Sarbananda Singha** and helped by the Singphos.
- With the help of the Singphos they too came in contact with the Burmese.
- Purnananda Burhagohain very well understood that this friendship with the Burmese was a bad omen for the kingdom and as such he tried his best to solve issues with the Moamoriyas.
- Purnananda realised that among Moamoriyas the Moran were the majority and the strongest.
- He therefore concluded a treaty with the Moamoriya leader **Sarbananda**.
- With Bengmara as the centre the area between Brahmaputra and Dihing was named as **Matak Rajya- and this was given to Sarbananda**.
- Sarbananda agreed to pay tribute to the Ahoms.

Captain Welsh description of Assam

- His account consisted of details regarding the Ahom administration, the Paik system, the process of selecting Ahom kings etc.
- He also highlighted the dictatorship of Kirtichandra Barbarua and the power struggles between the Mahantas and the Ahom royalty.
- Regarding trade and economy, Welsh mentioned that Assam and Bengal had large scale trade, revenue amounting to Rs. 90000 per year. But only Rs. 26000 reached the royal treasury.
- There was scarcity of **Salt and** much has to be imported and therefore it was the expensive commodity.
- Inferior quality salt was present in **Sadiya and Nagapahar in Assam**.

Burmese Invasion of Assam

Note:

- The way Sarbananda was made an independent king of Matak Rajya by Purnananda Burhagohain. Similarly in order to diplomatically handle the Singphos, the Burhagohain gave to the **Singpho Chief- Bichanong** an Ahom girl named **Rangili** to establish cordial relations.
- Bichanong however presented Rangili to the Burmese king **Bodawpaya** to maintain good relations.
- Ironically it will be **Rangili** who later will help Bandachandra against Purnananda Burhagohain.

First Burmese Invasion, 1817

- Badan Chandra with the help of Burmese army attacked the Ahoms led by **Daman Gogoi** and **Hau Bora**.
- However the Ahoms were defeated and this news saddened Purnananda so much that he died.
- His son **Ruchinath** succeeded him.
- **1st engagement** between Ahoms and Burmese- At **Ghiladharighat**
- **2nd engagement - Kathalbari**, which lies to the east of Dihing.
- **Ruchinath** fled after he lost in the second engagement.
- **The Burmese made** Badan as the Barphukan and he became all powerful, Chandra Kanta Singha became just a nominal king.
- Along with Badan, two scribes came to Assam and they wrote a note on the Burmese military operations in Assam. They are **“Baishali Hukong”** and **“Baishali Mung-dun-sun-kham”**.
- The first invasion of the Burmese 1817 cannot be termed as a real **invasion** because they only came to help Badan Chandra.

Second Burmese Invasion

- Numali Rajmao along with some officials hatched a conspiracy to get rid of Badan Chandra as he was becoming all powerful. As per their plot Ban Chandra was killed in 1818 by a Subedar named Rup Singh.
- Soon Burmese king came to know about the assassination of Barphukan, a huge force was sent under Alu Mirgi and they reached Assam in February, 1819AD.
- It was the second Burmese invasion to Assam.
- In the battle near Nazira, initially Ahom army successfully resisted the Burmese. But later the Ahom army successfully resisted the Burmese. But later the Ahom army retreated and Burmese army advanced to Jorhat.
- Purandar Singha and Ruchinath fled to Guwahati, Purandar Singha reached Calcutta and appealed the British East India Company to assist him but they refused to intervene.
- Chandra Kanta Singha was once again restored to the throne by the Burmese. He was only nominal ruler and the real authority was vested on Burmese commander.
- In 1819AD, Alu Mingri returned by retaining few Burmese army in Ahom Kingdom under Mingimaha Tiluwa.
- After the departure of the Burmese, Chandra K. Singha sought to raise a fort at Jaipur against further Burmese invasion. It was supervised by Patal Barbaruah.

Third Burmese Invasion

- In 1821 Burmese Monarch Bagyidew sent a Burmese force with presents of ornaments and dress to Chandrakanta Singha.
- The Burmese force soon reached near Jaipur and seeing such preparations for the fort they killed Patal Bararuah.
- Chandrakanta got afraid of this hostile move and in February 1821AD he fled to Guwahati. The Burmese tried to convince him to return but failed.
- In 1821 AD, the Burmese placed Jogeswar Singha as a nominal king and the real authority was vested on Burmese commander Mingimaha Tiluwa.
- Chandrakanta Singha crossed the border and entered Bengal where he collected arms and men to fight the Burmese.

Fall of the Ahom Kingdom & the Burmese

- The Burmese had already won **Arakan, Manipur and Cachar**. By bringing Assam into their control, they at once became the rivals of the British.
- The presence of the Burmese in Assam and the neighbouring states posed a threat to the English power.
- Their efforts to stop the Burmese advance led to the **First Anglo-Burmese War of 1824-1826**.

The First Anglo-Burmese War

- The imperialistic activities plus the frequent raids in the British territories made the Burmese enemies with the East India **Company**.
- The Burmese too took steps to conquer British occupied territories .
- From Nogoan and through Manipur, which they won in 1819, the Burmese entered Cachar.
- Meanwhile Cachar King, **Govind Chandra** unable to withstand the attack of the Manipuri king **Gambhir Singh** took refuge with the English.
- The English understood that if Cachar came under the Burmese, then it could pose a threat to Srikhatta(Sylhet), which lies on the Cachar frontier, under British domination.
- Hence they undertook necessary steps to prevent the Burmese aggression.
- On **5th March, 1824 AD** the English Governor General **Lord Amherst** declared war against the Burmese King.
- With full preparation the British attacked from 3 sides.
 1. Under **Lord MacMoraine** a British force advanced up the Brahmaputra from Goalpara to Guwahati.
 2. Under **David Scott** another troop advanced through Chittagong and the Srikhatta frontier through Arakan towards Manipur and the Jaintia Country.
 3. Under **Sir Archibald Campbell** the soldiers advanced by way of the Irrawaddy river to Rangoon.
- On **28th March 1824 AD**, the English forces easily occupied Guwahati.
- Later when the English army occupied the Burmese town of Yandaboo, the king of Burma had no option but to conclude a peace treaty.
- Peace treaty: **Treaty of Yandaboo, 24th February, 1826**.

- **Article 2 of the Yandaboo treaty concerned Assam.** According to it, the king of Ava(Burma) renounced all claims over Assam and would abstain from future interference.
- They too wont interfere in other states like Cachar and Jayantia.
- **NOTE: Neither the Burmese handed over Assam to the English, nor anyone on behalf of Assam had signed in the Yandaboo treaty.** Infact, there was no unified or common power to represent Assam.
- Towards the end of 1826, the Ahom king Jogeswar Singha died at Jagighopa.

Treaty of Yandaboo

Main provisions

1. The Burmese king had to pay an amount of Rs. One crore as war indemnity to the English Company.
2. The British would take over **Arakan and Tanasserim.**
3. The Burmese would not be able to interfere in Assam, Cachar and Jayantia country.
4. The Burmese recognized Gambhir Singh as the king of Manipur.
5. There would be a British Resident at Ava. The British too allowed the king of Ava to station an officer at Calcutta.

The English forces entered Assam in 1824 to drive out the Burmese. In 1826 they expelled the Burmese from Assam.

British Rule & its Consolidation

- The advent of British into Assam was in regards of issuing a helping hand to the Ahoms fight the Burmese. However the Company annexed Assam all of a sudden which was not the **intention prior** to the Anglo- Burmese war.
- By bringing almost 30,000 Assamese people who were taken by the Burmese as slaves, the British too appeared as saviour.
- The political imbalance, the atrocities etc all created suitable conditions for the British to be accepted by the Assam people as their rulers.

Governance of David Scott

- After the death of Jogeswar Singha in 1825, the immediate **responsibility** of **David Scott** was to nominate a representative from the Ahom Dynasty to take up the throne.
- Till **February 1824**, the British Government had no intentions to annex Assam.
- Scott put forward 2 advice to the Company:
 1. British to re-establish the Ahom representative as a tributary king and to provide him security and thus qualify the British to interfere in the internal affairs
 2. British to keep Lower Assam under their control till Bishwanath and to restore an Ahom representative to govern Upper Assam excluding the areas under Moamorias, Khamtis and the Singphos.
- **However, the British Government refused the advice of David Scott.**
- **For administrative convenience** the British divided Assam into two parts-

1. **Western or Lower Assam** [appointed David Scott as the Senior Commissioner for Lower Assam. Head office- Guwahati]
2. **Eastern or Upper Assam** [appointed Col. Richards as the Junior Commissioner for Upper Assam. Head office- Rangpur]
3. **Biswanath was marked as the middle point**

Reforms of David Scott

Military Reforms

- In 1826, the **Assam Light Infantry** was formed as a result of the withdrawal of permanent British soldiers from Assam.
- Soldiers comprising the Hindustani **Gorkhas, Manipuris and Rangpur Local Corps** formed this army.
- These troops were stationed at Biswanath and Sadiya.

Revenue Reforms

- **David Scott did not** make any great transformation in the Ahom revenue system rather he designed the system based on the earlier Khel system only.
- **However he made small modifications to it-**
 1. Earlier every Paik had to render services in the form of labour and now they had to pay a sum of Rs 3 as annual tax instead of labour.
 2. Janardhan **Barbarua was incharge** of collecting these revenue.
 3. The revenue system of **Lower Assam** was to be based on the model of Bengal.
 4. Shirastedar was to be appointed instead of Barphukan and this responsibility was carried on by the members of **Duwariya family, Haliram Dhekiyal Phukan.**

Tax Reforms

- David Scott levied a tax of Rs.2 (gadhan) to every paik as they were allotted three puras of cultivable land (gamati).
- Apart from it, every male had to pay poll tax. This tax was called in Kamrup poll tax or paik tax or plough tax; in Darrang, it was called mess-pots; and in Nagoan, it was called a capitation tax.
- Kharikatana and Sarukar were two different taxes introduced in Kamrup and Darrang.
- Taxes were also imposed in muga weavers, gold washers, fisherman, blacksmiths along with market place(huts) and ghats. Opium cultivated lands were heavily taxed.

Judicial Reforms

- David Scott preferred a simple judicial system according to which **Lambodhar Phukan** (relative of Chandrakanta Singha) and **Janardhan Barbarua** were given the responsibility of settling the civil cases.
- The **Junior Commissioner** handled the criminal cases.

- In **Lower Assam**, the Senior Commissioner gave **judgement** on every cases except **capital Punishment**.
- To make judicial system more efficient, **David Scott** formed Panchayats in **Nagaon**, Kaliabor and Chariduar.

After David Scott

- **David Scott died in 1831.**
- After his death, **Cracroft** was appointed to serve in Assam in a temporary capacity, as the Agent to the Governor General.
- In **April 1832**, **T.C.Robertson** was appointed in this post. He served till 1834.

Reforms of T.C.Robertson

Revenue Reforms

- He imposed land revenue tax on the basis of the **quality and quantity of the land**.
- He issued **land pattas** to the cultivators.
- Other taxes include land tax, capitation tax on house etc.
- The ryots were issued receipts of taxes paid and this system was beneficial to them.

Administrative Tax

- Robertson divided Assam into **five districts** and each district was placed under one British officer.
- Both Munsiff court and the Panchayat Court were present for Judicial matters.

T.C.Robertson was succeeded by Captain Jenkins as the Commissioner of Assam and as agent to the Governor-General . Prior to this charge, he had already made survey of **Cachar, Manipur and Assam** with Pemberton in 1831.

- It was Captain Jenkins who proposed that Assam's land should be used for tea cultivation, sugarcane and indigo.
- His name was associated with **Tea, Coal and Oil industries**. For these experiences, Captain Jenkins was sent to Assam as an administrator.
- It was during his time that the first steamship sailed in the Brahmaputra.
- He too paid attention for the transport and road communications.
- He too established English medium schools in Guwahati and Sivasagar.
- **Captain Jenkins opposed** the appointment of **Bengalees bureaucrats in Assam** and he wanted the development of the local people of Assam. He wrote an article regarding Assam in the **Journal of "Asiatic Society Bengal."**

Reforms of Captain Jenkins

- Jenkins strengthened the Treasury of the Government by reforming land settlement and revenue collection.
- Districts were divided into some revenue unit called '**Tangani**' and were placed under **Phukan, Rajkhowa and Barua**. They were assisted by **Hazarika, Saikia and Bora**.
- Later, Tanganis were replaced by the formation of Mauzas which were managed by the 'Mauzadars'.
- The **Common people** during his time **were appointed** as Mauzadars alongwith the aristocratic class.

- This even though reduced the **Class distinction** in the society but somewhere brought discontent amongst the aristocratic class.
- The reforms of **Jenkins** improved the condition of the British traders as well as the British Government rather than the local Assamese people which was to be proved by the **Revolt of 1857**.
- Captain Jenkins too increased the land tax. A number of taxes were imposed on **grazing lands, forest wood, bamboo, chom tree etc**. He imposed stamp duty in 1858, income tax in 1860, import duty, licence tax etc.
- To show progressive attitude, the British government in Assam **abolished slave system** on bonded labour in 1843 AD. This indirectly helped the Britishers as they could engage the free slave in tea gardens as labourers.
- On grounds of non-payment of tax many kingdoms like Matok, Kachari etc were annexed by Jenkins.
- Increased taxation, imposition of new taxes made all the classes of people enraged with the British. Most of them who could not pay the tax left their lands barren.
- The worst sufferers were the common people and the peasants. **Jenkins banned opium cultivation in Assam** but they continued with their export and production of opium.
- The opium eaters could not live without opium and therefore they were compelled to buy it from the government store. They too were forced to work in the tea gardens as their opium cultivation was banned.
- Opium addiction ruined Assamese people both physically and mentally, money lending system started. A class of interest exploiter started called **MAHAJAN**.

Districts in the Brahmaputra Valley

- By the time British occupied Assam, the Brahmaputra Valley was divided into 4 districts.
 1. Goalpara
 2. Kamrup
 3. Darrang(including Biswanath)
 4. **Nagaon**. [Earlier it was called **Khagarijan**]
- **Robertson** and **Purandar Singh** signed a treaty and in 1832AD, **Purandar Singha** was restored as the Raja of Upper Assam **excluding Motak(Matak) Kingdom and Sadiya** on the condition that he would pay **Rs. 50000** per year as tribute.
- As he failed to pay the tribute, British directly brought his Kingdom under their jurisdiction in 1838. His kingdom was transformed into two Districts:- **Lakhimpur and Sivasagar** whose headquarters were respectively Lakhimpur and Jorhat.

Previous Years' Questions- APSC

1. The Treaty of Yandaboo was signed in 1826 between(2000)(2013)

- (a) East India Company and Ahom King
- (b) East India Company and the Burmese
- (c) British King and the Ahom king
- (d) British king and the Burmese king

Anti-British Uprisings (1828-1839)

First Anti- British Uprising

Although the people of Assam welcomed the Britishers as saviours but their policies created situations which resulted into 3 Anti-British uprisings within a period of 2 years.

First Anti- British Uprising:

- The first man to oppose British administration in Assam was **Gomdhar Konwar**. He belonged to the Ahom Royal family and was supported by **Dhananjoy and his son Harnath Jeuram Dulia Baruah** etc.
- British withdrew **martial law** from upper Assam and the soldiers were shifted. Taking this advantage Gomdhar declared himself as the Swargadeo.
- However the British were not so weak and therefore they easily regained their authority and suppressed the revolt.
- Gomdhar was sentenced to 7 years imprisonment and Dhananjoy was sentenced to death. However the later fled away from prison and took shelter in Nagaland.

Second Anti-British Uprising

- Under the leadership of Gadadhar Singha in 1829 AD, second anti-British uprising took place.
- As the nobility took steps to make Gomdhar Singha as the Ahom king, he sought help from the Burmese as well as from the **Assam Light Infantry**, and he also **approached Zalim Singh, Subedar of the regiment**, to expel the British. However, the Subedar Zalim Singh instead of helping, got Gomdhar Singha arrested.

Third Anti-British Uprising

- This uprising took place under the leadership of **Dhananjoy** again.
- This time his associates were his son Harnath, his son-in-law Jeuram Dulia Barua and son of Badan Borphukan (**Peoli Phukan**), Roopchand Konwar, Deuram Dihingia Barua and Boum Singphou.
- Two letters written by Dhanjoy to Sadiya Khowa Gohain were intercepted by the British with the conspiracy of the Khamti Gohain.
- In the meantime the rebellions set fire to the British Garrison. But their attack failed and they were captured.
- Dhanjoy and Harkanta fled and the trial was held for the extremists.
- In the trial Peoli Barphukan, Jeuram Dulia Barua, Roopchand Konwar, Boum Singphou etc were sentenced to death.
- This judgement was sent to David Scott by Neufill. Commissioner's court in Cherapunji verdicted death sentence to Peoli Phukan and Jeuram Dulia Baruah **only** others were exiled for fourteen years.

- **Peoli Phukan and Jeuram Dulia Barua were hanged till death at Sivasagar on August 1830.**
- Thus it can be seen that the British did not bring entire Assam under their control at first. They brought Lower Assam under their direct rule and other places were restored to their local chiefs with agreement. They had to abide by the British supremacy.
- After that it is seen that **Muttock, Singpho, Khamti, Cachar, Jaintia, Khasi, Gobha Kingdom, Garo Hills, Naga Hills, Lushai Hills etc** were annexed on different grounds. Finally hills and plains all were incorporated to the British rule.

Anti-British Uprisings and the Peasant Revolts in Assam

- The Britishers did not take up any policies to erase the sorrows and difficulties of the peasants and the people.
- The new land revenue policy and the money economy of the British government created deep resentment among the Assamese common people.
- At that time the villages in Assam were self sufficient and there was hardly any scope of earning money by selling the local produce.
- The fact that the land revenue struck at the backbone of the Assamese people, was also written by **Anandaram Dhekial Phukan** in his application to **Moffat Mills in 1853**. He pointed out that the land revenue fixed by the British was much more than what could be afforded by the peasants.
- In the early part of the 19th century the British has established tea gardens in Upper Assam. To encourage the tea gardeners land revenue of the lands falling within the gardens was exempted. As a result the burden of making up for this loss of revenue fell upon the poor peasants.
- British administration too was responsible for the **deterioration of the cottage industry. Paat and Muga silk** during the ahom dynasty had a special demand in the Indian market but the patronage of the British administration to import **foreign cloth** material had a very negative impact on the people associated with this industry.
- The condition of the aristocratic class was similar to that of the common people because they were not being able to keep themselves at par with the British administration. Due to **lack of modern education** the majority could not become a part of the new administration.
- The British rulers however had to import **educated Bengali Babu's** from Bengal to work in the administration.
- British stopped **slavery** in Assam in **1843**. But this did not uplift the common people's position. It was to engage this group of people as labourers in the newly established tea gardens of the British that they had been freed from the control of the Assamese aristocrats.
- They felt humiliated on being compelled to perform manual labour in their own fields and other works like their erstwhile slaves.
- According to eminent Historian **H.K.Borpujari** several Brahmin Purohits of Upper Assam joined in the revolt of 1857 against the British rule because the government took away the excess of the **Lakheraj and untaxed lands** which they were occupying for so long.

Revolt of 1857 and its Impact on Assam

- Emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar II, Nana Saheb of Kanpur, Maratha leader Tantia Tope, Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi etc. led this revolt. The revolutionaries wanted to place Bahadur Shah Zafar II as the Mughal Emperor once again and end the British rule in India forever.
- The Revolt of 1857 provided a golden opportunity to the elite class of Assam to throw off the yoke of British rule and re-establish the Ahom monarchy.
- When the revolt broke out in North India, there were two British army regiments posted in Assam- **The First Assam Light Infantry in Dibrugarh and the Second Assam Light Infantry in Guwahati.**
- The two battalions alongwith the group of soldiers were very loyal to the British even after the outbreak of the Mutiny in some parts of India in 1857. In Assam, the strength of soldiers was very less, and the army comprised of **Gorkhas, Manipuris and Singphos** who were outsiders. The situation was quite normal in the initial times however it changed lately.
- Taking the advantage, **Maniram Dewan** planned for a revolt to establish **Kandarpeswar Singha** at the Ahom throne.
- **Maniram Barbhandar Barua** popularly known as Maniram Dewan was in Calcutta when the Indian Soldiers declared mutiny in **Meerut.**
- He went there to file an application to the British government requesting that a portion of Upper Assam be placed under the rule of an Ahom king.
- In Calcutta Maniram Dewan met **Madhu Mallik, a Bengali Mukhtiyar** and together they hatched a conspiracy to drive the British out of Assam.
- They decided that Ahom Prince **Kandarpeswar Singha** would lead the soldiers in Assam in revolt and Maniram Dewan would bring **arms and ammunitions** from Calcutta to help them.
- However this conspiracy failed as Principal Assistant Captain Holroyd intercepted many letters written by Maniram Dewan wherein their plans regarding the conspiracy against the British were clearly mentioned.
- Prince Kandarpeswar Singha (minor) was jailed and **Maniram Dewan and Piyoli Barua** as per a special Court of Justice were **sentenced** to be hanged to death.
- **26th February 1858** both were hanged.

Peasant Uprising

- The Revolt of 1857 left the British treasury in a pitiable condition and **in order** to compensate their loss they started increasing the taxes.
- Irrespective of famine or any other natural disaster the Britishers raised the tax to almost 100% and the common people (peasants) were the worst sufferers.
- All these resulted in a series of revolts in Assam from the middle of the 19th century.

Raij Mel

- The peasant revolts in Assam in the 19th century were led by the **People's Assembly (Raij Mels).**
- **Their importance in Assam socio-political history is immense but they were not POLITICAL organizations.**
- They highlight the proverb "**Raijei Roja Gyatiyei Ganga**" in the true sense of the term.

Phulaguri Dhawa (1861)

- It was the first peasant uprising in Assam by the exploited peasants against the British Policy of economic exploitation.
- Phulaguri is a village located near **Nagaon** inhabited by the **Tiwa Community** whose basic occupation was **the cultivation of Poppy**.
- British government banned opium cultivation but they themselves were selling opium extracted from poppy seeds.
- This agitated the community. Moreover there were news that the British too will impose tax on **Tamul-Paan (areca nut and betel leaves)**.
- In September 1861, the peasants organised a Raj Mel, where it was decided to submit a petition to the **Deputy Commissioner (Herbert Sconce)** requesting the removal of the ban and also non-imposition of the tax on tamul-paan.
- The Deputy Commissioner did not pay any heed and this led to protest and accordingly for **5 consecutive** days (from 15th October), the public held Raj Mels.
- The number of peasants in the meetings increased from 1000 to 4000 armed with bamboo sticks.
- Amidst all this, Deputy Commissioner sent his Assistant **Lieutenant Singer** to attend the meeting.
- The public made Singer understand their demands but the former ordered his soldiers to snatch away the bamboo sticks from the peasants.
- However his soldiers failed to do so and one peasant struck Singer on his head and the peasants joined ultimately killing Lieutenant Singer.
- Singer died on spot and his body was thrown into the **Kollong** river.
- This incident is recorded in Assam history as **Phulaguri Dhawa**.
- **Many peasants** were captured after this and on charges of murder many were sentenced to death. **Lakhan Deka, Songbor Lalung and Rangbor Deka** were sentenced to death.
- **Other accused** were sent to Andaman and Nicobar Islands (Kalapani).

Importance of the Revolt

1. Mass Uprising- Peasants got support from every section (aristocrat, middle class, Kaibartta community, elite class etc)
2. Government did not impose tax on Tamul-Paan.
3. Inspired latter events.
4. Common people's attempt to free themselves from the clutches of the British empire.
5. It can also be seen as the beginning of **Non- Corporation** movement which later on Mahatma Gandhi implemented during the Freedom Struggle.

Note: Even after the Phulaguri Dhawa the British government did not take any measures to wipe away the miseries of the peasants. Infact in 1892, the Chief Commissioner of Assam, **Sir William Ward** increased the taxes to 70-80%. This led to a series of revolts known as **Assam Riots**.

Peasant Revolt of Rangia

- **Cause of Revolt:** 100% increase in land revenue

- It began on 24th December 1893, when the people of Rangia ransacked the Rangia market. Moreover, people staged a demonstration on 10th January 1894 in which they raised the slogan of not paying the increased revenue.
- McCabe the Deputy Commissioner of Kamrup, imposed a ban on holding any Mel.
- All the important leaders of the revolt were soon arrested by the police and the revolt lost its edge.

Lachima Revolt

- **21st January 1894** the incident took place for the same reason as that of the Rangia.
- The only difference was that the rebels of Lachima took recourse to **violence**.

Peasant Revolt of Patharughat (1894)

- **Patharughat** is a place in Mangaldoi circle of Darrang district where peasants turned on a revolt due to the increase in revenue collection.
- The peasants organised Rai Mels, planning a huge public assembly for three days 26-28 January in Patharughat.
- This news was informed to the then Deputy Commissioner **J.D.Anderson** who alongwith a force comprising of police and military personnel and the Police Superintendent **J.R.Berington** arrived in Patharughat on 27th January.
- The peasants properties were confiscated and when the officials announced that under no circumstances will the tax be reduced, the peasants protested against it.
- On orders of Berington, the police fired on the gatherings present there. Even though the farmers tried to fight back with the sticks they had with them, they could not match the British for the **sudden firing**. On that fateful day, **hundreds of people were injured and around 140 of them were killed on spot**.
- This is the reason why the **Revolt of Patharughat** is popularly known as **Assam's Jallianwala Bagh**.

Ethnic (TRIBAL) Revolt

Parallel revolts were going on in the hills against the colonial rule.

Jaintia revolt

- These people burst out in rebellion when the British Government imposed house tax and stamp duty.
- These people felt that they have lost their freedom to the British when the later imposed House tax and stamp duty on them.
- So they raised their voice through a rebellion which lasted from 1860-1863.

U Tirot Singh

- The Khasi tribe under the leadership of U Tirot Singh led a rebellion against the British.
- Reason: Construction of a road across the Khasi hills joining the two valleys of the Brahmaputra and Surma.
- The Khasis got the impression that after the completion of the road, the British would levy tax from them.

- So under the leadership of Tirot Singh, they attacked the British officials posted there and killed them. The conflict between the Khasis and British continued for almost 4 years and ended with the surrender of Tirot Singh in 1834 AD.

The revolt of Nagas, Garo and Lushais

- These people too were discontented with the British not because of the imposition of any tax but for the curtailment of certain rights being enjoyed by them since long.
- They were freedom loving people who could not tolerate the dominance of some outsider.
- However British captured their territory into their province and brought them under the British rule.

Previous Year Questions-APSC

1. Who was hanged with Maniram Dewan? (2017)
 - a) Dutiram Baruah
 - b) Pioli Phukan
 - c) **Pioli Baruah**
 - d) Farmud Ali
2. The first rebellion against the British rule in assam in 1828 was led by (2000)
 - a) Piyali Phukan
 - b) **Maniram Dewan**
 - c) **Gomdhar Konwar**
 - d) Piyali Barua
3. **Year 1894 is related to (2000)**
 - a) Phulaguri Dhawa
 - b) Rangia revolt
 - c) **Patharughat revolt**
 - d) None of the above

Growth of Assamese Nationalism

- The voice of dissent against the British rule found expression in the writings of several prominent personalities of the time arousing feelings of nationalism in the region. Several socio-cultural organisations were formed to highlight the problems and aspirations of the common people.

1. Asomiya Bhasa Unnati Sabha

- Assam witnessed the growth of a newly emerged educated middle class by the middle of the 19th century.
- They took steps to make the people aware about the Assamese Language.
- **In order** to organise the masses, an organisation called the **Gyan Pradyani Sabha** was the earliest one to be initiated by **Anandaram Dhekial Phukan** and **Gunaviram Barua** in 1857.
- The British government with their motive of divide and rule introduced Bengali language in place of Assamese language in schools, offices and courts in Assam in 1836 AD.
- Assamese language already had its independent identity; therefore this move was not at all acceptable to the people of Assam.

- This issue was retaliated by the Assamese people and in 1873, the Assamese Language was re-introduced.
- Strong initiatives taken to improve Assamese language and literature

2. Assamese Literary Society (1872)

- **Active till -1885**
- Leadership: Devicharan Baruah and Ganga Gobinda Phukan

3. Asomiya Bhasa Unnati Sadhini Sabha (1888)

- Leadership: Hemchandra Goswami, Lakshminath Bezbaruah, Kanaklal Barua, Ramakanta Barkakati and Chandrakumar Agarwala.
- First initiative taken: introduce a correct and standardised grammatical book
- The government undertook the publication of **Hemchandra Barua's "Hemkosh"**.
- ABUSS published a journal **Jonaki** which ushered in a new era in Assamese literature.

4. Assam Chatra Sanmilan

- First student organisation of Assam
- First session held in Guwahati on 25th December 1916 under the Presidentship of **Lakshminath Bezbaruah**. Their mouthpiece was **Milan**.

5. Jorhat Sarbajanik Sabha

- Founded in 1884 at Jorhat by **Jagannath Baruah**.
- **Aim:** To deliver and represent the wishes and aspirations of the people to the British government.
- **This Sabha strongly opposed the Partition of Bengal in 1905.**
- It became weak after the expiry of Jagannath Baruah and survived till 1921

6. Ahom Sabha/Ahom Association

- Formed 1893 by **Padmanath Gohain Baruah**
- First Session was held at Sivasagar in 1893 AD.
- **AIM:** was to demand for privilege for the Ahoms in the British administration and to revive their traditional religion, language and social customs, thereby re-establishing the cultural identity of Ahoms.
- **In 1910** this Sabha was renamed to **Ahom Association** and became a political organisation.

7. Assam Association

- Formed in 1903 by **Manik Chandra Barua**.
- In 1905, the first session was held in **Dibrugarh**. In this session **Raja Prabhat Chandra Barua** was formerly elected as President, **Jagannath Baruah** as Vice-President and **Manik Chandra Baruah** as General Secretary.
- This association opposed the incorporation of Assam into a single province, named **Eastern Bengal and Assam** in 1905.
- In 1907 it submitted a memorandum to the Secretary of State for India to separate Assam from East Bengal.
- The association demanded the introduction of Montague- Chelmsford Reforms of 1919 in Assam by sending **KARMAVEER Nabin Chandra Bordoloi** and **Prasanna Kumar Barua** to London and also a team of 7 members to Calcutta in 1917.

- This association actively participated in the Non- Corporation Movement. Finally in 1921 the Assam Association merged with the APCC.

8. Assam Provincial Congress Committee(APCC)

- First President: **Chobibal Upadhyay (President of the meeting)**
- **Later Presidents’**: Kuladhar Chaliha, Tarun Ram Phukan
- **Members**: Gopinath Bordoloi, Bimala Prasad Chaliha, Chandranath Sarmah etc.
- Under the initiative of this committee itself, **Mahatma Gandhi** was invited to Assam in 1921.
- Objective of the visit: To propagate the message of Non-Corporation amongst the masses. And implement the principals of swadeshi.
- In 1926, the 41st All India Congress Committee session was hosted by the APCC at **Pandu**, Guwahati which was presided over by **Srinivasa Iyengar**.
- The first officially elected President of the APCC was **Bishnuram Medhi** who was elected in 1930 for a period of 9 years.

9. Assam Sahitya Sabha

- It was founded as a non-profit organisation in the field of Assamese literature and the culture of Assam.
- First conference of Assam was held in the month of December 1917. Famous exponent of Assamese literature, **Padmanath Gohain Barua** was the first President of that conference.
- Objective: Promote the literature and culture of Assam.

Swadeshi Movement and Assam

Partition of Bengal (1905)

- A new province was declared, which included Eastern Bengal and Assam.
- At that time, Lieutenant Governor of Dacca **J.B.Fuller** was appointed as Chief Commissioner of Assam.
- Apart from the tea planters and a section of Muslims in Eastern Bengal and Surma Valley, Assam protested against the Partition of Bengal.
- The newly formed **province**, comprising of Assam and East Bengal was first named as “ **Eastern Bengal**” and the name ‘Assam’ was dropped from the title.
- The **European Tea Planters Association** in Assam **protested** against this and argued since the name ‘Assam’ is associated with tea in the International Market.
- Later the British understood the importance and therefore changed it to **Eastern Bengal and Assam**.

Swadeshi and boycott

- Leaders in Assam led the movement were **Padmanath Gohain Baruah, Ambikagiri Ray Choudhary, Triguna Barua, Rakim Bora** etc.

- **Asom Kesari Ambikagiri Raychoudhury and Govinda Lahiri** formed revolutionary organisation among the students of Guwahati.
- They called for using indigenous goods and boycott foreign goods.
- **Ambikagiri Raychoudhury** wrote a revolutionary drama '**Bandini Bharat**'. He also established a revolutionary organisation '**Seva Sangha**' alongwith the revolutionary activists **Khudiram Bose, Barindra Ghosh, Ullaskar Dutta** etc. of Calcutta.

Response of the Government

Lenient Measures

- Introduction of Assamese language and literature in the syllabus of entrance exam of Calcutta University.
- Providing bachelor degrees in all the departments in Cotton College.
- Re-introduction of the Mouzadari system in the Brahmaputra Valley.
- Introduction of 20 point settlement of land.

All these turned out to be indirect benefits of the Swadeshi Movement for Assam

Repressive measures

- Issued the **Carlyle and Risley Circulars** which ordered the management of educational institutions to make sure that students did not participate in any protest against the government.
- Meetings and processions were banned and political leaders jailed.
- The press was heavily censored.
- Many agitators were jailed or even deported.
- All these measures provoked the youth to take up revolutionary activities in Bengal and as a parallel, in Assam, large numbers of secret **societies** were formed.
- **Tarun Sangha, Suhrid Samiti Arunachal Ashram** were very active in the Surma Valley. **Seva Sangha (founded by Ambikagiri Raychoudhury)** developed into a revolutionary organisation in the lines of Anushilan Samiti.

Non-cooperation movement and Assam (NCM)

- When the call for NCM was given, one section led by **Ganga Gobinda Barua, Tara Prasad Chaliha, Ghanshyam Barua and Chandradhar Barua**, all thought that the Asam Association had to maintain its separate identity **in order** to fight for local issues with the British.
- Later, in the annual conference of Assam Association held at Tezpur on December, 1920, Assam Association decided to participate alongside INC in NCM and finally, in 1921 Assam **Association** got merged into APCC.

Impact of the movement

- **Chandradhar Sharma, Hemchandra Barua, Omeo Kumar Das, Mohibuddin Ahmed** organised the youths and successfully boycotted the government educational institutions and in their place, national schools were set up at Guwahati, Nalbari, Tezpur, Sivasagar, Nagaon etc.
- **Nabin Chandra Bordoloi, Kuladhar Chaliha, Tarun Ram Phukan** boycotted the court practices and participated in active politics.

- Business of salt was adversely affected by NCM.
- Reduce use of Opium, after Gandhiji appealed to the Congress workers. This affected the British Opium trade.

Role of Assamese women

- Active participation of women like **Bidyut Prabha Devi, Girija Devi, Nalini Bala Devi, Pushpalata Das, Guneswari Nath and Chandraprabha Saikiani.**
- They organised large meetings in rural and urban areas to spread the message of non-cooperation, swadeshi and constructive work.
- Mungri Maam or Malati of Lalmati tea garden gave up alcohol on the call of Gandhiji and she was the first martyr of the NCM in Assam. She died in a clash that occurred during the picketing of liquor shops.
- In Gobedori(Kamrup District) **Bhanumati Talukdar** mother of 3 children left her home to join the Congress.
- She is popularly known as **Voluntariny Baai.** Gandhiji gave Bhanumati Talukdar the title **Sarojini of Assam.**

Swarajists in Assam

- In Assam the Swaraj Party was formed with **TArun Ram Phukan and Rohini Kumar Choudhury** as its President and Secretary, respectively and **Gopinath Bordoloi** as its Assistant Secretary.

Constructive Works

- While the Swarajists carried on their struggle in the council, the Congress workers carried on their grass-root works on rural reconstruction with emphasis on the promotion of Khadi, National Education, Communal Harmony, Boycott of foreign cloths and anti-liquor and anti-opium propagation.
- **Ambikagiri Raychoundhury** founded the **Sangrakshini Sabha** through which voice was raised for the demands of the Assamese people within the Congress framework.
- His works attracted **Padmanath Gohain barua and Nilumoni Phukan** who also participated in these constructive works.
- The 41st Congress Session was held at **Pandu** where Gandhiji also participated. [to accommodate all the delegates the pandal was built with bamboo and mud and was adorned with **Khadi.**

Simon commission and Assam

- In Assam, the first manifestation of Public anger was expressed at a public meeting at Sylhet in November, 1927. A meeting at Jorhat suggested for the appointment of a parallel commission comprising of Indians, after condemning the Simon Commission.
- The Muslims were divided on this issue, and accordingly, there were two factions. The first faction, **Anjuman-i-Islamia**, decided to welcome the Commission, whereas the pro-Jinnah faction, led by **Abdul Matin Choudhury** called upon both Hindus and Muslims to make the boycott a success.

- The day Simon Commission reached India on 3rd February, 1928 many towns in Assam observed hartals.
- The commission decided to visit Assam on January, 1929 and while preparing for the visit, the Government constituted a seven-member committee of the Assam legislative council for the purpose of cooperating with the commission. This proposal was met with strong protests.
- **Assam Chatra Sanmilan** which was until 1928, a non political organisation made **political** resolutions for the first time in 1928.

Previous Years' Questions- 2020 APSC

1. During 1540 and 1587, King Naranarayan ruled over the undivided Koch Kingdom of Kamata, and subsequently subjugated the entire Brahmaputra valley, including the Ahom, Kachari, Tripura and Manipur Kingdoms. What was the real name of King Naranarayan?
 - a) Nara Singh
 - b) Sukladvaj
 - c) **Malla Deb**
 - d) Parikshit
2. As a great patron of Shakta Hinduism, an Ahom King built the Umananda Temple on Peacock Island of Guwahati around 1694 AD. Who was he?
 - a) Siva Singha
 - b) Rudra Singha
 - c) **Gadadhar Singha**
 - d) Rajeswar Singha
3. King Siva Singha entrusted Krishnaram Bhattacharya, a Shakta priest from Nawadwip in West Bengal, to manage the Kamakhya Temple. How do we know him more popularly?
 - a) Kamrupiya Gosain
 - b) Kamakhya Gosain
 - c) **Parbatiya Gosain**
 - d) Nawadwipor Gosain
4. Chao Suhunmung was the first Ahom King to adopt a Hindu title, indicating a move towards an inclusive polity. Which Hindu name did he take?
 - a) **Swarganarayan**
 - b) Durlavnarayan

- c) Udayaditya Singha
- d) Jayadhwaj Singha**

